

NEW

New Headway

Advanced Student's Book & Workbook



Liz and John Soars

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN TỔNG HỢP TP. HỒ CHÍ MINH

New Headway

Advanced Student's Book & Workbook

Liz and John Soars

Giới thiệu và chú giải: **LÊ HUY LÂM**

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN TỔNG HỢP THÀNH PHỐ HỒ CHÍ MINH

CONTENTS

UNIT	LANGUAGE FOCUS	VOCABULARY	READING
▶ 1 Our land is your land! p7	Avoiding repetition Missing words out <i>She told me to tidy up, but I already had.</i> p12 Reduced infinitives <i>She doesn't know how to read. She never learnt to.</i> p13 Synonyms in context <i>I don't trust this government. I have no faith in them whatsoever.</i> p13	Describing nationalities <i>Scotland, Scottish, a Scot</i> p15	'The American dream' – Three immigrants arrive at Ellis Island (jigsaw) p8
▶ 2 Never lost for words! p17	Tense review Simple and continuous <i>Everyone's very nice to me.</i> <i>Everyone's being very nice to me.</i> p24 Perfect and non-perfect <i>They've been married for thirty years.</i> <i>They were married for thirty years.</i> p24 Active and passive <i>Jack is interviewing Lady Bracknell.</i> <i>Jack is being interviewed by Lady Bracknell.</i> p24	Phrasal verbs Literal and metaphorical <i>My sister is always taking in stray cats.</i> <i>She was completely taken in by his lies.</i> <i>They had so much news that I couldn't take it all in.</i> p21	'A visit to Iris Murdoch' – an interview with novelist Iris Murdoch p19
▶ 3 Big business p27	Adverb collocations <i>hear about endlessly, deeply worried</i> p32 Adverbs with two forms <i>flying high, highly motivated</i> p32 <i>just</i> <i>That's just what I wanted!</i> <i>It's just me.</i> <i>I wish you'd just listen to me for once!</i> p33	Describing trends <i>a slight fall, drop sharply</i> p30 Comparing statistics <i>David spends twice as much on food as John does.</i> p31	'Eat, sleep, buy, die' – an article about the global economy p28
Stop and Check 1 Teacher's Book			
▶ 4 Celebrity p37	Discourse markers <i>Quite honestly, I think you should pack in the job.</i> <i>As I was saying, I'm still enjoying the work.</i> p42	Synonyms and antonyms 1 <i>She's always finding fault with her kids. She criticizes them for everything.</i> <i>From being a private person, you become public property.</i> p41	The cult of celebrity – why are we obsessed with the rich and famous? p38
▶ 5 Love is ...? p47	Ways of adding emphasis <i>It's Tina's personality that I love.</i> <i>What he does is criticize me constantly.</i> <i>Never will I forget holding him for the first time.</i> <i>Finally I did find the courage to ask her out.</i> p51	Proverbs and poetry <i>Love is blind.</i> <i>A Shakespeare sonnet</i> <i>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?</i> p52	Fateful attraction – two couples who met in very unexpected circumstances (jigsaw) p48
▶ 6 Newspeak p55	Distancing the facts Passive constructions <i>It is said that he works in the City.</i> <i>He is assumed to be earning a lot of money.</i> p59 <i>seem and appear</i> <i>The Independent seems to be more factual.</i> <i>It appears that the Prince took the incident seriously.</i> p59	Nouns formed from phrasal verbs <i>Here is an update on the news.</i> <i>At the outbreak of war I was just three years old.</i> p60	Tabloid and broadsheet newspapers – a similar news story in two different newspapers p56
Stop and Check 2 Teacher's Book			
▶ 7 Words of wisdom p63	Modal auxiliary verbs Present, future, and past Likelihood, probability, obligation, permission, ability, willingness, habit p66	Rhyme and reason – Choosing the right words for a poem 'You are old, Father William' p68	'Letter to a newborn son' – BBC foreign correspondent Fergal Keane on becoming a father p64

LISTENING	SPEAKING	THE LAST WORD	WRITING
Two brothers from Kenya – an interview with Vijay and Bhikhu Patel p14 National stereotypes p15	Discussion – immigrants and emigration p11 Discussion – nationality stereotypes p15	British and American English <i>We've got a small flat.</i> <i>We have a small apartment.</i> p15	Formal and informal letters p117
'The Importance of Being Earnest' – a scene from Oscar Wilde's play p23	Information gap – finding out about Iris Murdoch p18 Acting out a scene from a play p23	Sounds and spelling – a poem about pronunciation <i>tough, bought, cough, dough</i> p26 Homophones <i>through, threw</i> p26	Storytelling p118
An interview with Anita Roddick, founder of <i>The Body Shop</i> p34	Simulation – planning an advertising campaign p35 Discussion – the role of advertising p35	Word linking and intrusive sounds <i>English is an international language</i> <i>blue eyes</i> <i>/w/</i> <i>my office</i> p36 <i>/j/</i>	A business report p120
An interview with Hollywood star Liza Minnelli p44	Maze – how to become an A-list celebrity p44	Tags and replies <i>'I like Cabaret.'</i> 'Oh, you do, do you?' <i>You haven't seen my car keys, have you?</i> <i>You're a star, you are.</i> p46	Expressing a personal opinion p122
A romantic meeting – another couple tell the story of how they met p48 When love lasts forever – an interview with 102-year-old Olive Hodges p53	Discussion – do you believe in fate? p48	Getting emotional Sounding anxious, grateful, etc. <i>Get this heap of old metal out of my drive! Now!</i> <i>You mean more to me than words could ever say.</i> p54	Discussing pros and cons p123
An interview with foreign correspondent Simon Winchester p61	Discussion – how television reports the news p61	Responding to news <i>'Guess what! I won £5 million.'</i> <i>'You're kidding!'</i> p62 Sounding sarcastic <i>'Pete. I crashed your car. Sorry.'</i> <i>'Great. That's all I needed.'</i> <i>Thank you very much.'</i> p62	A letter to a newspaper p124
Words of wisdom – ten people talk about advice they have been given in their lives p68	Prediction game – Dilemma! How well do you know your classmates! p67 Discussion – words of wisdom p68	Breaking the rules of English <i>'Ending a sentence with a preposition is something up with which I will not put.'</i> p70	Describing a personal experience p126

UNIT	LANGUAGE FOCUS	VOCABULARY	READING
► 8 Altered images p71	Real and unreal tense usage <i>would</i> <i>My car wouldn't start ...</i> <i>When I was a kid, I'd get up at 7.00 ...</i> <i>I knew he'd change his mind.</i> p78 Past tenses to express unreality <i>I wish you'd think before you speak.</i> <i>Isn't it time we had a break?</i> <i>Suppose we called him Mickey?</i> p78	Metaphors and idioms <i>Time flies.</i> <i>It broke his heart when she left him for another man.</i> <i>We're over the moon.</i> p74	'Walt Disney – the man behind the mouse' p76
► 9 History lessons p81	Verb patterns <i>We finally decided to leave the town.</i> <i>They helped us to bury our dead.</i> <i>The Germans joined in singing with the British.</i> <i>We were terrified to find everything changed.</i> p88	Homonyms <i>The ribbon made a beautiful bow in her hair.</i> <i>You play the violin with a bow.</i> p86 Homophones <i>They tied their boat to a small buoy in the harbour.</i> <i>A small boy looked after their boat.</i> p86 Homographs <i>We're sitting at the back in row 102.</i> <i>We've had another row about our finances.</i> p86	'I was there ...' – eyewitness accounts of historical events p82
Stop and Check 3 Teacher's Book			
► 10 The body beautiful p91	Intensifying adverbs <i>I totally agree with you.</i> <i>She's absolutely terrified of dogs.</i> <i>Kate thinks maths is quite hard, and she's quite right.</i> p94	Sports p91 Words to do with the body <i>calf, kidney</i> <i>to head a ball, to shoulder responsibility</i> p95	'The age of sport' – an article about the world-wide obsession with sport p92
► 11 The ends of the earth p99	Relatives and participles Defining and non-defining relative clauses <i>Here's somebody who speaks English.</i> <i>The Chinese lady, who speaks impeccable English, lives in the desert.</i> p106 Participles <i>Living in London, I appreciate the pros and cons of city life.</i> <i>Having read the minutes of the meeting, I wrote a report.</i> p107	Geographical expressions <i>Temperatures range from 0°C to 15°C in summer.</i> p100 Weather words – compound nouns and adjectives <i>rainfall, wind-blown, snowflake</i> p104 Adjective order <i>beautiful, old, thatched cottages</i> <i>glorious, golden Mediterranean beaches</i> p104	Three island stories – three very different islands (jigsaw) p100
► 12 Life goes on p109	Linking devices Conjunctions, adverbs, infinitives, relative pronouns, participles <i>... the future comes towards you and recedes behind you.</i> <i>However, roughly every year a leap second is added.</i> <i>In cities, where time is most chronological ...</i> p112	Synonyms and antonyms 2 <i>an approximate figure,</i> <i>a rough guess</i> <i>old, novel</i> p115	'A sideways look at time' – different ways of seeing time p110
Stop and Check 4 Teacher's Book			

LISTENING	SPEAKING	THE LAST WORD	WRITING
An interview with American painter Joe Downing p72	Discussion – appreciating art p71 Discussion – my favourite work of art p73	Softening the message <i>Can you help me?</i> <i>I was wondering if you could possibly help me?</i> p80	Reviewing a film or book p127
An eyewitness account – Justin Baines p85 Peace and goodwill – the Christmas truce of 1914 p87	Discussion – an important event in your life p85 Discussion – can enemies become friends in wartime? p87	Telling jokes <i>'Why is an archaeologist never successful?' 'Because his career lies in ruins.'</i> p90	Personal profile p128
The rower and the ballet dancer – jigsaw conversations about Darcey Bussell and Sir Steve Redgrave p96	Discussion – are we obsessed by sport? p92 Quiz – how healthy and fit are you? p97	Clichés <i>Easier said than done.</i> <i>At the end of the day, it's your decision.</i> p98	Entering a competition p129
Farflung spots – people talk about places they have visited p104 A meeting in the desert – an unusual story about a railway journey in the far west of China p105	Living on a desert island p100 Retelling a story p105	What on earth! <i>earth, ground, soil</i> p108 Everyday expressions <i>This new jacket cost the earth.</i> <i>I had to move heaven and earth to get here.</i> p108	Describing a journey p130
Do you believe in miracles? – a radio programme about a visit to Lourdes p114	Discussion – talking about time p111 Discussion – is there a conflict between science and religion? p114	Euphemisms <i>a disadvantaged senior citizen, pass away</i> p116	Bringing a biography to life p131

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX1 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto
With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan South Korea Poland Portugal Singapore Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD AND OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trademarks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2003

The moral rights of the author have been asserted
Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2003

2009 2008 2007 2006 2005
10 9 8 7 6 5 4

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN-13: 978-0-19-436930-5

ISBN-10: 0-19-436930-7

Printed and bound in China

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Writing section: written by Jayne Wildman

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p9 H.G. Wells quote from *The Future in America*, Harper & Bros., New York © H. G. Wells 1906. Reproduced by permission of A P Watt Limited; p10 William Williams quote from *William Williams Papers*, Manuscripts and Archives Division, The New York Public Library, Astor, Lenox and Tilden Foundations. Reproduced by permission: p10 Arnold Weiss quote from *Island of Hope, Island of Tears*, Viking Penguin, New York © David M. Brownstone, Irene M. Franck and Douglas L. Brownstone, 1979. Reproduced by permission: p11 Henry Curran quote from *Pillar to Post*, Charles Scribner's and Sons, New York © Henry H. Curran, copyright renewed 1969; p19 interview with Iris Murdoch by Joanna Coles © Joanna Coles, *The Guardian* 21 September 1996. Reproduced by permission of Guardian Newspapers Limited; p25 from *Fair Game* by Elizabeth Young, published by Heinemann. Reprinted by permission of *The Random House Group Ltd*, p28 'Eat, Sleep, Buy, Die' by Jonathan Rowe, *The New Internationalist* November 2000 www.newint.org. Reproduced by permission: p48 'Fateful Attraction' by Jenny Tucker, *Elle* January 2002. Reproduced by permission; p57 'Harry Faces Eton drug test' by Charles Rae and Jammi Pyatt © News International Newspapers Limited, *The Sun* 14 January 2002. Reproduced by permission: p58 'Prince Harry sent to rehab over drink and drugs' by Claire Hill, *The Independent* 13 January 2002. Reproduced by permission; p64 Extract from *Letters to Daniel* by Fergal Keane. Reproduced by permission: p76 'Walt Disney: The man behind the mouse' by Melissa Burdick-Harmon, *Biography Magazine* February 2002; p82 Extract from *Letters of the Younger Pliny* translated by Betty Radice (Penguin Classics, 1963) © Betty Radice 1963. Reproduced by permission: p83 'The First Radio Signal Across the Atlantic, 12 December 1901' by Guglielmo Marconi, in *Seapbook* 1900-1914 by Leslie Bailey; p84 'The First Channel Flight, 25 July 1909' by Louis Bleriot, in *Seapbook* 1900-1914 by Leslie Bailey; p85 *First on the Moon: A Voyage with Neil Armstrong*, Michael Collins, Edwin E. Aldrin Jr. written with Gene Farmer and Dora Jane Hamblin; p92 'Worshipping the body at the altar of sport' by Martin Jacques © Martin Jacques, *The Observer* 13 July

1997. Reproduced by permission of Guardian Newspapers Limited; p110 from *Pip Pip* by Jay Griffiths. Reprinted by permission of HarperCollins Publishers Ltd. © Jay Griffiths; p116 'Stop being coy' by Bryan Heath from *The Sunday Times* 29 June 1988. Reproduced by permission of Times Newspapers Ltd.

Source: p9 Statue of Liberty National Monument/Ellis Island Immigration Museum Brochure

Typescript: p87 'The Christmas Truce, 1914 - Oh what a lovely war! Interview'. Reproduced by permission of Richard Carrington. The following are reproduced by permission of BBC Worldwide Ltd: p44 Interview with Liza Minelli; p53 Interview with Olive Hodgess; p64 Letter to a newborn son by Fergal Keane; p114 'The Miracle Men'

Illustrations by: Jamel Akib p105; Mark Duffin p121; Rose Hardy p35; Darren Hopes p95; Mike Moran p53; Oxford Designers and Illustrators p64; Ali Pellatt p43; Geoff Waterhouse/Just for Laifs p36, 62, 80, 86, 90, 98

Commissioned photography by: Gareth Boden; pp33, 46, 79 (hotel room), 112; MM Studios pp17-18 (book covers), 25, 37 (camera, champagne, sunglasses, OK Magazines), 56, 57, 58

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce: p71 (in order from top to bottom): Georges Seurat, French 1859-1891, A Sunday on La Grande Jatte, 1884, 1884-86, oil on canvas, 207.6 x 308 cm. The Art Institute of Chicago. Helen Bartlett Memorial Collection, 1926.224; The Afghan Girl, photograph in 1985 © Steve McCurry/Magnum Photos; TGV Aviation Station, 2001. Architects J.M. Duthilleul, F. Bonnefille and E. Tricaud. Photo Rafal Tomasiak, The European Railway Picture Gallery; <http://agv.kielce.tpnet.pl>; Casablanca, 1942. Humphrey Bogart and Ingrid Bergman. Director Michael Curtiz. Warner Bros. Casablanca. Photo: The Kobal Collection; Henry Moore, Draped Reclining Mother and Baby, 1983 (1982) The Henry Moore Foundation, bronze, length 285.5 cm. Reproduced by permission of the Henry Moore Foundation; Tracey Emin My Bed, 1998, mattress, linen, pillows, rope, various memorabilia 31 x 83 x 92 in (79 x 211 x 234 cm) Courtesy of Jay Jopling/White Cube, London © the artist. Photo courtesy of The Saatchi Gallery, London/Photo: Stephen White

Photographs: Action Plus p91 (G.Kirkhorse racing & javelin); AKG London p109 (Musée Royaux des Beaux-Arts, Brussels); Pieter Bruegel, Landscape with the Fall of Icarus, (1525/30-1569) 74 x 112 cm; Alamy pp18 (Stock Connection Inc/containers port), 29 (D. Hoffman Photo Library/landfill site), 63 (Popperfoto/Confucius); Bryan and Cherry Alexander pp100 (Greenland), 101 (woman and child, harbour & plane); By kind permission of Apple Computer, Inc p27; Axiom Photographic Agency p15 (C.Caldicot/Indian women), (D. Constantine/South American men at bar), (H. Kutomi/Japanese woman), (C. Parker/ British on beach); BBC Photographic Archives p64 (M. Robinson); By kind permission of BMW Group p16 (Mini Cooper); Manuel Bauer/www.lookatch pp100, 102; By kind permission of The Body Shop p27 & 34 (© Copyright: The Body Shop International PLC); © Bill Bryson by arrangement with Transworld Publishers p17 (The Last Continent: Travel in Small-town America, Black Swan, 1999); Camera Press p27 (R.Gillard/Prince Philip), 18 (Jane Brown/John Murdoch portrait), 20 (N. Rangoy), 77 (older Disney), 96 (N. Norrington/ballet performance); Cartoon Bank, The New Yorker cartoons pp12 (© 2003 Frank Cotnam from cartoonbank.com. All rights reserved), 41 (Joe Cullum), 66 (Mike Tupper), 116 (Aaron Bacall), 116 (Bernard Shoenbaum); Cartoon Stock pp13b (Fran), 30 (Harley Schwadron), 33 (Arnaldo Almeida), 60 (John Morris), 88 (Mike Baldwin), 89 (Alan De la Nougere), 94 (Kex), 97 (Carroll Zahn), 115 (Stan Walling, Collections pp106-107 (bridge); Donald Cooper/Photostage p23; Corbis pp7 (© Archive Iconografico, S.A./Van Gogh), (Bettmann/Karl Marx), (L.Goldsmith/Bob Marley), 9 (Bettmann/Ellis Island 1917), (Bettmann/procession of immigrants & medical examination), 10 (German boy), 22 (Bettmann/both), 37 (L.Vincent/Corbis Sygma/Oscar), 40 (J.Blairst/Robert Redford), (Reents/Siemoneit/Sygma/Leonardo di Capri), 63 (Gianni Dagli Orti/Socrates), (C.Bland/Eye Ubiquitous/Buddha), (F.G.Mayr/Washington), (Bettmann/Parker), (Bettmann/Luther King), (Bettmann/Austen), 74 (J.Cornfield/hand), 77 (Bettmann/with wife and Mickey Mouse), 81 (K.Su/Great Wall of China), (Gianni Dagli Orti/Mona Lisa), (C.Collins/World Trade Centre attack), 82 (Bettmann/Pompeii figures), 83 (Schenectady Museum; Hall of Electrical History Foundation/Marconi), 84 (Hulton-Deutsch Collection/Bleriot), (sea), (Bettmann/Titanic), 85 (NASA/Neil Armstrong on the moon), 87 (Bettmann/trenches), 96 (M.Cantaro/Darcy Bussell), 103 (D. G. Houser/women), (M. S. Lewis/child in doorway), (B.Breedy/Man and clothes), 113 (Bettmann/rail easel & with Gala), (J.Bryson/Sygma/Dali staring eyes); Corbis Royalty-free p63 (sea); Courtesy of Daimler Chrysler UK Ltd p16 (Chrysler Ltd Street Cruiser); By kind permission of Daimler Chrysler for Mercedes-Benz p27; Joe Downing p27 (as a young man), 72-73 (Galla/La Thor) Downing (in his studio), 73 (left) (Joe Downing painting, 1997, oil on canvas, 162 x 130 cm), Private Collection Photo Andre Morain, 73 (right) Joe Downing painting, 1992, oil on canvas, 162 x 130 cm, Private Collection; Getty Images/The

Bridgeman Art Library p82 (Italian School, Vesuvius); Getty Images/Photographer's Choice p30 (T.Russell/newspaper presses), (J.Hunter/scuba); Getty Images/Rubberball Productions p37 (bouncer); Getty Images/Sport p38 (S.Barbour, R.Kinnaird/wrestling), 92-3 (M.Tam/runners), (J.Herbert/big screen), 96 (G.M.Prior/Steve Redgrave), (R.Kinnaird/towing); Getty Images/Stone p29 (H.Kingnorth/girl in supermarket), 39 (J.Lamb), (S.Murphy/elderly couple), 51 (R.Elliott), 54 (S.McClymont), 74 (R.H.Wetmore/18 storm), 79 (D.H. Endersbee), 91 (J.Lamb/yoga), 108 (J.McBride); Getty Images/Tabi pp13 (S.Sullivan/snowboarder), 29 (J.McKinney/crowded supermarket), 31 (D.Sacks/John), 47 (Microzoa/leaf), (S.Joester/woman & mirror), (Colorstock/hands & rosary), (J.Copeau/couple touching noses), (G.Ceo/woman on phone), 74 (J.Wilkes/water), (C.Franklin/crossroads), 110 (G.Bussell/all seasons); Getty Images/The Image Bank pp8 (A.Caulfield), 31 (J.Lamb/David), 36 (R.Lockyer), 47 (P.Molnar/father & toddler), (Flow Dog Productions/fans), 67 (A.Edwards), 91 (R.McVay/rockclimbing), 130 (C.Lucas/Abreu); Getty Images/PhotoDisc pp25, 37 (woman), 37 (dollar & jewelry), 47 (two girls & wedding), 104, 119, 120, 125, 129; Getty Images/Thinkstock p37 (luncheon); Reprinted by permission of HarperCollins Publishers Ltd © J.R.R.Tolkien 2003 p17 (J.R.R.Tolkien, The Lord of the Rings, Part I, The Fellowship of the Ring, 2002); Chris Heads p45 (from Elle Magazine, January 2002); Courtesy of Professor John Hodges p53 Olive and Fred Hodges February 2002, aged 102 years, married 77 years and Olive Hodges in 1919 aged 20; Hulton Archive p7 (AP/Airphoto/Hodges/Al Capone), 11 (Museum of the City of New York/Jacob A. Riis/Archive Photos/Polish baby), 81 (Hiroshima), (American War of Independence), 81 (E.Levick/Archive Photos/plane), 114 (painting of pilgrims at shrine), (St Bernadette); The Imperial War Museum, London p47 (ref Q70075: British and German soldiers together on Christmas Day 1914); Katz p61 (Gamma Presse Images); The Kobal Collection p4 (Duck Soup, 1933. Director Leo McCarey, Paramount Collection), 76, 77 (Disney with drawings), 127 (Road to Perdition, 2002, Tom Hanks and Tyler Hoechlin. Director Sam Mendes, 2001, Ken Lennox p4; Macmillan Children's Books p69 (Lewis Carroll Alice's Adventures in Wonderland images created by Sir John Tenniel and coloured by Dix Wallis); Magnum Photos p68 (Cornell Casa photograph of Grandma Moses, c. 1960); Mary Evans Picture Library p81 (Darwin); By kind permission of McDonald's Restaurants Ltd p27; National Pictures p57; New York Public Library p10 (Art Resource, NY/Russian girl - ID 801540); Peter Nicholls/NI Syndication p19; By kind permission of Nike p27; PA Photos p97 (D.Giles/Martina Navratilova), (ABACA Press/Nicole Kidman), 34 (J.Green), 40 (E. Molke/Jagger), (ABACA Press/Cheri), 42 (Deutsche Presse-Agentur), 52 (A.Parsons), 61 (EPA); Reproduced by permission of Penguin Books Ltd p18 (Iris Murdoch Jackson's Dilemma, Michael Joseph, 1996); Powersrock p15 (Atlantide S.N.C./four men with arms over shoulders), (Y.Levy/African men playing game), 91 (EPA/ukateboarding); By kind permission of Qantas Airways p27 (Further information can be found at www.qantas.com.au); Reprinted by permission of The Random House Group Ltd p17 (John Grisham, A Time to Kill, Arrow, 1992), (Elizabeth Young, Fair Game, Arrow, 2001), (Laurie Lee, Cider with Rosie, Vintage Classics, 2002), 18 (Iris Murdoch, Under the Net, Vintage Classics, 2002); The Sea, The Sea, Vintage Classics, 1999; Retna p40 (Larry Laszlo/Mena Suvari); Rex Features p37 (jewelled shoe), 40, 75, 81 (Berin Wall), 14 (St Bernadette's grotto & sick pilgrims), 7 (Mother Teresa), 44 (T.O'Neil/Liza Minnelli with Judy Garland), (Snap/Liza Minnelli Cabaret Poster), (Sipa Press/Liza Minnelli with David Gest), 45 (A.Krusberg/Liza Minnelli in performance with Ray Charles); David Robinson p102 (aerial); Scala p81 (Olympic Games), Scala p113 Salvador Dali, The Persistence of Memory, 1931, Oil on canvas, 9 1/2 x 13" (24.1 x 33 cm); The Museum of Modern Art, New York, Given anonymously. © Salvador Dali, Gala-Salvador Dali Foundation, DACS, London 2003; Science Photo Library p85 (John Sandford/Larry surface), p95 (Mehau Kulyk/body photomontage 'Shell' emblem reproduced with the permission of Shell International Petroleum Company Limited (Shell Property only). The trademarks used in these materials are reproduced with the permission of the trademark owners." p27; Liz & John Soars p88 (Justin); Stanley Gibbons Ltd p102 (stamps); Sijl Pictures p28 (R.Gilling/shoe factory); Courtesy of Sunderland Echo pp106 (docks); By kind permission of Toyota (© JPLC p27); Chris Tubbs p50 (from Elle Magazine, January 2002); Vin Mag Archive p37 (OK Magazine); By kind permission of Vodafone p27; Simon Winchester p105; Zefa p99 (G. Schuster), 100 (R.Wareham/Zanibar)

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologize for any apparent infringement of copyright and if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest opportunity

1

Our land is your land!

Avoiding repetition • Describing nationalities • British and American English

STARTER

1 Why are these people famous? What do they have in common? Discuss with a partner, then with the class.

1 Al Capone

2 Mother Teresa

3 Van Gogh

4 Karl Marx

5 Martina Navratilova

6 Bob Marley

7 Nicole Kidman

8 Prince Philip

2 Match each person with their country of birth and the country they died in or live in now.

Australia Czech Republic England France Germany Greece
India Italy Jamaica The Netherlands The United States Macedonia

3 Do you know why any of these people emigrated?

READING AND SPEAKING

The American dream

- 1 Look at the photograph. What things can you identify?
What is their significance?



- 2 Read the introduction to Ellis Island. Choose the numbers you think are correct. Then answer the questions.

- 1 Check the numbers with your teacher. Do any surprise you?
- 2 Which countries do you think the immigrants came from?
- 3 Why is Ellis Island a symbol of 'the American dream'?

Ellis Island is a symbol of America's immigrant heritage. For more than six decades – 1892 to 1954 – this island, about one mile south west of New York City, saw an estimated (1) 5 / 7 / 12 million immigrants pass through it. Today their descendants account for almost (2) 10% / 20% / 40% of the population of the United States. During peak periods as many as (3) 500 / 2,000 / 5,000 people each day would be checked, and questioned. Ellis Island, like its neighbour the Statue of Liberty, is a symbol of the American dream of freedom and opportunity.

- 3 Read an extract from the British writer and journalist H.G. Wells. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Answer the questions.

- 1 Why does Wells call Ellis Island 'this filter of immigrant humanity'?
- 2 What words and images does Wells use to illustrate the huge numbers of people?
- 3 What do you learn about the way the people were processed?
- 4 How would you answer Wells' final question? What has it all amounted to?



TALES FROM ELLIS ISLAND

I VISITED ELLIS ISLAND YESTERDAY. It chanced to be a good day for my purpose. For the first time in its history this filter of immigrant humanity has this week proved inadequate to the demand upon it. It was choked with twenty thousand or so from Ireland, and Poland, and Italy, and Syria, and Finland, and Albania. Men, women, children, dirt, and bags together. All day long, the long procession files, step by step, bearing bundles and trunks and boxes, past this examiner and that, past the quick, alert medical officers, and the clerks. It is a daily procession that would stretch over three miles, that in any week in the year could put a cordon of close-marching people round London or New York, that could populate a new Boston. **What in a century will it all amount to?**

H.G. Wells 1907



- 4 Read about some individual immigrants. Work in three groups.

Group A Read about the Russian girl on p10.

Group B Read about the German boy on p10.

Group C Read about the Polish baby on p11.

Answer the questions.

- 1 Who is telling the story?
 - 2 What is the problem?
 - 3 What is the role of the commissioners? How do they treat the immigrants?
 - 4 What do you learn about the families and background of the immigrants?
 - 5 Is there a happy ending?
- 5 Find partners from the other two groups. Compare the three stories, using your answers to exercise 4.

A RUSSIAN GIRL

AGE 20



A HANDSOME, CLEAR-EYED RUSSIAN GIRL of about twenty-years, the daughter of a farmer comes in and sits down before us. She is clean and intelligent looking. She nervously clasps and unclasps her hands and the tears are welling in her eyes.

'That girl,' says one commissioner, 'is an interesting and puzzling case. Her father is a farmer in moderate circumstances. A young man with whom she grew up, the son of a neighbor, came here two years ago, and last year wrote to her father that the girl could come over and he would marry her. So she came, alone. But the prospective bridegroom didn't show up. I wrote to him — he lives somewhere in New Jersey — and last week he appeared and looked her over. Finally he said he'd changed his mind. He wasn't sure whether he wanted to marry her or not. Naturally her pride was somewhat wounded. She says she doesn't want to go back to be laughed at by her family, and I can't let her land. So everything is at a standstill. She could work, look at her strong arms! A nice girl, too. Well, I don't know what to do. You don't know any lady who wants a servant, do you? No? Well, I just don't know what to do with her.'

He turns again to the girl.

'Are you willing to marry Peter if he comes again?'

The girl nods and says, 'I am', the tears brimming over.

'Well, I'll write to the fellow again and tell him he's a fool. He'll never have such a chance again.'

**William Williams Papers, Ellis Island
Commissioner, March 1910**

B GERMAN BOY

AGE 13

THEY ALSO QUESTIONED PEOPLE ON literacy. My uncle called me aside.

He said, 'Your mother doesn't know how to read.' I said, 'That's all right.'

For the reading you faced what they called the commissioners — like judges on a bench. I was surrounded by my aunt and uncle and this other uncle who's a pharmacist — my mother was in the center. They said she would have to take a test of reading.

So one uncle said, 'She can't speak English.'

A commissioner said, 'We know that. We will give her a siddur.'

You know what a siddur is? It's a Jewish book. The night they said this, I knew that she couldn't do that and we would be in trouble. Well, they opened up a siddur. There was a certain passage there they had you read. I looked at it and I saw right away what it was. I quickly studied it — I knew the whole paragraph. Then I got underneath the two of them there — I was very small — and I told her the words in Yiddish very softly. I had memorized the lines and I said them quietly and she said them louder so the commissioner could hear it. And that served the purpose. She looked at it and it sounded as if she was reading it, but I was doing the talking underneath.



Arnold Weiss, 1921



POLISH BABY

AGE 0

THE POLISH WIFE OF A Pennsylvania coal miner, both admitted a year before, had gone back suddenly to Poland to visit her old father, who had taken sick and might soon die. The visit over, she returned to America. She would be admitted at once, for little visits do not count against quotas. Her husband was at Ellis Island, waiting for her. We told him everything would be all right, but he still looked extremely nervous. Then the ship came in, the *Lapland* of the Red Star line, from Antwerp, and we found out why he was so nervous. On the day before the ship made port, out on the high seas, a baby had been born to the returning mother. Mother and child were both doing well in the Ellis Island hospital, everyone was delighted, until the inspector admitted the mother, but excluded the baby.

'Why?' asked the father, trembling.

'Polish quota exhausted,' pronounced the helpless inspector.

They brought the case to me. Deport the baby? I couldn't. But somebody had to act quickly, for the mother was not doing well under the idea that her baby would soon be taken from her.

'The baby was not born in Poland,' I ruled, 'but on a British ship. She is chargeable to the British quota. The deck of a British ship is British soil.'

'British quota was exhausted yesterday,' replied the inspector. That was a blow. But I had another shot.

'Come to think of it,' I remarked, 'the *Lapland* hails from Antwerp. That's in Belgium.'

The baby is Belgian. Use the Belgian quota.'

'Belgian quota ran out a week ago,' said the inspector. I was stumped.

'Oh, look here,' I began again. 'I've got it! It is clear to me that the mother was hurrying back, so the baby would be born here and be a native-born American citizen. No immigrant business at all. This baby had the intention to be born in America, only the ship was a day late and that upset everything. And - under the law - the baby, by intention, was born in America. It is an American baby - no baby Pole at all, no British, no Belgian - just a good American baby. That's the way I rule!'

Henry Curran, Ellis Island Commissioner, 1922-26

Vocabulary work

- 6 Find the words or phrases in your text which have similar meanings to these phrases. Explain them to your partners from the other groups.

Text A

- 1 plays nervously with her hands
- 2 her eyes are filling with tears
- 3 her pride was hurt
- 4 no progress can be made
- 5 she finally starts to cry

Text B

- 1 took me away from the group
- 2 stood opposite
- 3 particular
- 4 learnt ... by heart
- 5 worked well

Text C

- 1 shaking slightly
- 2 that was a big disappointment
- 3 I made another attempt
- 4 comes from
- 5 I was not able to think of any answer at all

What do you think?

- Read and comment on these quotes.

- 1 'No country has received a more diverse variety of immigrants than the United States.'

Do you think this is true? What other countries have received great numbers of immigrants? From where?

- 2 'Each successive group of arrivals, however, is viewed as less desirable than their predecessors.'

How do people generally react to immigrants? Why do you think they react like this?

- What's the difference between ...?

a refugee	an illegal immigrant
an asylum seeker	an immigrant

Are any of these groups in the news at the moment?

- Do you have many immigrants in your country? Which countries do they come from? Do you know of any that have become famous and/or successful?
- What causes people to emigrate? Is there any country you would like to emigrate to? Why?

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Avoiding repetition

There are several ways to avoid repeating words or phrases.

1 Missing words out

The girl nods and says 'I am ...' (= I am willing to marry Peter.)

What words have been omitted in these sentences?

She told me to tidy up, but I already had.

Frank won the match. I didn't think he would.

A present for me? How kind. You shouldn't have.

2 Reduced infinitives

Just to can be used instead of the whole infinitive when the meaning is clear from the context. Which words are omitted after to at the end of these sentences?

'Your mother doesn't know how to read.' I said,

'That's right. She never learnt to.'

They said she had to take a test for reading. So one uncle said, 'Does she have to?'

3 Synonyms in context

bags ... bundles ... trunks ... boxes

told her softly ... said quietly

Think of another word for these words.

huge rich kill injure argument

▶▶ Grammar Reference p147



©2003 Frank Cotham from cartoonbank.com. All rights reserved.

Missing words out

1 Complete the sentences with an auxiliary verb or a modal verb. Make the verb form negative where necessary.

1 I tried to repair my car, but I couldn't. I didn't have the right tools.

2 'You look awful. Why don't you see a doctor?'
'I _____. He just gave me some pills and told me to take things easy.'

3 'It's a long journey. Take care on the motorway.'
'Don't worry. We _____.'

4 I met your sister last night. She thought we'd met before, but we _____.

5 'Have you read this report?'
'No, I _____, but I _____.'

6 The weather forecast said that it might rain this afternoon. If it _____, we'll have to call off the tennis.

7 My car's being mended at the moment. If it _____, I'd give you a lift. Sorry.

8 I'm so glad you told Sue exactly what you thought of her, because if you _____, I certainly _____!

9 I got that job I applied for, so I was delighted. I really didn't think I _____.

10 'Come on, John! It's time you were getting up!'
'I _____! I'll be down in a second.'

11 'I think I'll give Bob a ring.'
'You _____. You haven't been in touch with him for ages.'

12 I went to a party last night, but I wish I _____. It was awful.

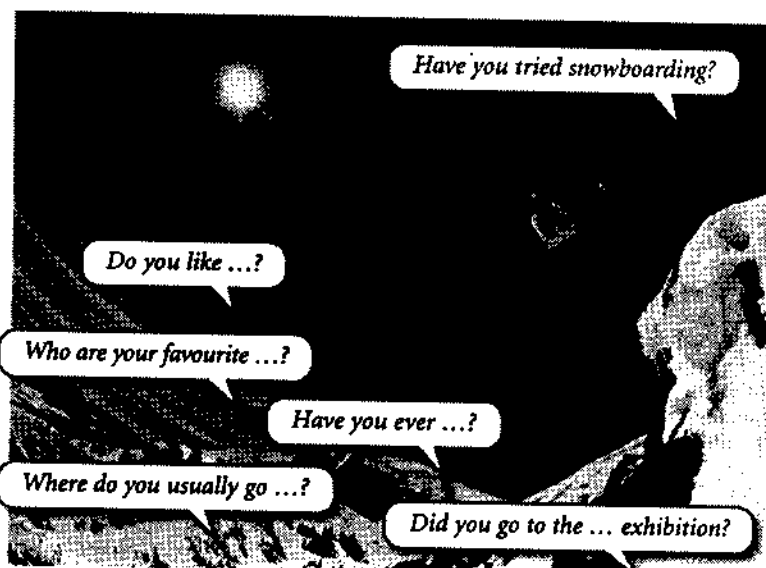
13 My boyfriend insists on doing all the cooking, but I wish he _____ - it's inedible!

14 'Aren't you going to Portugal for your holidays?'
'Well, we _____, but we're still not sure.'

15 'Andy got drunk at Anne's party and started insulting everyone.'
'He _____! That's so typical. He's always doing that.'

7.11 Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

- 2 Ask questions and try and find things that you have in common with other students in the class.



- 3 Tell the class what you found out, using some of these expressions.

Things in common	Things different
Juan's been to Russia, and so have I. He likes jazz, and I do, too. He doesn't smoke, and neither do I. He isn't married, and nor am I. He can't drive, and I can't, either.	He's tried snowboarding, but I haven't. He comes from a big family, but I don't. He didn't see the film, but I did. He hasn't been to Paris. I have, though.

Reduced infinitives

- 4 Write the responses, using the verb in brackets and a reduced infinitive.

- A Can you come round for a meal tonight?
B Thanks very much. I'd love to. (love)
- A Did you post my letter?
B _____ (forget)
- A I can't take you to the airport after all. Sorry.
B _____ (agree)
- A Was John surprised when he won?
B _____ (not expect)
- A Why did you slam the door in my face?
B _____ (not mean)
- A You'll be able to enjoy yourself when the exams finish.
B _____ (intend)

T12 Listen and compare your answers.

Synonyms in context

- 5 Complete the sentences with a synonym of the word in *italics*. Change the word class where necessary, as in the first example.
- I don't *trust* this government. I have no faith in them whatsoever.
 - She is not only a *skilled* painter, she is also a(n) _____ piano player.
 - You've managed to *persuade* me. Your argument is most _____.
 - Advertisements are not allowed to *lie*, but they _____ us in subtle ways.
 - Chess is a game of *tactics*. You have to plan your _____ well in advance.
 - The doctor read my notes *carefully*, then gave me a(n) _____ examination.
 - He has an *annoying* habit of always being late. It really _____ me.
 - It's *very important* that you don't tell anyone. In fact, it's _____.
 - Skiing can be *dangerous*, but I like to take a few _____.
 - She wasn't *scared* at all by the dog, but I was _____.
- 6 Find synonyms, or near synonyms, for these words. Write sentences to illustrate their differences in meaning.

- enemy
- love
- talk
- friend
- hate
- laugh

An *enemy* is who you're fighting against in a war.
A business wants to *do better* than its competitors.
We are *rivals* in love, but *opponents* in games.



'Sometimes, from time to time, now and again, occasionally, at times I wish I'd never been given this Thesaurus.'

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Two brothers from Kenya

- 1 Read the newspaper extract. Who are the people? Why was there a newspaper story about them?

From £5 to £250,000,000!

The inspiring tale of two Asian brothers who fled to Britain from East Africa and made a fortune

In 1967, at the age of 16, Vijay Patel and his brother Bhikhu fled to Britain from the village of Eldoret in Kenya. They arrived with £5 between them. They now own a pharmaceutical company which employs more than 600 people and is worth £250 million! This is the story of how they made their fortunes.



The Patel brothers receiving their 'Entrepreneur of the Year' awards

- 2 Read the questions from the first part of an interview with Vijay and Bhikhu. What do you think their answers might be?

- 1 What was life like in Eldoret?
- 2 Did you come to England together?
- 3 What was it that made you come to England?
- 4 What were the steps from that point to actually starting your business?
- 5 Did you qualify as an architect?
- 6 There is a tradition among the Patels, certainly in East Africa, of business, isn't there?
- 7 Was your father a businessman?

- 3 **T13** Read and listen to part one of the interview on p132. Compare the brothers' answers with your ideas in exercise 2.

- 4 **T14** Listen only to part two. Are these statements true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 They both began their careers with corner shops.
- 2 Bhikhu wanted to give up his work as an architect.
- 3 Vijay didn't start his pharmacy business until Bhikhu joined him.
- 4 The two brothers working together in the same business often causes problems.
- 5 Their different strengths and weaknesses complement each other.
- 6 They are grateful to their mother for the sacrifices she made.
- 7 She worked 24 hours a day, seven days a week for thirteen years.
- 8 Both brothers have experienced racial discrimination.

- 5 **T15** Listen to part three. Complete the sentences with the exact words used.

- 1 We _____ for six hundred people directly.
- 2 We're not the sort of _____ or _____ people in any sense.
- 3 I mean, clearly, in terms of _____ in _____, one tends to sort of _____ oneself a little bit but not _____, I hope.
- 4 I would rather do some _____ work rather than _____.
- 5 Chase your _____ and go for it, and that's _____ what I have done.

What do you think?

- Which factors in Vijay and Bhikhu's lives do you feel have led to their success?
- Do you agree with the advice they give to young people? In what ways are they good role models?
- Asians form a large part of Britain's immigrant population. Why is this?
- The brothers have lived in England for many years and yet they still have Asian accents. Why might this be?
- How does family background influence lives? How has your family influenced your life?

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Describing nationalities

- 1 Complete the chart. Use a dictionary if necessary. Add two more countries of your choice.

Country	Adjective	Person	People	Language(s)
Britain	British	a Briton*	the British	English, Welsh, Gaelic
Scotland				
France				
Belgium				
The Netherlands/ Holland				
Denmark				
Sweden				
Poland				
Turkey				
Spain				
Switzerland				
Argentina				
Peru				
Iceland				
New Zealand				
Afghanistan				

*Rather old-fashioned now. Used mainly to refer to ancient Britons.

- 2 **T 1.6** Listen to six people of different nationality speaking English and try to identify where they come from. What do they say about their country and/or nationality?
- 3 Work in small groups. Choose a few nationalities that you know. First describe them in stereotypical fashion, then discuss how much your experience of them fits the stereotype.

The British have a reputation for being cold and reserved, and they're always talking about the weather because it's so awful.

Actually most of my English friends are very outgoing, they ...

English food is considered to be dreadful – completely tasteless.

*Well, what I found when I was in England was ...
... and the weather was ...*

- 4 What is your nationality stereotype? Are you like that?



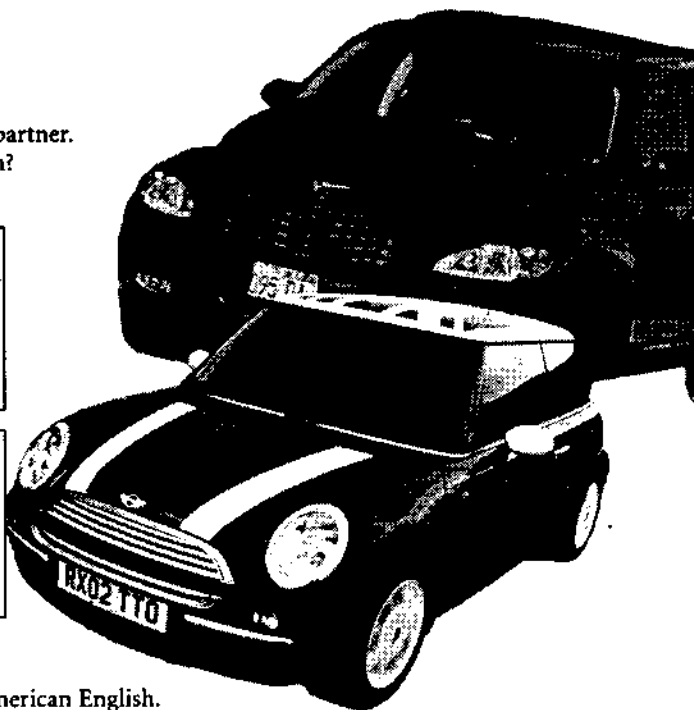
THE LAST WORD

British and American English

- 1 **T 1.7** Read and listen to the conversations with a partner.
Which is British English? Which is American English?
What are the differences?

- 1 A Where do you live?
B We've got a small flat. It's on the ground floor of a block of flats in the centre of town.
A Have you got a garden?
B No, we haven't, just a car park at the back.

- 2 A Where do you live?
B We have a small apartment. It's on the first floor of an apartment building downtown.
A Do you have a yard?
B No we don't, just a parking lot in the back.



- 2 **T 1.8** Read and listen to these conversations in American English.
Try to convert them into British English.

- 1 A Do you have the time?
B Yeah, it's five of four.
A Did you say five after?
B No, five of four.
- 2 A What are you gonna do on the weekend?
B The usual stuff. Play soccer with the kids, and sweep the yard.
- 3 A Did you enjoy the game?
B Yeah, it was great, but we had to stand in line for half an hour to get tickets.
- 4 A Did you have a good vacation?
B Yeah, real good.
A How long were you away?
B Five days in all. Monday thru Friday.

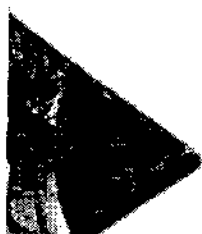
- 5 A Can you mail this letter and package for me?
B Sure thing.
A And can you stop by the liquor store and buy a six-pack of Michelob and some potato chips?
B Is that all?
- 6 A Did you see *The Birds* on cable last night?
B Sure, even though I've seen it two times before.
A My third time. Isn't it just an awesome movie?
B Sure is. One of my favorites.
- 7 A Did they bring the check yet?
B Yeah. They just did. But I can't read a thing. It's lighted so badly in here.
- 8 A Do we need to stop for gas?
B Yeah, why not? I need to use the restroom anyway.

- 3 **T 1.9** Listen and compare your ideas.

- 4 What is the British English for these words? Use a dictionary if necessary.

cellphone	bathrobe	drugstore	truck	fall (n)	windshield
garbage	cookie	closet	sidewalk	elevator	pants

Do you know any more American English words or expressions?



2

Never lost for words!

Phrasal verbs • Tense review • Sounds and spelling

STARTER



1 Read the extracts. Match them with a cover and type of book. What helped you to identify them?

a modern romance* an autobiography a fantasy a classical drama a thriller a travel story

**This is also known as 'Chick Lit' - literature for 'chicks' / modern young women.*

1 Nothing prepares you for the Grand Canyon. No matter how many times you read about it or see it pictured, it still takes your breath away. Your mind, unable to deal with anything on this scale, just shuts down.

2 To be, or not to be - that is the question. Whether 'tis nobler in the mind to suffer the slings and arrows of outrageous fortune, or to take arms against a sea of troubles ...

3 I never set out to pinch anyone's bloke, let alone Nina's. The day it all started, picking up a bloke was the last thing on my mind. Even I don't go out on the pull in manky old combats and a sweater that's seen better days.



4 The group stood silently, mesmerized by the two bodies, which, though dead, continued to spew blood. The thick smell of gunfire hung over the stairway.

5 As for Bilbo Baggins, even while he was making his speech, he had been fingering the golden ring in his pocket: his magic ring that he had kept secret for so many years. As he stepped down he slipped it on his finger, and he was never seen by any hobbit in Hobbiton again.

6 The last days of my childhood were also the last days of the village. I belonged to that generation which saw the end of a thousand years' life.



2 What are your favourite types of book? Which books have you read recently? Why? Tell your partner about one of them.

3 Have you read any books in English? Discuss them, and reasons for reading in English, with the class.

READING AND SPEAKING

Losing her words

- 1 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions to complete the biodata of novelist Iris Murdoch.

Student A Look at this page.

Student B Look at the copy from your teacher.

Where was she born?

Dublin.

MURDOCH, Iris Jean

1919-1999

She was born in (1) Dublin, the only child of Anglo-Irish parents. She read (2) classics at Oxford University, then worked for four years in (3) the USA. She returned to Oxford to teach philosophy. Her first novel *Under the Net*, published in (4) 1954, was an immediate success. Other titles include *The Sandcastle*, *The Bell*, and *The Sea, The Sea*, for which she was awarded (5) the Nobel Prize. She said that in her novels she tried to convey (6) 'the unique strangeness of human beings'.

In 1956 she married John Bayley, a professor of (7) English literature at Oxford. They had a (8) long, happy, if unusual marriage, but no children.

Iris was still writing in her late 70s. Her 26th and last novel, *Jackson's Dilemma*, published in 1995, was written whilst she was suffering from the beginnings of (9) Alzheimer's disease. She died in 1999.

The Oscar-winning film, *Iris* (2002), starring (10) Judi Dench and Kate Winslet, tells the story of her love affair with John Bayley and her tragic struggle with the disease.



- 2 Read these three headings from an article about Iris Murdoch.

- Wild piles of books and papers
- Just a bit of writer's block?
- Utterly at ease with each other

What ideas do you get about Iris's house and its occupants?
What is 'writer's block'?

- 3 Read part one of the article and answer the questions.

- 1 How is Joanna greeted when she arrives?
- 2 What impression do you get of John and Iris's house?
Choose three key words from the text to describe it.
- 3 What are your first impressions of John and Iris?
Likeable or unlikeable? Why?
- 4 What images do the words in *italics* convey? Use your dictionaries.
 - a ... the *cheery face* of Professor John Bayley appears at the window, *chewing baked beans* ...
 - b ... *heaving* carrier bags, *spilling* their paper guts across the floor ...
 - c ... Iris Murdoch *spirals gracefully* into the room ...
 - d ... an *abandoned* glass of red wine *tucked away* under each armchair ...

- 4 Read part two and answer the questions.

- 1 Why has Joanna requested the interview with Iris?
- 2 Why is Joanna worried?
- 3 Both John and Iris try to explain her difficulty with writing.
How do their explanations differ?
Who is the most optimistic?
- 4 How did Iris approach her writing in the past?
- 5 In what ways does she show that she feels confused?

- 5 Read part three on p20.

A VISIT TO IRIS MURDOCH

BY JOANNA COLES

The journalist Joanna Coles interviewed Iris Murdoch at her home in Oxfordshire shortly before the novelist was diagnosed as suffering from Alzheimer's Disease.

PART ONE

Wild piles of books and papers

'Bell not working. WE ARE HERE. Knock vigorously.' I do, and the cheery face of Professor John Bayley appears at the window, chewing baked beans. 'Come in, come in my dears,' he exclaims, opening the front door and waving a piece of toast. 'I find beans just the thing for lunch, don't you?'

He whisks us through a chaotic hall, past a vast, unsteady pyramid of books and into the most eccentric drawing room I have ever seen. There are heaving carrier bags, spilling their paper guts across the floor, and wild piles of books and papers. The walls are Georgian Green and though it is midday, it's dark, the window impenetrable to the light because of the fig leaves outside.

As we sit down, Iris Murdoch spirals gracefully into the room, and I suddenly notice there's an abandoned glass of red wine tucked away under each armchair, as if perhaps in case of emergency.



PART TWO

Just a bit of writer's block?

'Hello', Iris smiles, her eyes wide and friendly, and although I have already explained on the telephone, I explain again that I'm here because there are rumours she has given up writing for good. It's not the easiest of questions to ask such an intelligent and prolific author, and I am worried she may think me rude for even trying. But can it be true?

To my huge relief she smiles. 'Well, I'm trying to do something, but it hasn't, well ...' and then she starts laughing.

'Just a bit of writer's block I think,' interrupts Bayley, cheerfully.

'Yes, it's not ... well ... I certainly am trying,' she replies.

Iris Murdoch is without question one of the finest writers of her generation, producing 26 novels. Her last book, *Jackson's Dilemma*, was published last autumn, but nothing has followed. Has she suffered from this kind of block before?

'I think this is a very bad one,' she says absently.

'It has occurred before darling,' says Bayley, leaning towards her reassuringly.

'Perhaps,' she says flatly.

And do you still enjoy writing when you can?

'Well, I enjoy it, when I've found a way out, as it were. But, er ... otherwise ...' and she smiles apologetically.

'Otherwise ... I'm in a very, very bad, quiet place.'

We are all quiet for a moment before Bayley says to her:

'In the past, because of your philosophical mind perhaps, you've worked the whole novel out in advance, in meticulous detail, haven't you darling?'

He heads off to the kitchen to make coffee.

'I feel gloomy,' says Iris. 'The books I've written in the past I've done quite quickly. But I'm afraid at the moment that I'm just falling, falling ... falling as it were. But I may get better. I expect something will turn up. I hope so.'

Utterly at ease with each other

Bayley returns with a jug of coffee.

'You must pour,' says Iris patting his arm.
'You must pour.'

'Pour? Oh, I thought you meant 'paw'!

And he starts scrabbling in the air as if he's a cat, and we all laugh. Their relationship is not only touching, it's still fresh and young, making sense of what marriage is for. Despite Iris's current problems, they seem utterly at ease with each other.

I wonder if they've missed having children?

'Iris has never shown the slightest interest in being a mum,' says her husband. 'And I'm not sure, but you could say that the best women novelists didn't have children. Jane Austen, George Eliot ... I mean the really top notch ones.'

As Iris poses obediently for photos, he beckons me over to the kitchen table, where there appear to be two of everything, two honey pots, two mustard pots, two jam pots, and seven jars of coffee.

'We've been to see doctors, you know, and they say the old brain is very crafty. It can come up against a block and for a bit things are a bit strange, but then it finds its way around things again.'



6 Answer the questions on part three.

- 1 How does Iris and John's relationship 'make sense of what marriage is for'?
- 2 How does John explain the fact that they never had children? Does he feel bitter about it?
- 3 What is John's final note of optimism?

7 Answer these questions on the whole article.

- 1 In what ways do the house and its occupants reflect each other?
- 2 What instances are there that show he is proud of his wife's talent?
- 3 In what ways does he show his love for his wife?
- 4 Which adjectives would you use for John and which for Iris? Which describe both?

unconventional	loveable	loving
childlike	supportive	bewildered
distracted	gentle	cheerful
encouraging	dispirited	considerate

Vocabulary work

8 Match the words and definitions.

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1 to whisk sb (away) | a clever in an indirect way |
| 2 rumour (n) | b to gesture to sb to come here |
| 3 prolific (adj) | c information that is possibly not true |
| 4 gloomy (adj) | d to take sb somewhere quickly |
| 5 top notch (adj) | e likely to fail |
| 6 crafty (adj) | f to use your hands like an animal |
| 7 to beckon sb | g very productive |
| 8 unsteady (adj) | h dark and sad |
| 9 to scrabble | i to feel about roughly with the fingers |
| 10 to paw | j high quality |

What do you think?

- Iris always said that she was very lucky to have found John. Why might she have said this? Do you think he felt the same about meeting her?
- How would John Bayley's role in her life differ before and after the onset of her illness?
- Alzheimer's Disease is a tragedy in any family. Why was it a particular tragedy for Iris Murdoch?

VOCABULARY

Phrasal verbs

- 1 A phrasal verb can have more than one meaning. Some meanings are literal, some are metaphorical. In which of these sentences is *take in* used literally? Is it separable or inseparable?

- 1 My sister is always taking in stray cats.
- 2 These trousers are too big. I need to take them in.
- 3 She was completely taken in by his lies.
- 4 She likes to take in a gallery or two when she's in London.
- 5 They had so much news that I couldn't take it all in.

- 2 Complete the phrasal verbs from the article about Iris Murdoch on pp19-20.

- 1 There's a glass tucked _____ under each armchair.
- 2 There are rumours she has given _____ writing.
- 3 In the past you've _____ the novel out in advance.
- 4 He heads _____ to the kitchen to make coffee.
- 5 I may get better. I expect something will _____.

- 6 (The brain) can come _____ a block.

► Grammar Reference p147

get on with get up to

- 13 The kids are very quiet. I wonder what they _____?
- 14 What page _____ we _____ in the last lesson?
- 15 How _____ you _____ your husband's family?
- 16 How _____ you all _____ last night's homework?

go down with go in for

- 17 I can't understand why people _____ a career in politics.
- 18 I keep sneezing. I think I _____ a cold.
- 19 Her last novel _____ badly _____ the critics.
- 20 Our family _____ big celebrations at Christmas.

- 2 Compare the pairs of sentences. What effect does the particle have?

- 1 I wrote a letter. I wrote down his address.
- 2 I saw her at the station. I saw her off at the station.
- 3 You used my toothpaste. You've used up all the toothpaste.

- 3 Complete the sentences with a verb and a particle.

get (x2)	make	wear
work	settle	hand
hold	lie	
go	keep	

through	away (x2)	on
into	up	back
around	over	off
in		

- 1 My daughter spends the whole day _____ in front of the telly.
- 2 _____ from me. I've got a cold.
- 3 You told the teacher I cheated! I'll _____ you _____ for that! Just wait!
- 4 My tooth started hurting as the effects of the painkiller _____.
- 5 We're off! _____ tight!
- 6 _____ your homework carefully before you _____ it _____.
- 7 The students were very quiet, _____ on their computers.
- 8 My son's a total mystery to me. I can't _____ to him at all.
- 9 You didn't believe what he said, did you? He _____ the whole thing _____.
- 10 Have you _____ your new flat yet?

- 4 T2.1 Listen and respond to the lines of conversation, using a phrasal verb from this page.

Do you want a cigarette?

No, thanks. I've given up.

- T2.2 Listen and compare your answers.

- 1 Complete the four sentences, using each phrasal verb twice in a suitable form.

give away give up

- 1 'Guess how old I am.' 'I _____, You'll have to tell me.'
- 2 They _____ a free CD with next month's magazine.
- 3 He tried to disguise himself, but I knew it was him. His voice _____ him _____.
- 4 He handed his gun to the police officer and _____ himself _____.

work out work up

- 5 I can't _____ how to start this machine.
- 6 She _____ herself _____ into a terrible state about the exam next week.
- 7 All this physical works makes you _____ an appetite.
- 8 I keep fit by _____ regularly at the gym.

put down put up

- 9 Stay with us. We can easily _____ you _____ for the night.
- 10 Let me _____ that date _____ in my diary or I'll forget it.
- 11 The shop _____ just _____ all its prices. I'm not going back.
- 12 He has a way of always _____ me _____, and I feel so foolish.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

I have nothing to declare but my genius!

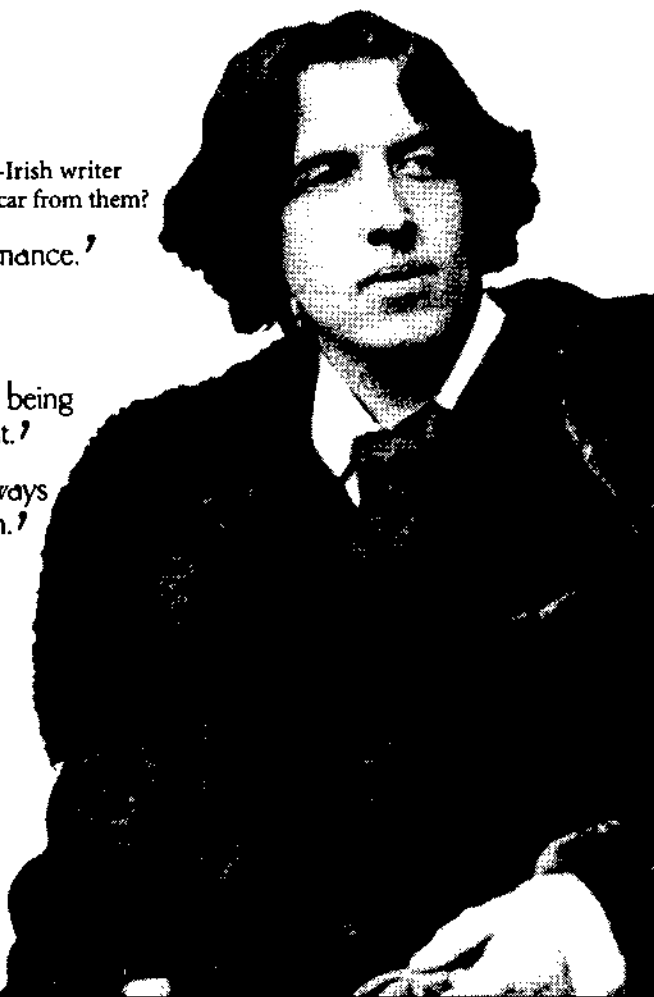
- 1 Read these quotes from Oscar Wilde, a well-known Anglo-Irish writer famous for his sayings. What impression do you form of Oscar from them?

- 'To love oneself is the beginning of a lifelong romance.'
- 'There is no such thing as an immoral book. Books are well written, or badly written.'
- 'There is only one thing in the world worse than being talked about, and that is not being talked about.'
- 'I never travel without my diary. One should always have something sensational to read on the train.'
- 'I can resist anything but temptation.'

- 2 Are these statements about Oscar Wilde true or false? Discuss with a partner.

- 1 He was a famous 20th century writer.
- 2 He wrote plays, poetry, and prose.
- 3 His most successful plays were comedies.
- 4 He never married.
- 5 He was imprisoned because of his political beliefs.

- 3 Read the biodata of Oscar Wilde and check your answers. Which play is considered to be his masterpiece? What is the meaning of the words *earnest* and *Ernest*? What is their pronunciation?



OSCAR WILDE

1854–1900

An Irish-born English poet, novelist, and playwright. His greatest success was in the theatre with his shrewd and sparkling comedies, such as *Lady Windermere's Fan* (1892) and *An Ideal Husband* (1895). *The Importance of Being Earnest* (1895) is considered to be his masterpiece. Based on the double meaning of the name Ernest, it is an attack on people who take themselves too seriously. Wilde married in 1884 and had two sons. However, in 1895 he was imprisoned for two years for homosexual practices. On his release in 1897 he went to live in France. He died in Paris in 1900.



- 4 **T 2.3** Listen to a scene from *The Importance of Being Earnest*. Lady Bracknell is interviewing a young man, Jack Worthing. Answer the questions.

- 1 Why is Jack being interviewed?
- 2 What's his occupation? Where does his money come from? Does he earn it?
- 3 Who is Gwendolen?
- 4 What pleases Lady Bracknell about Jack? What displeases her?
- 5 What do you learn of Jack's family background?
- 6 Is his interview successful?
- 7 What advice does Lady Bracknell give him?
- 8 Which of these adjectives would you use to describe Lady Bracknell?

reserved	aristocratic	snobbish	overbearing	timid
witty	prejudiced	earnest	inarticulate	arrogant
courteous	haughty	patronizing		



- T 2.3** Your teacher will give you the scene. Read and listen to it again. Then answer the questions.

- 1 Give some examples to justify the adjectives you chose to describe Lady Bracknell.
- 2 How did Jack get the surname 'Worthing'?
- 3 What do you learn about the lives of the English upper classes in the 19th century? What was important to them? What were their attitudes to marriage, work, and property?
- 4 How does Oscar Wilde make the scene funny? Give some examples.

Vocabulary work

- 6 Find words in the scene to replace the words in *italics*.
- 1 There are far too many *lazy* men.
 - 2 I do not approve of anything that *interferes* with natural ignorance.
 - 3 As far as I can *see*, the people who *hunt animals illegally* are the only people who *earn money from it*.
 - 4 A girl with a simple, *innocent* nature, like Gwendolen could hardly be expected to *live* in the country.
 - 5 The *deceased* Mr Thomas Cardew, an old gentleman with a very *kind and generous personality*.
 - 6 Where did this Mr James, or Thomas, Cardew *find* this ordinary handbag?
 - 7 The line is *not important*.
 - 8 I *admit* I feel somewhat *confused* by what you have just told me.
 - 9 To be born, or at any rate, *reared* in a handbag, seems to me to *show no respect* for the ordinary *decencies* of family life.
 - 10 Our only daughter – a girl *raised* with the utmost care ...

What do you think?

- Discuss these questions with a partner.
 - 1 How do you think Jack came to be in the handbag? Write down as many ideas as you can think of.
 - 2 Do you think Jack ultimately discovers his origins and marries Gwendolen?
- Discuss your ideas with the class. Your teacher will give you the answers. Read and compare them. Whose ideas were closest?
- Work with a partner and act out the scene together. Remember, it's a comedy, so make it as funny as possible! Perform the scene in front of the class.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Tense review

- 1 Which tenses are used in these sentences? Write the verb forms in the correct place in the charts. Fill any gaps with examples of your own.
- You're *being* very quiet. *Have you been silenced* by Oscar's wit?
 - Jack *was found* in a handbag while the cloakroom *was being cleaned*.
 - It's the first time I've *seen* you in ages. What *have you been doing*?
 - As soon as we *have* any news, you'll be the first to know.
 - This room *is being used* for a meeting at the moment.
 - I wish I'd *realized* that he'd *been lying* to me all along.
 - He *didn't recognize* his home town. It *had been rebuilt* after the war.
 - We'll *have been living* here three years this November.

ACTIVE	Simple	Continuous
Present		are being
Past		
Future		
Present Perfect		
Past Perfect		
Future Perfect		

PASSIVE	Simple	Continuous
Present		
Past		
Future		
Present Perfect	have been silenced	
Past Perfect		
Future Perfect		

►► Grammar Reference p148

Simple and continuous

- 2 Where possible, change the verb forms in these sentences from simple to continuous or continuous to simple. What is the change in meaning? Why is the change sometimes not possible?
- Everyone's very nice to me. I don't know why.
 - I'll see Luis later.
 - I've cut my finger. It's really hurting.
 - David always gives Pam expensive presents.
 - What do you do?
 - He fired a gun.
 - She was dying.
 - I've been checking my emails.
 - The train leaves in five minutes.
 - That room is used as a study.

Perfect and non-perfect

- 3 Compare the use of tenses in these pairs of sentences. What are the differences in meaning?
- They've been married for thirty years.
They were married for thirty years.
 - I come from Scotland.
I've come from Scotland.
 - When I've talked to him, I'll tell you.
When I talk to him, I'll tell him.
 - The arrangements will be finalized on Friday.
The arrangements will have been finalized by Friday.
 - Did you ever meet my grandfather?
Have you ever met my grandfather?
 - I wish I knew the way.
I wish I'd known the way.
- 4 This is what the comedian Groucho Marx said to his host at the end of a party:



The joke rests on two different uses of the Present Perfect. What are they?

Active and passive

- 5 Correct these sentences.
- In the extract from *The Importance of Being Earnest*, Jack is interviewing Lady Bracknell.
 - His money invests in stocks and shares.
 - Gwendolen can't expect to live in the country.
 - Jack gave the name Worthing.
 - The bag had found at Victoria Station.
 - Oscar Wilde imprisoned for two years.

Tenses and verb forms

6 **T 2.4** Close your books and listen to an extract from a modern romantic novel. You should recognize the opening lines. The speaker is Harriet Grey, a young woman who lives and works in London. What problems does she have? What do you learn about her 'friend' Nina?

7 **T 2.4** Read the text and put the verb in brackets into a suitable tense or verb form. Listen again and check and compare. What do you think happens next in the story?

FAIR GAME

25

I never (1) _____ (set out) to pinch anyone's bloke, let alone Nina's. The day it all (2) _____ (start), picking up a bloke was the last thing on my mind. Even I (3) _____ (not go out) on the pull in manky old combats and a sweater that (4) _____ (see) better days. All I (5) _____ (think of), on that drizzly afternoon, was (6) _____ (find) a cab home. (7) _____ (start off) in mist-like fashion, the drizzle (8) _____ (move up) a gear, as if it (9) _____ (think) about (10) _____ (turn into) proper rain. At this point I was just up the road from Covent Garden, with drizzled-on hair and a jumper starting (11) _____ (smell) of a wet Shetland sheep. That was when I saw Nina (12) _____ (come) out of a smart little restaurant, with a bloke on her arm.

If I can misquote Jane Austen here, it is a truth universally (13) _____ (acknowledge) that if you are fated (14) _____ (bump into) someone like Nina when you (15) _____ (not see) her for four years, you (16) _____ (look) like a pig's breakfast. While she (17) _____ (look) like a *Sunday Times* fashion shoot in silk and cashmere. Only about six paces away, she (18) _____ (talk and laugh) in her silver-tinkle way to the bloke, who (19) _____ (hold) her umbrella up to stop her (20) _____ (get) wet. The last time I (21) _____ (see) her (at a wedding four years back) she (22) _____ (have) some tall, dark specimen in tow. Although everything about him was theoretically perfect, I (23) _____ (not be) particularly impressed – to me he (24) _____ (seem) just a bit plastic, somehow. I (25) _____ quite _____ (not know) what it was with this one – he wasn't classically good-looking exactly, but the spark (26) _____ (hit) me at once!



THE LAST WORD

Sounds and spelling

- 1 Work with a partner. Write down all the English words you know which contain the letters *ough*. Tell the class, paying particular attention to the pronunciation.
- 2 Read the poem and decide on the pronunciation of the words in *italics*. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Hints on English Pronunciation

I take it you already know
Of *tough* and *bought* and *cough* and *dough*
Others may stumble but not you,
On *thorough*, *plough*, *enough* and *through*
Well done! And now you wish perhaps
To learn of less familiar traps.

Beware of *heard*: a dreadful word
That looks like *beard* and sounds like *bird*.
And *dead*: it's said like *bed* not *bead*
For goodness sake don't call it *deed*.
Watch out for *meat* and *great* and *threat*
(They rhyme with *suite* and *straight* and *debt*).

And *here* is not a match for *there*,
Nor *dear* and *fear*, for *bear* and *pear*.
And then there's *dose* and *rose* and *lose* –
Just look them up – and *goose* and *choose*.
And *cork* and *work* and *card* and *ward*
And *font* and *front* and *word* and *sword*
And *do* and *go*, then *thwart* and *cart*,
Come, come! I've hardly made a start.

A dreadful language? Why man alive!
I'd mastered it when I was five.
And yet to write, the more I tried,
I hadn't learned at fifty-five.

- 4 Write the words from the poem beside their phonetic transcription in column A.

►► Phonetic symbols chart on inside back cover

	A	B
1 /θru:/	through	thraw
2 /hɜ:d/		
3 /mi:t/		
4 /swi:t/		
5 /hɪə/		
6 /diə/		
7 /beə/		
8 /peə/		
9 /rəʊz/		
10 /tʃu:z/		

T 2.6 Listen to ten sentences with words that sound like those in column A, but have a different spelling and meaning. Write them in column B.

- 5 The words in exercise 4 are all **homophones**. These are words with the same pronunciation but different meaning. Here are some more homophones. Say the word in phonetics, then write the homophones.

	A	B
1 /pɔ:/	pour	paw
2 /bi:n/		
3 /wɪtʃ/		
4 /weə/		
5 /wɒ:/		
6 /θrəʊn/		
7 /kɔ:t/		
8 /flaʊə/		
9 /pi:s/		

- 3 **T 2.5** Listen and check your pronunciation. Practise reading the poem aloud, taking turns to read a verse each.

3




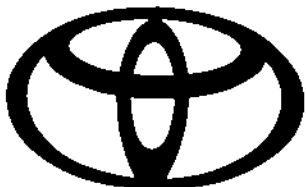





Big business

Describing trends • Comparing statistics • Adverbs 1 • Word linking

STARTER



- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the logos of some multinational companies. What is the name of each company? What does it produce or sell?

<p>1</p> 	<p>2</p> 	<p>3</p> 
<p>4</p> 	<p>5</p> 	<p>6</p> 
<p>7</p> 	<p>8</p> 	<p>9</p> 

- 2 Discuss these questions.

- Are these brand names well known in your country?
- Have you ever bought or used any of their products?
- Do you buy particular brands of food or clothes? Why/Why not?
- What are brands for?

READING AND SPEAKING

The global economy

- 1 Work with a partner. What do you understand by globalization and consumerism? What are their pros and cons?
- 2 Are these sentences facts (F) or opinions (O)?
 - 1 There are severe environmental changes taking place in the world.
 - 2 Globalization is synonymous with Americanization.
 - 3 Only 20% of the world's population lives in rich countries, but they consume 86% of the world's resources.
 - 4 The more people are in debt, the richer the banks become.
 - 5 The United States is a target for the have-nots of globalization.
 - 6 Debt repayments by developing countries are nine times as much as the aid they receive.
 - 7 The global economy puts no value on morality, only profit.
 - 8 Countries in the industrialized West exploit workers in poorer countries.

What is your reaction to the facts? Do you agree with the opinions? Compare your answers with the class.

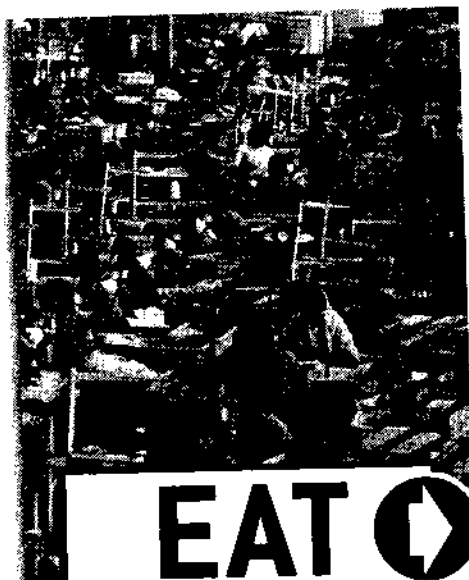
- 3 Look at the title of the article. What do you understand by it? Read the article. Which of the topics in exercise 2 are mentioned?
- 4 According to the article, are these statements true or false?
 - 1 'The economy' is not the same thing as the economy.
 - 2 People feel optimistic because their lives are so prosperous.
 - 3 The more we spend, the better life is.
 - 4 If people stop spending, the economy collapses.
 - 5 Companies respond to the needs of consumers.
 - 6 It's good that we can buy cheap goods from around the world.
 - 7 Many developing countries export food to pay back their debts.
 - 8 We know how to solve some of these problems, but we don't want to do it.
- 5 What do you understand by the words and phrases highlighted in the text?

What do you think?

- 1 What are some of the examples of craziness in the world that Jonathan Rowe mentions? Can you add any more?
- 2 Is it economic colonialization to sell Kentucky Fried Chicken to the world, or is it just giving people what they want?
- 3 What do you think are Jonathan Rowe's attitudes to the following? What are *your* attitudes?
 - multinational corporations
 - anti-globalization protesters
 - economists
 - public transport
 - pollution and the environment
 - supermarkets
 - Western banks
 - companies who use cheap labour in poor countries

The writer holds strong views on these issues. Can you present some counter-arguments?

Multinational corporations keep prices down.



Economic growth is the route

I want to talk about the economy. Not 'the economy' we hear about endlessly in the news each day and in politicians' speeches. I want to talk about the real economy, the one we live in day by day.

Most people aren't particularly interested in 'the economy'. 'Share prices are flying high, interest rates are soaring. The Dow Jones' index closed sixty-three points down on 8472.35.' We hear this and subconsciously switch off.

Notice that 'the economy' is not the same as the economy. 'The economy' is what men in suits play with to make vast personal wealth. The economy is where the rest of us live on a daily basis, earning our living, paying our taxes, and purchasing the necessities of life.

Something wrong

We are supposed to be benefiting from all the advantages of a prosperous society. So why do we feel drained and stressed? We have no time for anything other than work, which is ironic given the number of labour-saving devices in our lives. The kids are always hassling for the latest electronic gadgets. Our towns become more and more congested, we poison our air and seas, and our food is full of chemicals.



SLEEP BUY DIE

global prosperity. Or is it? Jonathan Rowe examines the price we pay for this growth

There's something wrong here. If times were truly good, then you'd think we'd all feel optimistic about the future. Yet the majority of us are deeply worried. More than 90 per cent of us think we are too concerned about ourselves and not concerned enough about future generations.

Producing and consuming

The term 'economic expansion' suggests something desirable and benevolent, but expansion simply means spending more money.

More spending doesn't mean that life is getting better. We all know it often means the opposite – greed, deprivation, crime, poverty, pollution. More spending merely feeds our whole economic system, which is based on production and consumption. Unless money keeps circulating, the economy collapses. Airlines go bust, taking plane manufacturers and travel agents with them. If we don't keep consuming, then manufacturers and retailers go out of business. People don't buy houses, clothes, washing machines, cars. The whole system goes into stalemate.

Creating need

As a leading economist put it, consumer societies are 'in need of need'. We don't need the things the economy produces as much as the economy needs our sense of need for these things. Why, in our supermarkets, do we have to choose from sixty different kinds of toilet paper and a hundred different breakfast cereals? Need is the miracle that keeps the engines of expansion turning relentlessly. In economics, there is no concept of enough, just a chronic yearning for more. It is a hunger that cannot be satiated.

There is so much craziness in the world. There is an American company that manufactures a range of food with a high fat content. This causes obesity and high blood pressure. By coincidence, the same company also makes products that help people who are trying to diet. Not only that, it even produces pills for those with high blood pressure.

Nearly all of my mail consists of bills (of course), banks trying to lend me money, catalogues trying to make me spend it, and charity appeals for the losers in this ecstasy of consumption – the homeless, the refugees, the

exploited, the starving. Why is it possible to buy strawberries from Ecuador and green beans from Kenya when these countries can hardly feed their own people? It is because these are cash crops, and the countries need the money to service their debts. Notice that servicing a debt does not mean paying it off. It means just paying the interest. Western banks make vast profits from third world debt.

Making changes

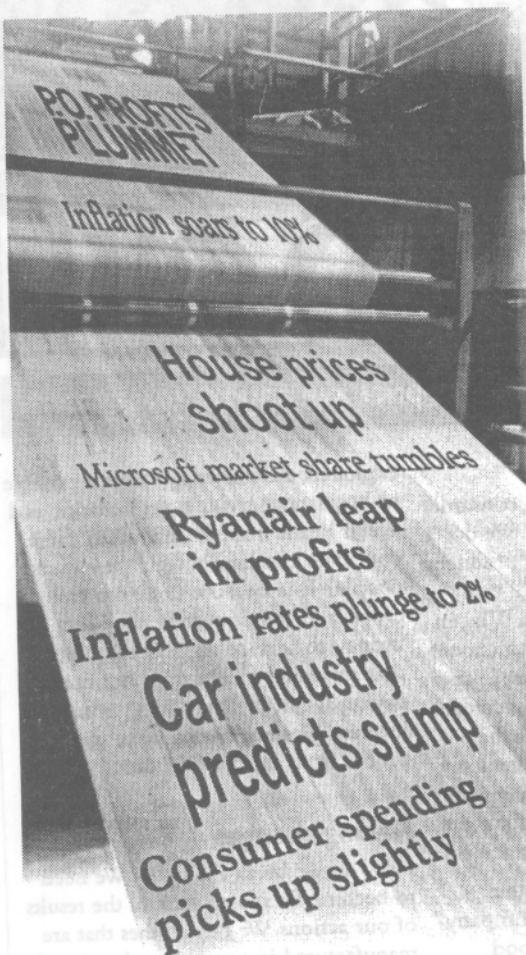
How do we break the cycle? We need to become far more aware of the results of our actions. We buy clothes that are manufactured in sweat shops by virtual slaves in poor parts of the world. We create mountains of waste. We demand cheap food, mindless of the fact that it is totally devoid of taste and is produced using chemicals that poison the land. We insist on our right to drive our own car wherever we want to go.

The evil of the consumption culture is the way it makes us oblivious to the impact of our own behaviour. Our main problem is not that we don't know what to do about it. It is mustering the desire to do it.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Describing trends

- 1 Look at these newspaper headlines describing trends. Are numbers going up or down?

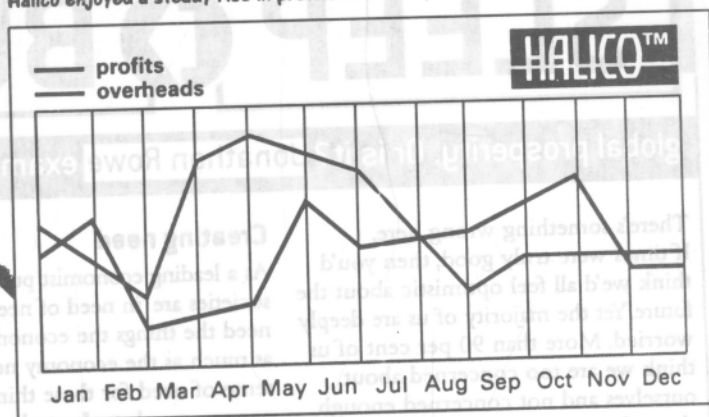


- 2 Look at the graph about the company, *Halico*. Talk about its profits, using the words in the boxes and in exercise 1.

Adjective	Noun
slight	fall
gradual	decrease
steady	rise
sharp	increase
dramatic	
substantial	

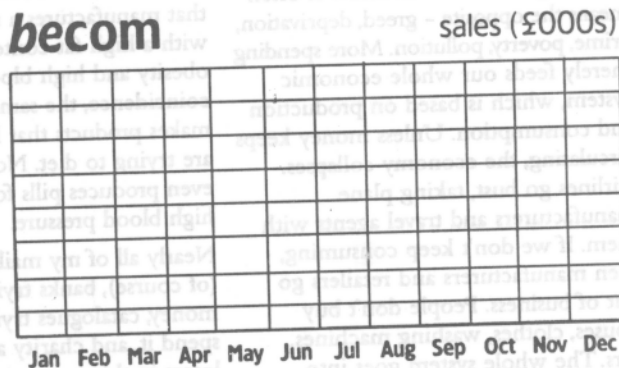
Verb	Adverb
fall	slightly
drop	gradually
go down	steadily
decrease	sharply
rise	dramatically
go up	substantially
increase	

Halico enjoyed a steady rise in profits in January. Unfortunately, they fell ...



T 3.1 Listen and compare your answers.

- 3 Talk about *Halico*'s overheads in the same way.
 When did overheads peak?
 When did they reach their lowest point?
 When did they level out?
- 4 **T 3.2** Listen to information about the sales figures of another company, *Becom*, over the year. Complete the graph.



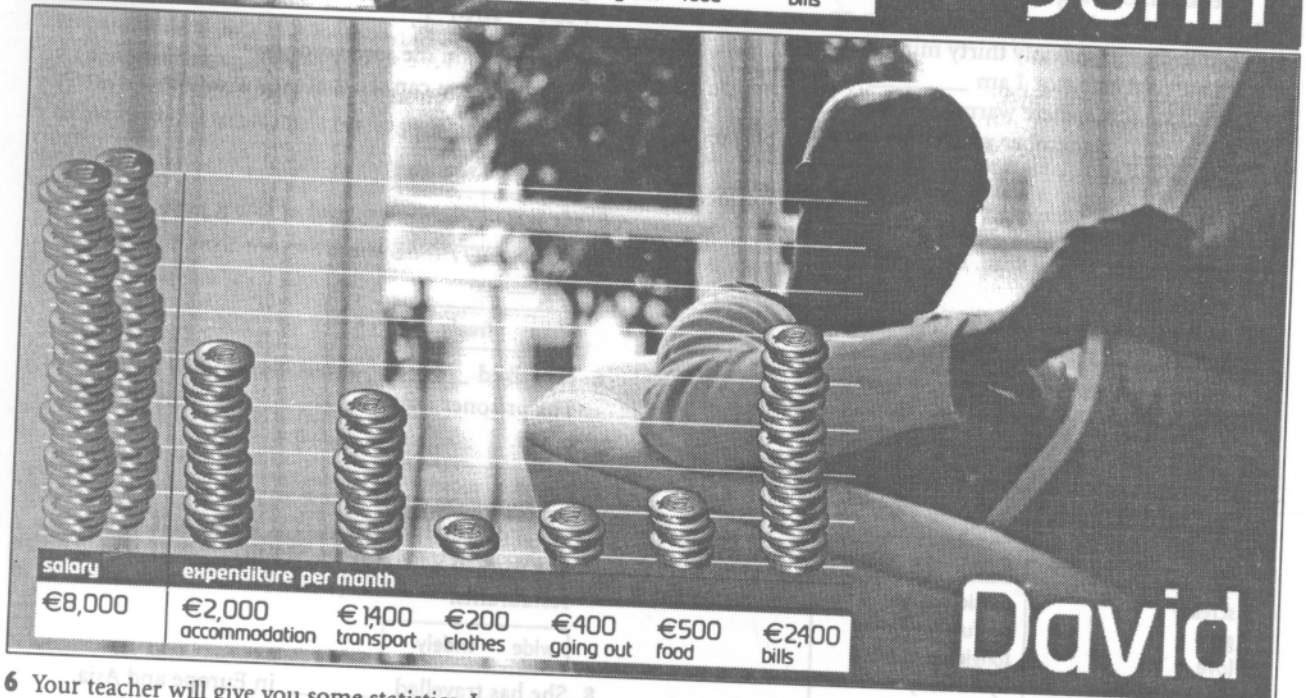
'But on the positive side, money can't buy you happiness - so who cares?'

Comparing statistics

- 5 Look at the charts of two people's monthly expenditure, and compare them.

David spends twice / three times as much on ... as John does.
John doesn't spend anywhere near as much on ... as David does.

John spends 50% more / 20% less on ... than David does.
David spends a quarter / 25% of his salary on ...



- 6 Your teacher will give you some statistics. In groups, prepare to give a presentation to the rest of the class using some of the vocabulary you have practised.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Adverbs

Adverb collocations

Adverbs often go with certain verbs and adjectives. Look at the examples from the article on pp28-29.

verb + adverb	adverb + adjective
hear about endlessly	deeply worried
turning relentlessly	utterly destroyed

►► Grammar Reference p150

1 Complete the sentences with an adverb from the box.

severely	deeply	sorely	interminably
eagerly	desperately	highly	perfectly
virtually	distinctly	fatally	conscientiously

- I _____ need a holiday. I haven't had a break for three years.
- The return of the Shakespearean actor Donald Bennett to the London stage is _____ awaited.
- I work with a _____-motivated sales team. We all work hard.
- It is _____ impossible to get away from mobile phones these days.
- Bad weather has _____ affected the roads this weekend. Driving conditions are treacherous.
- The politician's speech seemed to go on _____, but in fact it was only thirty minutes.
- I hate cold climates. I am _____ tempted to emigrate somewhere warm.
- I _____ remember you telling me not to phone before 2 p.m.
- Having worked _____ for the same firm for forty years, he was awarded a gold watch.
- In her anger she hit him. Later she _____ regretted this.
- Two people escaped unhurt in the accident, but unfortunately the third passenger was _____ injured and died on the way to hospital.
- Alison made her views on the subject of politicians _____ clear. She dislikes all of them.

2 Match the verbs and adverbs. Make sentences using the adverb collocations.

A	B
scream	passionately
gaze	profusely
love	longingly
break something	hysterically
work	conscientiously
apologize	deliberately

Adverbs with two forms

Some adverbs have two forms, one with and one without -ly. Compare these examples.

flying high	highly motivated
doing fine	finely -chopped onions

►► Grammar Reference p150

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adverb. In which examples does the meaning alter significantly?

hard hardly

- We all work extremely _____.
Some countries can _____ feed their own people.

easy easily

- Manchester won the match _____.
Relax! Take it _____!

late lately

- I hate it when people arrive _____.
What have you been doing _____?

sure surely

- 'Can you lend me some money?' '_____.'
_____ you can see that your plan just wouldn't work?

wrong wrongly

- He was _____ accused of being a spy.
At first everything was great, but then it all went _____.

free freely

- He talked _____ about his criminal past.
The prisoner walked _____ after twenty years in jail.

most mostly

- What do you like _____ about me?
She worked wherever she could, _____ in restaurants.

wide widely

- She has travelled _____ in Europe and Asia.
When I got home, the door was _____ open.

just

- 4 The adverb *just* is used in many different ways. What does it mean in these sentences? (Sometimes it doesn't mean very much!)

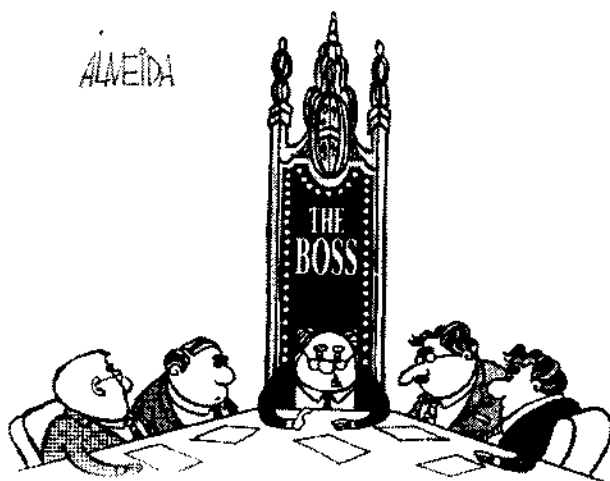
- 1 A new pair of socks for me! That's just what I wanted! Thank you.
- 2 'Who's that?' 'Don't worry. It's just me.'
- 3 You're just as beautiful as your sister.
- 4 I'm just putting the kettle on. Would you like a coffee?
- 5 I just caught the train with seconds to spare.
- 6 'I don't know what to do.' 'Why don't you just wait and see what happens?'
- 7 I wish you'd just listen to me for once!
- 8 We're just about out of sugar.
- 9 Just look at the children! Aren't they cute?
- 10 'What's the matter?' 'I don't know. It's just ... it's just that I find it difficult to talk to you sometimes.'

►► Grammar Reference p150

Adverbs are also dealt with in Units 10 and 12.

- 5 Add *just* to these sentences. Match them to the definitions in the Grammar Reference.

- 1 Thanks for your advice. Listening to you makes me feel better.
- 2 I've read the most amazing book. You must read it.
- 3 Hang on a sec. I'm going to the loo.
- 4 The holiday was totally relaxing, which was what I needed.
- 5 My daughter is as hopeless with money as me.
- 6 I stood on tiptoe and managed to catch sight of Peter disappearing into the distance.
- 7 Do what I say. That's all I'm asking you to do.
- 8 We're about ten minutes or so away from the hotel.



'I would like all of you to think of me as just one of the guys!'

- 6 **T 33** Listen to an interview with the Prime Minister. What is the latest crisis to hit the government? The word *just* is used five times. How many different uses can you remember?



- 7 **T 33** The lines below are similar but not the same as some in the interview. Listen again and identify the differences.

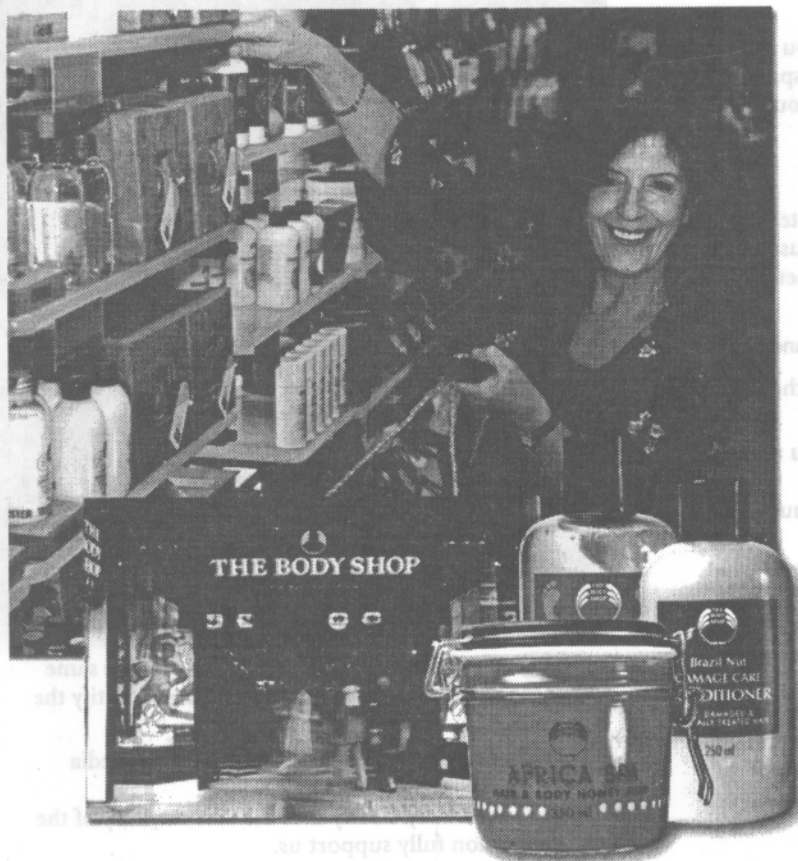
- 1 We've been hearing at great length in the media about the latest crisis.
- 2 Polls show very clearly that the vast majority of the population fully support us.
- 3 My government deserves every penny of their payrise.
- 4 I have a lot of respect for our public sector workers, they are very hardworking.
- 5 Time and time again your ministers have urged workers to accept increases in line with inflation.
- 6 It seems absolutely clear to me.
- 7 The effectiveness of the nation's MPs is being greatly hindered by lack of funds.
- 8 Their salaries are ridiculously small compared to those people working in industry.
- 9 My own salary is being reviewed independently and it will be reviewed impartially.
- 10 I believe categorically in fair and just settlements for all working people.

Read the tapescript on p134 and check your answers. How many more adverbs can you find?

LISTENING

An interview with Anita Roddick

- 1 There are over 1,800 Body Shops worldwide. What do you know about the business? Do you know anything about Anita Roddick, who founded The Body Shop in 1976? What do you think she will be like?



- 2 **T 3.4** Listen to an interview with Anita Roddick. Which of these views does she express?

- 1 Business school teaches sound business practices.
Business school kills creativity.
- 2 Successful business people are ruthless.
They are compassionate.
- 3 Their god is profit.
Money is just a means to an end.
- 4 If the environment is damaged, so what?
It is vital to protect the environment.
- 5 Think globally.
Think locally.
- 6 Amass wealth and count it.
Amass wealth and give it away.

- 3 **T 3.4** Listen again and answer the questions.

Part one

- 1 What can you do at business school?
What can't you do?
- 2 Why do immigrants make good entrepreneurs? What are the characteristics of a successful entrepreneur?
- 3 What, according to Anita Roddick, is the point of money?
- 4 What doesn't she want to be? What does she want to be?

Part two

- 5 What does business control?
- 6 Why are multinational corporations the big enemy?
- 7 What are her suggestions for honourable business practices?

Part three

- 8 What are her children's two reactions to her decision not to leave them any money?
- 9 What does she consider to be a great legacy?
- 10 What, for her, is the advantage of wealth?

Language work

- 4 What do you understand by the following?
- I was saved ... by not doing the traditional route.
 - ... they all dance to a different drum beat.
 - ... we don't give a darn about money.
 - We vomit ideas.
 - ... multinational corporations bow down to nothing ...

What do you think?

- Do you agree that creative business people 'are terribly, terribly bad at managing'?
- What does Anita Roddick see her strengths as?
- Why do you think she has chosen not to leave her great wealth to her children?

SPEAKING

An advertising campaign

- 1 Work in groups of six. Your teacher will give you roles.

Students A, B, C, and D work for a company called *StayWell*.

Student E works for a market research company.

Student F works for an advertising agency.



StayWell is having financial difficulties. Its most profitable product is a health drink called *Sogood*. Sales of this vitamin drink have been declining steadily for several years. You need to develop a strategy for the relaunch of the drink.

First look at the chart. It shows how you could structure your answer. It just shows *some* of the reasons for *one* potential strategy. It is not necessarily the right one.

	Who will you target?	What package?	What method of distribution?	Price of drink
	Over 65s	New bottle	Stay with pharmacies	Increase
Reason 1	They already like <i>Sogood</i> so it will be easier to get them to like it.	It will be noticed more easily on the shelf.	It is proven that <i>Sogood</i> sells in pharmacies.	Research has shown they will pay.
Reason 2	The advertising needed to reach them is cheaper.	It will show that it is a new formula.	We have existing relationships with pharmacies.	The new formula justifies the increase.
Reason 3	It is less risky.		It shows that it is a true health drink, not a gimmick.	

Look at your role cards. Discuss what you know, and use your own ideas to plan a campaign.

- 2 Present your proposals to the rest of the class.

What do you think?

- What is the role of advertising in our lives? Does it inform us of what is available, or does it try to make us buy things we don't need?
- Does the enormous cost of advertising make goods more expensive?
- Think of an advertisement that you like or don't like. Tell the others about it. Why does/doesn't it achieve its aim?



THE LAST WORD

Word linking and intrusive sounds

- 1 When a word begins with a vowel sound, it links with the sound before.

English is an international language.

Mark the links in these sentences. Practise saying them.

- We're in class learning English.
- It's eight o'clock and time for a break.
- I'm dying for a cup of coffee.
- We've been in here for over an hour.
- As a matter of fact, I think our teacher's asleep.
- She doesn't understand that her English students are about to creep out.



T 3.5 Listen and check.

- 2 **T 3.6** When we link two vowel sounds, we add /w/ or /j/ when we speak. These sounds occur naturally.

blue eyes two oranges go away

/w/ /w/ /w/

my office the economy three apples

/j/ /j/ /j/

Can you work out the rule? When do we add /w/ and when do we add /j/?

Sometimes we add /r/. Some people consider this to be bad pronunciation.

law and order Carla and Mike

/r/ /r/



- 3 **T 3.7** When we spell words out loud, for example our name, there is a lot of linking and intrusive sounds. Why is this?

J O H N S P E A R S

/dʒeɪ əʊ ɛntʃ en es pi: i: eɪ ə: es/

/j/ /w/

/j/ /j/ /j/ /r/

M A N U E L G O N Z A L E S

/em ei en ju: i: el dʒi: əʊ en zed ei ei i: es

/j/ /w/ /j/

/j/ /w/

/j/ /j/

Practise spelling your name with speed and rhythm.

- 4 When we spell names on the telephone, it is easy to confuse various sounds.

S sounds like F.

D sounds like T.

B sounds like P.

M sounds like N.

We can say things like **F** for Fraddie, **S** for sugar, **L** for London, **V** for Victor. You can make them up as long as they're clear! You can also use the international alphabet.

A for Alpha

J for Juliet

S for Sierra

B for Bravo

K for Kilo

T for Tango

C for Charlie

L for Lima

U for Uniform

D for Delta

M for Mike

V for Victor

E for Echo

N for November

W for Whisky

F for Foxtrot

O for Oscar

X for X-ray

G for Golf

P for Papa

Y for Yankee

H for Hotel

Q for Quebec

Z for Zulu

I for India

R for Romeo

T 3.8 Listen and write down the names you hear.

- 5 Your teacher will give you a new identity and a new job. Ask other students what their name and company is.

4 Celebrity

Synonyms and antonyms 1 • Discourse markers • Tags and replies

STARTER

1 Match the lines to make quotations about fame and success.

- 1 "A celebrity is a person who works hard all his life to become well known,
- 2 "I don't want to achieve immortality through my work.
- 3 "There is only one thing worse than being talked about,
- 4 "What goes up,
- 5 "Winning isn't everything,
- 6 "Whenever a friend succeeds,
- 7 "Genius is one per cent inspiration,
- 8 "If at first you don't succeed,
- 9 "Nothing succeeds
- 10 "Let me tell you about the rich.

- ☐ must come down." ANONYMOUS
- ☐ like success." PROVERB
- ☐ a little something in me dies." GORE VIDAL
- ☐ and that is not being talked about." OSCAR WILDE
- ☐ I want to achieve it through not dying." WOODY ALLEN
- ☐ and then wears dark glasses to avoid being recognized." FRED ALLEN
- ☐ try, try again." ROBERT BRUCE
- ☐ but it sure as hell beats losing." CHARLIE BROWN
- ☐ ninety-nine per cent perspiration." THOMAS EDISON
- ☐ They are different from you and me." F SCOTT FITZGERALD

2 **T41** Listen and check. Do you agree with any of them? What is your recipe for success?

READING AND SPEAKING

The cult of celebrity

1 Discuss the questions as a class.

- 1 Which celebrities are in the news at the moment?
What is the gossip about them? What is their claim to fame?
How do they spend their days? Which trendy places do they go to? Where can you find out about them?

- 2 'We cannot avoid becoming entangled in what is called "the cult of celebrity." The only question is to what degree we want to pretend to resist.'

What do you understand by the term the 'cult of celebrity'?
Do you pretend to resist, or do you indulge your fascination for celebrities? Who are you most interested in?

2 Check you know these words and phrases.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| • an icon | • fair game for criticism |
| • a sitcom | • to scrutinize something/one |
| • confessional TV | • to bestow fame on somebody |
| • the afterlife | • a fly-on-the-wall documentary |
| • to oggle something/one | • like a lamb to the slaughter |

3 Read the article and put these phrases in the correct place.

- a this life is our only one
- b are no more special than the rest of us
- c an endless supply of human-interest stories
- d everybody wants to claim a bit of you
- e I have indulged in small talk
- f by volunteering to be the subject
- g sometimes it lasts a lifetime
- h What can be done
- i undignified and unflattering
- j they want to do with their lives

4 Would Jack Delaney agree or disagree with these viewpoints? Find evidence in the article.

- Most fame is undeserved.
- It is possible to survive fame intact.
- The public is consistent in the way it treats celebrities.
- Newspapers used to be more respectful.
- Television subjects ordinary people to humiliation.
- Most people want to be famous.
- The cult of celebrity should make us feel ashamed.

Do your views differ?

5 Answer the questions.

- 1 Think of celebrities currently in the news who fit the three categories of fame mentioned in the first paragraph.
- 2 What two reasons does the writer provide to explain our obsession? Do you agree?
- 3 Why does Jay McInerney hate himself in the morning?
- 4 What do you understand by the 'viciousness of voyeurism'?
What are the 'myths we too readily absorb'?



cult of celebrity

We are fascinated by their every move, we want to know everything about them. Jack Delaney asks why we are obsessed with the rich and famous.

Some are born famous (like royalty), some achieve fame (like film stars) and some have fame thrust upon them (like crime victims). Sometimes their celebrity is short-lived, (1) _____. In some rare cases, for example Diana, Princess of Wales, and Marilyn Monroe, it can be transformed by death into a sort of iconic status. But whatever the causes or circumstances, being a celebrity changes your relationship with the world. From being a private person, you become public property, and (2) _____. You are the object of envy as well as admiration, fair game for criticism, interrogation, ridicule and spite.

We make 'em, we break 'em

We treat the famous with a mixture of reverence and brutality. We adore them, praise them, scrutinize them and destroy them. We make them unable to tell where their real selves end and the PR-manufactured images begin. We have no mercy, we show no shame. It is easy to assume that all aspects of a celebrity life are free to be examined because he or she is on show, which means he or she doesn't have the same reality as everyone else. And it is precisely because many modern celebrities (3) _____ that we feel justified in treating them with such contempt. We build them up and knock them down.

So who are the famous?

It used to be the case that fame was bestowed only as a consequence of some mighty achievement or gruesome misdeed, when newspapers were filled largely with accounts of such things as earthquakes and wars, and when it was deemed contemptible for journalists to delve into the private lives of famous people, even the very famous.

It is now possible for people who are living ordinary private lives to become famous, for at least a short time, through the media – by appearing on game shows or confessional TV, for instance, or (4) _____ of a fly-on-the-wall documentary. The readiness of people to let programme-makers into their homes, to answer the most intimate questions about their lives, and to allow themselves to be filmed in the most (5) _____ situations, never ceases to amaze.

Given this ghastly invasion of one's life, why is fame so desirable? Ask an average bunch of 10-year-olds what (6) _____, and a large proportion of them will say that they would like to be famous. Not for anything in particular. Just famous. Period. In the adult population, otherwise perfectly normal people think nothing of confessing all about their personal tragedies on daytime television.

Why are we so obsessed?

The American writer Norman Mailer said that in an age without religion, celebrities are our new gods. If we have no faith in an afterlife and (7) _____, then celebrity is the nearest any of us will get to immortality, and the pursuit of it becomes more urgent. At the pathological extreme of this motivation are murderers like Mark Chapman, who assassinated John partly, he said, to make himself fa

Another feature of modern society is the power and omnipresence of the mass media. Its explosive expansion in the past couple of decades has created an insatiable need for new material. All the newspapers, magazines, television and radio programmes require (8) _____. These are increasingly delivered in the form of

interviews, profiles, gossip columns, photoshoots at gatherings, and soundbites by or about people who are celebrated for something they have done, or for a position they occupy in society, or in some cases for just being a celebrity. There are some totally talentless people who are simply famous for being famous. As Andy Warhol said 'In the future, everyone will be famous for fifteen minutes.'

Love it or loathe it?

The American writer, Jay McInerney, commented, 'I have enjoyed a little celebrity in my time, and I have ogled any number of models. (9) _____ about popular film stars. But at least I hate myself in the morning. I fear as a nation we're losing our sense of shame in this regard.'

So how do you feel when you read a gossip magazine, or tune into confessional TV? Do you love it or loathe it? (10) _____ to curb our fascination, particularly when the glittery sacrificial lambs go so willingly to slaughter? Probably not a lot. But perhaps we should be more aware of the viciousness of voyeurism and the myths we too readily absorb.



What do you think?

1 Discuss the questions.

- Why do we want to hear bad news about famous people more than good news? In what ways are celebrities unreal?
- What do you understand by 'reality TV'? Are there TV programmes in your country like the ones described in the article? What are they like?
- What is the mentality of stalkers? What makes someone want to kill the object of their obsession?

2 Read what celebrities themselves say on the subject of fame. What do you think each quote means, and do you agree with it?



For years I've been popular in America – not because of my talent, but because I'm famous.
Cher singer and actor



People create you and then you end up believing it. You become their soap opera. And what they want is not your success story but your failure.

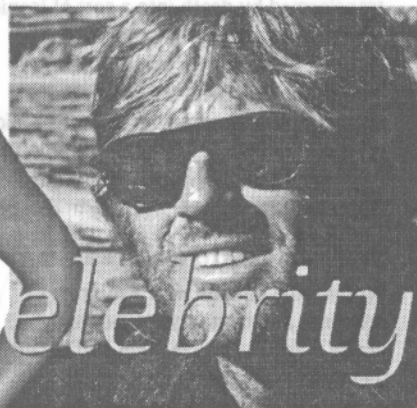
Jade Jagger model and jewellery designer, daughter of Mick



People want you to be a crazy, out-of-control teen brat. They want you miserable, just like them.
Leonardo DiCaprio actor



It was no great tragedy being Judy Garland's daughter. I had tremendously interesting childhood years – except they had little to do with being a child.
Liza Minnelli singer and actor



If you were me for a month, you might change it to two weeks.
Robert Redford actor and director



Sometimes I don't like the person I'm supposed to be. I don't feel like I deserve any of this.

Mena Suvari actor

3 Do you know ...

- any other icons? What do they represent?
- someone who the press has built up and knocked down?
- an ordinary person who has become a celebrity?
- anyone who is famous simply for being famous?
- any children of celebrities who have had problems?

VOCABULARY

Synonyms

- 1 Find words in the article on p39 that mean approximately the same as these.

paragraph 1	forced	
	fame	
	respect (noun)	
paragraph 2	great respect and admiration	
	cruelty	
	worship (verb)	
	examine	
	ruin (verb)	
	compassion, sympathy	
	guilt	
	suppose	
	exactly	
paragraph 3	result (noun)	
	mainly	
	considered	
paragraph 6	belief	
	killers	
	killed	

- 2 Complete the sentences with a synonym of the words in *italics*. Often the word class changes. The words appear in the article on p39.

- 1 She *succeeded* in building up a £50 million company. This _____ won her many awards.
- 2 She's always *finding fault with* her kids. She _____ them for their appearance, their laziness, everything.
- 3 He *admitted* murdering his employer. This _____ came after days of interrogation.
- 4 His recovery after the operation was *astonishing*. I was _____ to see him sitting up in bed when I visited him in hospital.
- 5 You simply must *control* your finances better. If you don't _____ your spending, you'll be in serious trouble.

Antonyms

Look at these examples of antonyms from the article on p39. Sometimes their celebrity is *short-lived*, sometimes it lasts a *lifetime*.
From being a *private* person, you become *public* property.

- 3 Complete the sentences with a word that has the opposite meaning to the words in *italics*. Sometimes the word class changes. The first three words appear in the article on p39.
- 1 You thought those stories about her were *real*, but she _____ them all.
 - 2 His ability to make money is *admirable*. However, I have nothing but _____ for the appalling way he deals with his employees.
 - 3 I know most people *love* travelling, but I _____ it. I'd rather stay at home.
 - 4 I've always been *successful* at work, but my private life is a total _____.
 - 5 At first people thought it was a *genuine* Van Gogh, but later it turned out to be a _____.
 - 6 I find it difficult to *relax*. There is so much _____ in my life. So much to do, so little time to do it.
 - 7 I was sure I had seen her before. I *didn't* recognize her face, but her voice was _____.
 - 8 This road is *straight* for a few kilometres, but then there are a lot of tight _____, so be careful.
 - 9 One of my cats is quite *tame and domesticated*. The other is totally _____.
 - 10 You thought she dropped the vase *accidentally*, but believe me, it was _____.



'It's not enough that we succeed. Cats must also fail.'

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Discourse markers

- 1 **T 4.2** Listen carefully to a woman speaking, and decide what she's talking about. Answer the questions.
- 1 What was the most important aspect of the occasion for the speaker?
 - 2 What was special about the dresses?
 - 3 How were the people from the press behaving?
 - 4 What wasn't so important to the speaker?
 - 5 What was the occasion?

- 2 **T 4.3** Listen to another version of the monologue. What are the differences? Can you remember any?

- 1 There are many adverbs and expressions which give the speaker's attitude to what he or she is saying.

Quite honestly, I think you should pack in the job.

Admittedly, you'd lose a lot of money.

Surely job satisfaction is more important than money?

- 2 These expressions can also structure and direct a piece of discourse.

As I was saying, I'm still enjoying the work.

As a matter of fact, I earn very little in my job.

Anyway, who cares about money?

By the way, do you know how much Justin earns now?

▶▶ Grammar Reference p151

- 3 Complete the monologue with expressions from the box.

anyway	apparently	mind you	as I was saying
at least	all in all, though	admittedly	of course
naturally	by the way	to tell you the truth	
still	no doubt	I mean	
obviously	so to speak	quite honestly	
actually	guess what?	as a matter of fact	



“ All the A-list stars were there. That model, Angeline, (1)_____ I think it was Angeline, was there with her new boyfriend. (2)_____ they've been secretly going out for months. (3)_____, it was a glittering occasion. Stars everywhere and the crowds outside simply begging for autographs. (4)_____ I couldn't believe my eyes. And the dresses! (5)_____, I don't know how much they would have cost – a fortune, I imagine. All designer labels, (6)_____. The photographers were (7)_____ having a field day, and (8)_____ there were reporters everywhere, falling over each other (9)_____, to interview the biggest names. (10)_____ we didn't have the best seats, (11)_____ we were in the back row. (12)_____, we could still see everything. (13)_____, I was so busy star-spotting that I didn't take in the plot. (14)_____ you'd have been the same. (15)_____, I'm not too keen on thrillers but it must have been good because at the end the whole audience rose to its feet and clapped. (16)_____, I'm not terribly sure what the story was about, but you really must go and see it when it's on general release. (17)_____, it was an amazing evening and to top it off we went to Quaglin's for supper afterwards, and (18)_____ Sarah Jane Fox and Brad Brat were at the next table! How cool is that? (19)_____, Sarah Jane Fox has awful skin problems. (20)_____, who cares about that when you've got that much money! ”

- T 4.3** Listen again and check. Which expressions could be used in more than one place? Where?

4 Complete the conversation, either with a discourse marker from exercise 3, or with appropriate words.

HAVE YOU HEARD ...?



ANNA Have you heard that Jan is thinking of marrying Paul?
 BEN (1) Really? I don't know what she sees in him.
 ANNA I know what you mean. Mind you, (2) _____
 BEN Yes, I suppose having all that money does help.
 ANNA Where did he get his money from?
 BEN Apparently, (3) _____
 ANNA He's been married three times before. Did you know that?
 BEN (4) _____, it's just the once, I think.
 ANNA I suppose they'll have a big wedding.
 BEN Of course (5) _____
 ANNA Oh, well. Good luck to them.
 BEN Absolutely, (6) _____, did you hear
 that Sara and Jeff had a car accident?
 ANNA Oh no! What happened?
 BEN It wasn't serious. They skidded into a tree, but
 (7) _____ they weren't going fast. The
 car's a write-off, but (8) _____ no one
 was injured.
 ANNA Thank goodness for that. I should get in touch with them,
 but I don't have their address.
 BEN As a matter of fact, (9) _____
 I'll give it to you.
 ANNA Great. Thanks a lot. (10) _____
 I must be going. I'm meeting Jan for lunch.
 BEN Right. Nice to talk to you. Bye.

T 4.4 Listen and compare your answers.

5 Complete the sentences with your ideas.

- 1 A Hello. Your face looks familiar. Have we met before?
 B Actually, _____.
- 2 A How come your business has been so successful?
 B Basically, _____.
- 3 Why did the Prime Minister award himself a 50% pay rise? Surely _____?
- 4 Have you heard the latest about Cathy and Dave?
 Apparently, _____.
- 5 I don't think Harry and Lucinda should get married.
 I mean, _____.
- 6 I wish I was famous. All that money, all those parties every night. Mind you, _____.
- 7 A Wasn't that a brilliant play last night!
 B To tell you the truth, _____.
- 8 I agree, it was a great match, and they deserved to win it. By the way, _____.
- 9 Why doesn't James ever phone me? Why is it always me who phones him? After all, _____.
- 10 I don't have a clue what the answer is to all these problems. Anyway, _____.

SPEAKING

How to become an A-list celebrity

- 1 Work in small groups. You have decided that it is your destiny in life to be famous. You want to get on the A list of celebrities who are invited to all the best parties, opening nights, balls and social events.
- 2 Read the situation on the card below and talk together until you all agree on what to do. Your teacher will give you your next card with more information and more decisions.
- 3 Keep discussing each situation until you get to the end of the activity. You might hit the big time or you might not!

★ It is time to start your journey on the road to fame and fortune. You want to make it to the big time as quickly as possible. You have identified two routes that could find you a way to join the rich and famous.

Work your way into the elite groups of famous people by hanging out in the right places. Basically you will party your way to the top.

GOTO 2

What do you think?

When you have finished, discuss these questions.

- In retrospect, did you make any wrong decisions? What should you have done?
- How did you make your decisions? Was everybody involved? Did one person dominate? Were your decisions democratic?
- Games such as these are used in management training to practise qualities of good leadership. What are the qualities of a good leader?

LISTENING

An interview with a Hollywood star

- 1 Work with a partner. Are these statements about Liza Minnelli, the singer and actor, true or false?
 - 1 She has been married five times.
 - 2 Her recent wedding had no guests.
 - 3 Her mother was Judy Garland.
 - 4 She has had similar health problems to her mother.
 - 5 She was born in England.

What else do you know about her? Tell the class.



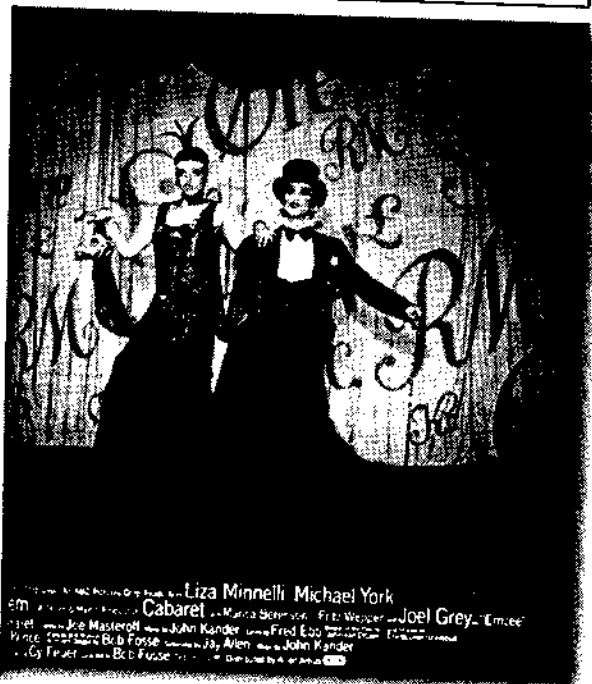
- 2 **T 4.5** Listen to part one of the interview. Correct the false statements in exercise 1. Answer the questions.

- 1 The song she sings is in three languages.
Do you recognize them? What is a cabaret?

Willkommen, bienvenue, welcome
Friend, étranger, stranger,
Glücklich zu sehen, je suis enchantée, happy
to see you,
Bleiben, rester, stay...

- 2 Why does she love London and London audiences?
3 What does she mean when she says 'It's like a tennis match to sing to people in London'?
4 How does her voice change when she describes the school she went to?
5 How does she describe her current state of happiness?
6 In the second song, what is the thing that can change the world?

How the world can change
It can change like that
To the one little word,
Married
See a palace rise,
From a two-room flat,
To the one little word,
Married



- 3 **T 4.6** Listen to part two. Complete the interviewer's questions.

- 1 Did it _____ to you?
2 I think yours _____, though, wasn't it?
3 How _____ all of that?
4 So you haven't _____ over it?

What are Liza Minnelli's answers to the questions? How does she explain the fact that all the guests at the wedding were famous?

What did Elton John say about David?

- 4 **T 4.7** Listen to part three. How does Liza feel when she talks about ...?

- 1 earning her own living in New York
2 her mother and father
3 the interviewer getting into trouble at school
4 the film *Cabaret*
5 Marisa Berenson

I used to have this girlfriend known as Elsie
With whom I shared four sordid rooms in Chelsea
She wasn't what you'd call a blushing flower
As a matter of fact she rented by the hour ...
Start by admitting from cradle to tomb
It isn't that long a stay
Life is a cabaret, old chum
It's only a cabaret, old chum
And I love a cabaret.

Language work

- 5 Try to remember the words from the interview. Compare with a partner, then check the tapescript on p136.
- ... the problems which _____ her mother, ...
 - ... she was looking _____ for a British audience.
 - The world ... is like the inside _____.
It _____ and _____.
 - ... you know Elton ... he was just _____.
 - Was it always expected that you would _____?
 - You clearly _____ a live audience, ...

What do you think?

- What is name dropping? Why does Liza Minnelli mention so many famous names?
- Is she a typical Hollywood star? Why/Why not?

Final note

Liza Minnelli and David Gest separated after sixteen months.

THE LAST WORD

You did, did you?

- 1 Read the lines below from the interview with Liza Minnelli.

Interviewer I like Cabaret.

Liza Minnelli Oh, you do, do you?

What kind of question tag is this?
What is Liza Minnelli expressing?

- 2 **T 4.8** Listen and underline the tags and replies in the conversation on the right. Do they rise or fall?

►► Grammar Reference p151

LIZA MINNELLI

A Liza Minnelli is just fantastic! Her concert was amazing.
B It was, wasn't it? And she puts so much energy into her songs, doesn't she?
A Yes, she does. Who wrote that song about marriage, and the way it changes the world?
B She did. It's one of the few songs she ever wrote, actually.
A So she can write as well as sing, can she? What a talent!
 Did you like her costumes?
B Yes, I did. I thought they were fantastic. I've seen most of them before.
A Have you? I haven't. She's playing again tomorrow, isn't she?
B Yes, I think so. Let's go again, shall we?
A All right. She's one of the all time greats, Liza Minnelli is.

- 3 Work with a partner. Decide where tags and replies can naturally go in these conversations. Do they rise or fall?



- 1 **A** You haven't seen my car keys.
B No. You had them this morning.
A Yes. If I can't find them, I'll be late for work.
B Panic over. Here they are!
A Well done. You're a star.



- 2 **A** You didn't like that meal. You were pushing it around the plate.
B No. Well, it hadn't been cooked properly. Your steak was all right?
A Yes. It was fine. Let's get the bill and go home.
B OK. We won't be coming back here in a hurry.



- 3 **A** You've forgotten the map?
B Oh, dear. Yes.
A But I put it next to the car keys.
B Well, I didn't see it.
A You're blind.
B Oh, and you're perfect?

T 4.9 Listen and compare. Practise the conversations with your partner.

- 4 Respond to these statements in different ways.

- 1 Jeremy earns an absolute fortune!

*He does, doesn't he?
 Does he? I had no idea. How much?
 So he's rich, is he? Well, well, well.
 He's a rich man, Jeremy is.*

- 2 Peter's new German girlfriend, Anna, is very beautiful.

T 4.10 Listen and compare.

- 3 Jane and John are going to Florida on holiday. They're so lucky.
 4 Zidane played really well in the match on Sunday, didn't he?
 5 Harrods is a great shop. You can buy everything there.
 6 I think our teacher is the best.
 7 Simon's a very experienced traveller. He's been everywhere.



5

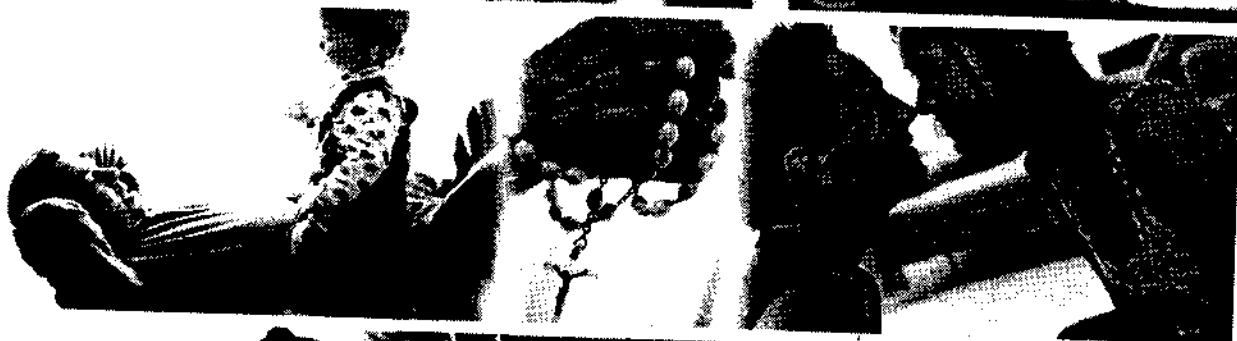
Love is ...?

Ways of adding emphasis • Proverbs and poetry • Getting emotional

STARTER



- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures. How would you describe the types of love portrayed? Which do you think are the deepest forms of love?



- 2 Which have you experienced in your life? Share some experiences with the class.
- 3 What is a *soul mate*? Have you found yours? Do you know any couples who you would describe as *soul mates*?

READING AND SPEAKING

Fateful attraction

- 1 Do you know how your parents met? Tell the class.
- 2 Read about two couples who met in very unexpected circumstances. Work in two groups.
Group A Read about Tina and Andrew on this page.
Group B Read about Emma and Ross on p50.
 In your groups, answer the questions.
 - 1 How did their relationship start?
 - 2 What stages were there in its development?
 - 3 Did physical attraction play any part in their romance?
 - 4 Do they believe in fate? Why/Why not?
- 3 Work with a partner from the other group. Compare the two stories using your answers from exercise 2. Which meeting do you think was most dependent on fate?

Vocabulary work

- 4 Find these phrases in your article and try to work out their meaning from the context. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Group A	Group B
6 spur-of-the-moment	2 burst out laughing
12 messaging back and forth	21 scrambled to my feet
23 not overly impressed	23 tore off along the path
38 in the flesh	43 blown away
70 make a serious commitment	59 mane of red hair
71 knock sth on the head	67 catapulted into a garden

- 5 All the words in A and some in B appear in the texts. Match the synonyms.

A	bizarre	B	lost for words
	random		weird
	stunning		striking
	guts		narrow path between buildings
	bashfully		fetch
	dumbstruck		pals
	blush		go red
	mates		shyly
	alleyway		courage
	retrieve		haphazard

- 6 **T S I** Listen to another couple, Martine and Jaap, who met in Provence in the South of France. Tell their story in your own words.

What do you think?

- Which of the three couples had the most romantic meeting? Whose was most dependent on fate? Why?
- Do you believe in fate? Looking back on your life are there any events where you believe fate played a part?
- Do you believe fate is the best way to meet the love of your life? What alternatives can you think of?

FATE

ARTICLE A

'I SENT A RANDOM TEXT MESSAGE AND HE REPLIED!'

Tina Baldwin, 28, sent a random text message. Andrew, 21, instantly sent one back. A year later they were married.

TINA It was like any other day. I was chatting to my best friend in the kitchen. We were bored so I decided to send a text message to a random number and see what happened. Don't ask me why – it was a real spur-of-the-moment thing. I typed in 'Feel like talking?' and waited to see if anyone would reply.

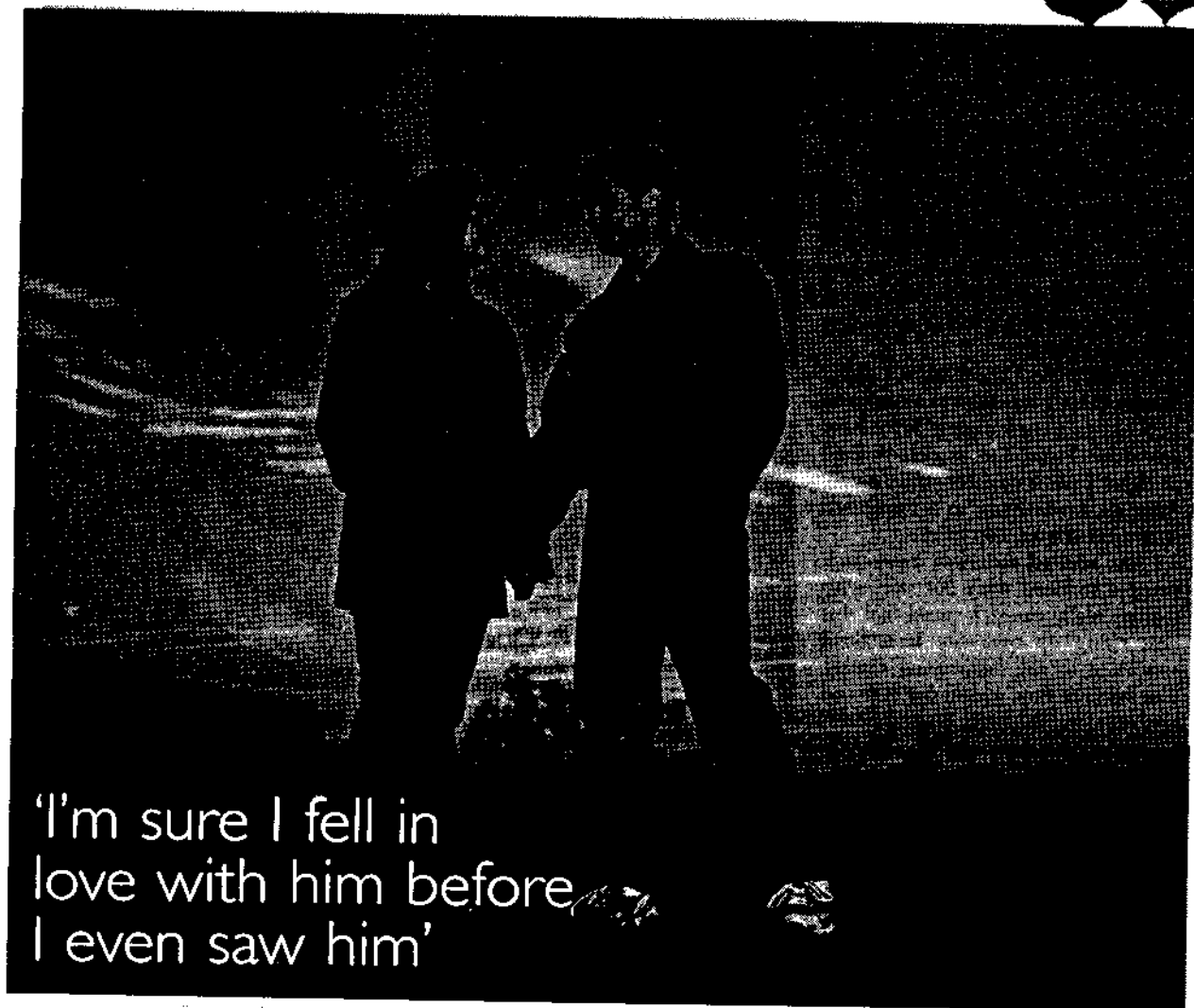
To my amazement, someone did – a guy. He just typed 'Yes'. From then on, we had a great hour or two, messaging back and forth. When he asked me to phone him, I didn't hesitate. We both had the same sense of humour and, although it was odd at first, we talked just as easily as when we'd been texting.

I'd just come out of a relationship, so I wasn't looking for a boyfriend. But over the next few months Andrew and I kept in touch every day.

Although I wasn't overly impressed by the photograph he sent of himself, when we spoke on the phone I found myself becoming more and more attracted to him. It seems bizarre but I'm sure I fell in love with him before I ever saw him. We had so much in common: we loved the same music, the same films, we laughed at the same jokes.

We met for the first time in a pub local to me in Somerset; he came down from Hertfordshire. I was very nervous, and had a quick drink before I went to meet him. He was much better looking in the flesh and we hugged for ages. Holding him for the first time is something I'll never forget. From then on we saw each

UL ATTRACTION



'I'm sure I fell in love with him before I even saw him'

other constantly, meeting up on dates and getting together at weekends.

Ten months later we were married.

It was a great day – a proper big white wedding. Now I can't imagine life without Andrew and can't quite believe how we met. I guess he was just out there waiting for me.

ANDREW I've never believed in fate but when something like this happens, you realize that the odds are billions to one. At first, Tina and I were just

having a bit of fun but, as time passed, I saw that we had so much in common – we'd say the same thing at the same time, or I'd phone her and it would be engaged because she was trying to get through to me.

The thing I loved about Tina was her personality, and when, finally, I met her I thought she was stunning. That evening I drove back to Hertfordshire on my motorbike, knowing the relationship wasn't going to end there.

During the following months, I'd make the four-hour journey to Somerset every weekend. It got to a point where it just wasn't practical any more and I said to Tina, 'What we do is either make a serious commitment or knock it on the head.' I moved in a few weeks later.

I've left my family and friends in Hertfordshire but I've never regretted the move for a second. On our wedding day I was ecstatic. There was nothing I wanted more.

ARTICLE 8

'HE KNOCKED ME OFF MY BIKE!'

Emma Allen, 31, cycled into Ross, 39, during a bike ride in south-west London. Two years later they were married.

EMMA Whenever anyone asks us how we met, we burst out laughing – it's such a ridiculous story. I had gone out on my bike to meet a friend. I always ride too fast and what happened this time was, as I rounded a corner, an arm appeared out of nowhere. The next minute, I was flying through the air into someone's garden.

Not only was I confused – I didn't know where I was for a moment and I could hear people saying 'What have you done, Ross? Do you think she's all right?' I was incredibly embarrassed. After all, I was lying in a flowerbed with a bicycle on top of me.

I just wanted to crawl away and, being a redhead with fair skin who blushes really easily, I could feel this heat rising up over my face. So I scrambled to my feet, saying crossly, 'I'm fine, I'm fine,' got on my bike and tore off along the path, hoping never, ever to see the guy I'd hit and his pals again.

I did though. In a weird stroke of double fate, on my way back, I passed them again. And, hideously, my baseball cap flew off my head right in front of them. It took all my courage to go back, bashfully, and retrieve it.

I'd seen Ross around before but I'd never spoken to him. So when, the next day, a bunch of flowers arrived on my doorstep with a note saying, 'Have a happening day,' I knew who they were from. The florist confirmed it: yes, he was tall and blonde, and he worked as a landscape gardener.

It took a lot of guts but I knew I had to go and thank him in person. And I was glad I did – although my knees turned to jelly. I was blown away. We chatted for ages and a few weeks later he invited me for dinner. That was it. We've now been married 11 years.



'Giving flowers was easy but when she came to thank me I was dumbstruck'

I'm a total believer in fate but, what I think is that you have to build your own destiny. If Ross hadn't sent me flowers and if I hadn't gone to thank him, none of this would have happened.

ROSS I had just come back from travelling, surfing and hitching round South America when I met Emma. I was feeling quite low having been mugged at gunpoint in Panama.

What I remember is seeing this very striking girl with a wonderful mane of red hair. I'd seen her around before but we'd never spoken. One day I was with two mates, walking down this little alleyway and recalling some travelling tale. I must have gesticulated too wildly because, the next thing I

knew, this girl was coming for me on a bike and was suddenly catapulted into a garden. On the one hand I felt dreadful but on the other I couldn't believe how gorgeous she was – this gorgeous red hair lying underneath a bicycle. I couldn't take my eyes off her.

For me the meeting was pure romance. What I did was go straight to the local florist and, because she was so identifiable, they knew who she was and delivered flowers to her the next day.

Giving flowers was easy but when she came to thank me, I was dumbstruck. I had never felt like this before – I knew she was the one.

Finally, I did find the courage to ask her out – and the rest, as they say, is history.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Ways of adding emphasis

- 1 Find similar sentences to these in your article. How exactly do they differ? What is the effect of the differences? Compare answers with a partner from the other group.

ARTICLE A

I'll never forget holding him for the first time. L39

I loved Tina's personality. L60

We either make a serious commitment or knock it on the head. L70

I wanted nothing more. L76

ARTICLE B

I think you have to build your own destiny. L47

I remember seeing this very striking girl. L58

I went straight to the local florist. L74

Finally I found the courage to ask her out. L82

There are many ways of emphasizing part of a sentence.

1 Structures which add emphasis

- a I love Tina's personality. (base sentence)

What

The thing

Something

I love about Tina is her personality.

It's Tina's personality that I love.

It's Tina who I love.

- b He criticizes/criticized me constantly. (base sentence)

What

The thing

Something

he does is

he did was

criticize me constantly.

2 Negative inversion

Certain negative expressions can be put at the beginning of a sentence for emphasis.

I'll never forget holding him for the first time.

Never will I forget holding him for the first time.

People rarely fall in love at first sight.

Rarely do people fall in love at first sight.

3 Emphatic do / does / did

Finally I did find the courage to ask her out.

4 Emphatic structures must sound emphatic!

Practise saying the sentences from exercises 1, 2, and 3 above.

▶▶ Grammar Reference p152

- 2 **T 5.2** Listen and identify the ways in which the speakers add emphasis to these base sentences.

1 I do my homework immediately after class.

2 It was love at first sight.

3 Most couples don't realize how difficult married life can be.

4 I blame the parents for badly-behaved kids.

5 The values of society are at risk and the very survival of our nation is threatened.

6 I understood what she meant then.

7 Sam broke the blue vase.

8 I won't marry anybody.

- 3 Make this sentence more emphatic using these expressions.

We like walking in Scotland.

1 What we ...

2 One thing ...

3 Scotland is where ...

4 It's ...

5 ... is something ...

6 There's nothing ...

more than ...

- T 5.3** Listen and check. What are the lines that stimulate the different responses? Practise the conversations with your partner, paying particular attention to the stress and intonation.

- 4 Rephrase these sentences to make them more emphatic.

1 Love changes the course of your life.

2 She repeatedly contradicts me.

3 First you have to decide your priorities.

4 I admire Bill's courage.

5 You should go to Spain for your holiday.

6 A Why didn't you tell Peter the news?

B I told him – honestly!

7 I've never been so humiliated in my life.

8 We eat out only occasionally.

- 5 Complete these sentences with your own ideas, using an emphatic structure. Compare answers with the class.

1 What I can't stand about ...

2 What surprises me every time ...

3 The thing that annoys me most ...

4 What we did after class yesterday ...

5 It's our teacher who ...

6 Something I've never told you ...

7 What the government should ...

8 Never in my life have I ...

- T 5.4** Listen and compare your ideas.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Proverbs and poetry

- 1 Match a line in A with a line in B to make proverbs.
Do you have similar ones in your language?

A	B
1 Love is	through his stomach.
2 The course of true love	repent at leisure.
3 All the world loves	the heart grow fonder.
4 Cold hands,	never to have loved
5 All's fair in love	at all.
6 Hell hath no fury like	contempt.
7 The way to a man's heart is	and war.
8 Marry in haste,	blind.
9 Better to have loved	never did run smooth.
and lost than	you good.
10 A little of what you	warm heart.
fancy does	a lover.
11 Absence makes	a woman scorned.
12 Familiarity breeds	

- 2 Complete the replies with a suitable proverb from exercise 1.

- D'you know, when he left her, she threw all of his belongings out onto the street!
You know what they say - hell hath no fury like a woman scorned.
- They're back together again but their relationship's had a bumpy ride.
You know what they say -
- Go on then. I'll have one more. But that's the last one.
- Good heavens! You? Going to cookery classes?
You must be in love!
- But I don't want you to go off to Borneo for six months. How'll I survive?
- Oooh! Take your hands off my back! They're freezing!

T 5.5 Listen and check. Write more conversation openers for the remaining proverbs. Ask another pair of students to respond with the correct proverb.

- 3 Shakespeare added more proverbs to the English language than anyone else. Which two do you think *sound* like his from the list above?

- 4 **T 5.6** Close your books and listen to one of Shakespeare's most famous love sonnets. Which season is he comparing his loved one to? Can you remember any words or phrases?

- 5 **T 5.6** Work with a partner. Choose the correct word to complete the lines of the poem. Listen again and check. Then read the poem aloud.



Sonnet xviii

William Shakespeare 1609

- Shall I compare thee to a _____ day?
- Thou art more _____ and more temperate:
- _____ winds do shake the darling buds of May,
- And summer's lease hath _____ too short a date:
- Sometime too hot the eye of heaven _____,
- And often is his gold _____ dimmed,
- And every fair from fair sometime declines,
- By chance, or nature's changing course untrimmed;
- But thy eternal summer shall not _____,
- Nor lose possession of that fair thou ow'st,
- Nor shall death _____ thou wander'st in his shade,
- When in eternal lines to time thou _____;
- So long as men can _____, or eyes can see,
- So long lives this, and this gives life to thee.

- 6 Which line or lines from the poem mean the following?

- ☐ You are more beautiful and tranquil than a summer's day.
- ☐ Summer doesn't last for a long time.
- ☐ Summer is sometimes too hot and sometimes cloudy.
- ☐ Everything beautiful in nature declines and becomes ugly with time.
- ☐ You possess such beauty that it will last forever.
- ☐ You will never die because you are immortalized in poetry.
- ☐ As long as people exist who read this poem you will have eternal life.

- 7 What other things could you compare a loved one to?
Discuss with the class.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

When love lasts forever

- 1 What and when is St Valentine's Day? Is it celebrated in your country?
- 2 **T 5.7** Olive Hodges is 102 years old. She is being interviewed on St Valentine's Day. The lines below are taken from the interview. Listen and answer the questions.



sunny/summer's/perfect
lovely/attractive/stunning
heavy/rough/soft
all/far/way
scalds/shines/burns
complexion/hair/chariot

fade/ebb/wither

boast/brag/proclaim

shrink'st/grow'st/wrinkl'st

write/breathe/think

Glossary

thee/thou = you

art = are

summer's lease = summer season

hath = has

fair = beauty

untrimmed = made ugly

thy = your

fair thou ow'st = beauty you own

eternal lines = immortal verse

this = this sonnet

life = immortality

1 'She had been looking forward to her 77th wedding anniversary this year.'

Why is she not looking forward to it now?

2 'He came through without a scratch.'

Who came through what?

3 '... he did this about six times.'

What did he do?

4 'I'll put him out of his misery.'

What did Olive mean by this?

5 'I didn't see any need for a hurry.'

Any hurry for what?

6 'I think it was stronger.'

What was stronger? When?

7 'I had a job to reassure him.'

What did Fred need reassurance about?

3 Answer the questions.

1 How did Olive and Fred's relationship start?

2 What course did their courtship take?

3 What is Olive's recipe for a long marriage?

4 How do we know that they never took their love for granted?

5 How does the presenter show he is moved by the story?

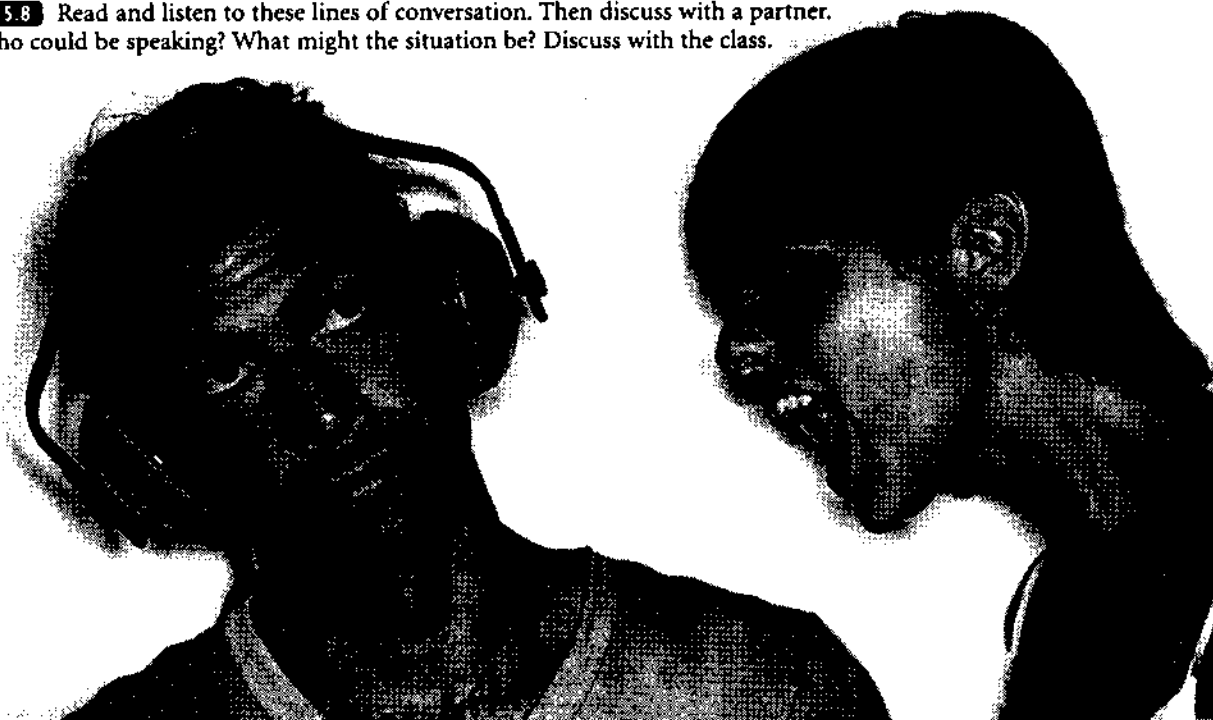
What do you think?

- What's your reaction to Olive's story? How common is her experience?
- Do you know any other couples who have enjoyed such a long marriage?

THE LAST WORD

Getting emotional

- 1 **T 5.8** Read and listen to these lines of conversation. Then discuss with a partner. Who could be speaking? What might the situation be? Discuss with the class.

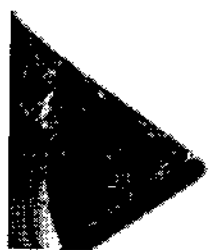


- 1 Get this heap of old metal out of my drive! Now!
- 2 You mean more to me than words could ever say.
- 3 I could be wrong, but I think someone not a million miles from here is to blame for this.
- 4 Wow! I could never do anything like that. Stick men are my limit.
- 5 I'll have to consult my diary. Life's just so hectic at the moment. You know me, I'm so much in demand.
- 6 Come on, you can tell me. I won't breathe a word to anyone. I promise.
- 7 Could you *not* keep getting at me in front of our friends? It looks so awful.
- 8 Thank God you're here. When I couldn't get you on your mobile, I thought you'd had an accident.
- 9 He came in the top two per cent in the country. So his father and I are thrilled to bits.
- 10 Well, I think you did very well to come third. Keep up the good work and you'll win next time.
- 11 Oh, come on now, don't cry. You'll be fine. It's only a graze. Hardly bleeding at all.
- 12 It was nothing. Anybody would have done the same.
- 13 I can't tell you how much I appreciate everything you've done for me. I'd have been so lost here on my own.
- 14 I'm out of here right now! I don't like the look of that lot.
- 15 You're kidding me. Nobody gets hitched wearing green wellies!
- 16 What d'you mean I'm a couch potato?! I go to the gym twice a week.

- 2 Which of these emotions are expressed by the lines in exercise 1? Sometimes more than one is suitable.

admiration	boastfulness	gratitude	reassurance
adoration	curiosity	indignation	relief
amusement	encouragement	irritation	sarcasm
anxiety	fear	modesty	suspicion
astonishment	fury	pride	

- 3 **T 5.8** Say the lines to your partner according to the emotion. Listen again and compare the stress and intonation.
- 4 **T 5.9** Listen to someone asking the same question in several different ways. Try and identify the emotions.



6 Newspeak

Distancing the facts • Nouns formed from phrasal verbs • Responding to news

STARTER

- 1 The words in the box are commonly used in newspaper headlines. Why do you think these words are often short and dramatic?

Complete the headlines with the words.

haul	swoop	blow	havoc	cops	fury	raid	axe
orgy	cons	dumps	bid	row	ban	probe	

1 **NEIGHBOURS'**
[] **OVER HEDGE**
ENDS IN COURT

2 **BA to [] 5,000 jobs in**
[] to break even

3 **OAPs' [] at**
measly 1.5%
rise in pensions

4 **£50 MILLION**
HUBBY PUTS
BANK []
ON MISSUS

5 **SWORD MANIAC**
SHOT BY []

6 **NEW []**
INTO MURDERS
REVEALS
FRESH CLUES

7 **WIFE []**
HUSBAND IN
SEX []

8 **Police [] on**
crack factory -
huge drug []

9 **PC shot in**
bank [] dies

10 **New inflation**
figures deal []
to recovery hopes

11 **BOGUS VICAR**
[] WIDOW OF
LIFE SAVINGS

12 **AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL**
STRIKE THREAT SPELLS
[] FOR HOLDS

- 2 **T 61** Listen to five people talking about which newspapers they read and why. Put numbers 1-5 next to the correct newspaper(s). What do they like about the newspaper(s) they read?
- | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Financial Times | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun | <input type="checkbox"/> Independent | <input type="checkbox"/> Guardian | <input type="checkbox"/> Observer |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Daily Mail | <input type="checkbox"/> Daily Mirror | <input type="checkbox"/> Times | <input type="checkbox"/> International Herald Tribune | |
- 3 In Britain the main newspapers are national, not regional. Is it the same in your country? Do your newspapers have a political bias? Do you read a newspaper regularly? Which one? Why do you choose that one?

READING AND SPEAKING

Tabloid and broadsheet newspapers

- 1 Look at the front pages of two different newspapers, *The Sun* and *The Independent on Sunday*.



Which is the tabloid newspaper, and which is the broadsheet? What are your immediate impressions of the different coverage?

Think of ...

- the size of the headline
- the content of the headline (Eton is an expensive private school)
- the photograph
- the layout of the front page
- the use of the word *exclusive*
- the length of the text on the front page

- 2 Read the two articles on pp57–8. Summarize each story in three or four sentences. Which newspaper ... ?

- is more factual and objective
- is more sensational
- has longer, more complex sentences
- uses more informal, idiomatic, conversational language
- uses more formal, controlled, concise language

- 3 Where did the reporters obtain their information? Who did they speak to? Which newspaper attributes its sources more? Why, do you think?

- 4 This is the structure of the article in *The Sun*.

Harry admitted taking drugs ⇒ his father's reaction ⇒ his school's reaction ⇒ a twist in the last two paragraphs

What is the structure of the article in *The Independent*?

- 5 What are the different ways that Harry is referred to in each paper?
- 6 Who or what are these in the articles? Can you remember?

from *The Sun*

- John Lewis
- Highgrove, Gloucs
- *The News of the World*
- the Berkshire college

from *The Independent*

- Featherstone Lodge
- the Rattlebone Inn
- St James's Palace
- David Baker

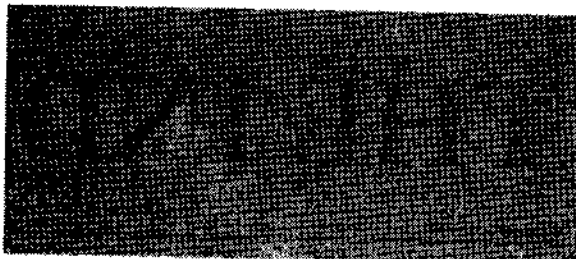
Language work

- 7 Make questions for these answers, using the words in brackets.

- 1 He might be expelled. (fail) *What happens if he fails the drugs test?*
- 2 A member of staff told him. (find out)
- 3 To give him a short, sharp shock. (insist)
- 4 Yes, he learned a lot. (instructive)
- 5 It can lead to hard drugs such as cocaine and heroin. (potential danger)
- 6 It is very strict. It gives lectures about their dangers. (policy)
- 7 He is reported to have verbally abused an employee. (What ... Harry said ... done at the Rattlebone Inn?)
- 8 He turned it down immediately. (react)

- 8 Find informal words or idioms in *The Sun* and formal words in *The Independent* that have similar meanings to these.

The Sun – informal words for ...	The Independent – formal words for ...
cannabis	came out, became known
has been warned	warned, made aware
alcohol	very distressing or shocking
a person who is difficult to control	results
behaving in an uncontrolled fashion	happening in many places
stopped at a very early stage	given in to temptation
everyone will be watching	buildings and land of a business

**SUN EXCLUSIVE**

HARRY FACES ETON DRUGS TEST

TROUBLED Prince Harry is facing drugs tests at Eton after admitting he took pot.

He has been allowed to stay at the school by head John Lewis.

But the teenager risks being **EXPELLED** if he fails a random urine check in future.

A source said last night: "Harry has had the yellow card. If he ever tests positive he'll be out."

The youngster told Prince Charles he smoked cannabis and had booze binges at Highgrove, Gloucs, and a nearby pub when he was 16.

Harry, now 17, also went drinking at a pub on New Year's Eve. Eton insiders said the Prince "can be a handful."

A source added: "People are genuinely concerned he may be going off the rails."

"He also has a habit of spitting in the street - quite distasteful."

The News of the World told yesterday how Charles responded to Harry's cannabis confession by ordering him to visit a rehab unit - to frighten him into turning his back on drugs.

And Eton has told him that even though he never smoked pot at the school, its anti-drug rule applies at home.

A senior source at the Berkshire college said: "The cannabis matter was brought to the attention of the head by Prince Charles."

"Obviously the Prince is extremely concerned about those who mix with his son in case any of them has been a bad influence on him."

BORED

"The smoking of cannabis and the drinking of alcohol is widespread at Eton College and the headmaster operates a strong policy against it."

"But the difficulty is that you have a large number of boys with a huge weekly disposable income who get very bored and become easy prey for drug-dealers."

The source said Eton was "totally satisfied" with the way Prince Charles had handled Harry's drug use.

He went on: "It would seem the problem has been nipped in the bud."



Warned ... Harry arriving at Highgrove yesterday **Picture: DAVID BEBBER**

"However, the headmaster informed Charles his son could be made to take random urine samples in the future."

"The headmaster hates having to expel anybody - but he is very tough on drugs."

"All eyes at Eton will be on Harry to ensure he does not stray."

ABUSE

Eton pupils are all given lectures about drugs by a counsellor.

They are warned how drugs affect the body and mind.

Staff are also trained to spot

signs of drug abuse in the boys.

Eton rules say: "The school prospectus is explicit about the headmaster's right to dismiss any boy involved with illicit drugs."

"The headmaster also has the power to treat as a breach of school discipline behaviour during the holidays which brings the school into disrepute."

Meanwhile, a pupil who was expelled for having cannabis said he once offered a joint to Harry's brother William.

He added: "William was not amused. He politely turned it down immediately."



THE INDEPENDENT

ON SUNDAY

13 JANUARY 2002

£1.20 (UK) £1.45 (EURO)

Prince Harry sent to rehab over drink and drugs

BY CLAIRE HILL

Prince Harry was sent to a drugs rehabilitation clinic after he admitted to smoking cannabis and drinking alcohol, it emerged last night.

His father, the Prince of Wales, sent his son to Featherstone Lodge Rehabilitation Centre in Peckham, south London. Prince Charles took the decision after learning his son had taken drugs during private parties at Highgrove, and had drunk alcohol at the nearby Rattlebone Inn in Sherston, reports said.

These incidents are reported to have happened last June and July when Harry was 16. It is believed that Prince Charles was alerted to the problem when a senior member of staff noticed a smell of cannabis. In the late summer, he visited the rehabilitation centre for what was intended to be a "short, sharp shock."

Bill Puddicombe, the chief executive of Phoenix House Treatment Service For Drug Dependency, confirmed Prince Harry's visit to the lodge. "The visit was at the request of the Prince of Wales, who is our patron," he said. "Prince Harry came for a couple of hours on a day in late summer and talked to several people in

recovery, heroin and cocaine addicts mostly.

"They told him what had happened in their lives, which must have been quite harrowing for him. Prince Harry was friendly and relaxed and the residents liked him and responded very warmly to him.

"I spoke to the Prince in November and was pleased to hear that Harry had enjoyed his visit and learnt a lot.

"It was an opportunity for the Prince of Wales to teach Prince Harry about our work and the consequences of taking drugs. Featherstone has helped an enormous number of people, and we are pleased if the visit helped Prince Harry too."

Prince Harry was reportedly shown the residential and detox areas and sat in on a communal therapy group and heard stories of addicts moving from cannabis to cocaine and heroin.

A spokesman for St James's Palace said last night: "This is a serious matter which was resolved within the family, and is now in the past and closed." It is expected there will be widespread praise for the Prince of Wales's actions.

Prince Harry, now at Eton public school and planning to go to agricultural college after his A-levels, is the latest in a line of young aristocrats and



Prince Harry, who was sent to a drink and drugs rehabilitation unit by his father

PA

politicians' children who have succumbed to drug-taking. The Hon. Nicholas Knatchbull, a godson of Prince Charles, was in a rehabilitation clinic last year. Camilla Parker-Bowles's son, Tom, and Lord Frederick Windsor have also admitted using cocaine. Tony Blair's son, Euan, was found drunk in Leicester Square in 2000 when he was 16.

The *Mail on Sunday* also reported last night that the prince was at the centre of a police investigation into after-

hours drinking at the Rattlebone Inn. He verbally abused a French employee and was ordered to leave the premises, the report said. The landlord, David Baker, left the pub within weeks of the incident.

The Prince of Wales was involved in an underage drinking episode when he was 14. During a school sailing trip, he led his four friends to the Crown Hotel on the Isle of Lewis. He asked for a cherry brandy, the first drink that came to his mind.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Distancing the facts

Look at these sentences from the newspaper article.

These incidents are reported to have happened last June ...
It is believed that Prince Charles was alerted to the problem ...
It is expected there will be widespread praise ...
It would seem the problem has been nipped in the bud.

These are all ways of giving information without stating categorically that you know it to be true. The writer is putting distance between himself and the facts.

1 Passive constructions

Look at these sentences.

They say he works in the City.
People assume he's earning a lot of money.
Everyone thought he had made his fortune in oil.

These sentences can be expressed in the passive in two ways, beginning with *It* or *He*:

- It is said that he works in the City.*
It is assumed that he's earning a lot of money.
It was thought that he had made his fortune in oil.
- He is said to work in the City.*
He is assumed to be earning a lot of money.
He was thought to have made his fortune in oil.

What differences in form do you notice?

2 seem and appear

He appears to have learned his lesson.
The Sun seems to have found its information from a variety of sources.
The Independent seems to be more factual.
It appears that the Prince took the incident seriously.

▶▶ Grammar Reference p152

Passive constructions

1 Rewrite these sentences, beginning with the words in *italics*.

- It is reported that *the international criminal Jimmy Rosendale* is living in Ireland.
- People believe that *he* is the head of a gang of bank robbers.
- Everyone knows that *the gang* has carried out a series of robberies.
- It is supposed that *they* have escaped with over €1 million.
- It is thought that *they* are targeting banks in small provincial towns.
- They say *Jimmy Rosendale* is wanted for questioning by police in five countries.
- We understand *he* escaped from police custody by bribing a warder.
- It is assumed that *he* has been involved in criminal activities all his life.
- People presume that *he* learned his trade from his father.
- It is alleged that *his father* was the mastermind behind the 2001 gold bullion robbery.

seem and appear

- Change these sentences, beginning with the words in *italics*.
 1 It seems *the weather* is changing.
 2 It appears that *we* have missed the train.
 3 Peter appeared to have been attacked by a bull. (*It*)
 4 He seemed to have survived the ordeal. (*It*)
 5 It would seem that *the Government* has changed its policy.
 6 It appears that *they* are worried about losing the next election.

Reporting the news

- In groups, write a short newspaper article for one of these headlines. Include some of the constructions you have practised.

Athlete fails drugs test and loses medal

PM lied to Parliament over donations from businessman

PRICELESS PAINTING LOST IN FIRE TRAGEDY

TV SOAP STAR RICKY GOES INTO REHAB

ACTRESS CARRIE MOORE TO WED FOR NINTH TIME

CITY TRADER EMBEZZLES £25 MILLION

'DANGEROUS' PRISONER ESCAPES BY HELICOPTER

12-year-old maths genius wins place at Oxford

- T6.2** Listen to the news broadcast and use it as a dictation. Elect one student to write on the board while the rest of the class helps.

I think you've spelt that word wrong.
I don't think it was 'would'. I think it was 'had'.

VOCABULARY

Nouns formed from phrasal verbs

- 1 There are many compound nouns formed with a verb + preposition, or preposition + verb combination.

*Here is an **update** on the news.*

*At the **outbreak** of war I was just three years old.*

*The **health service** is suffering from budget **cutbacks**.*

*The town has a **bypass**, which keeps traffic out of the centre.*

Where is the stress on these words?

- 2 Some of these nouns operate as phrasal verbs, and some don't.

*Rioting **broke out** in the middle of the night.*

*Funds allocated to research have been severely **cut back**.*

*There is no verb **to-date-up**. **To pass by** is used literally.*

*We **passed by** the park on the way to the station.*

- 1 Complete the sentences with a compound noun starting with the word given. Use the definitions to help you.

out

- the final result of an election, or negotiations, when no one knows what to expect*
We are all waiting for the **outcome** of the meeting.
- a set of clothes worn together*
She bought a new **outfit** for the wedding.
- what is expected to happen in the future*
The **outlook** for tomorrow's weather is bleak, I'm afraid.
- a shop or company through which products are sold*
The Body Shop has retail **outlets** in major cities throughout the world.

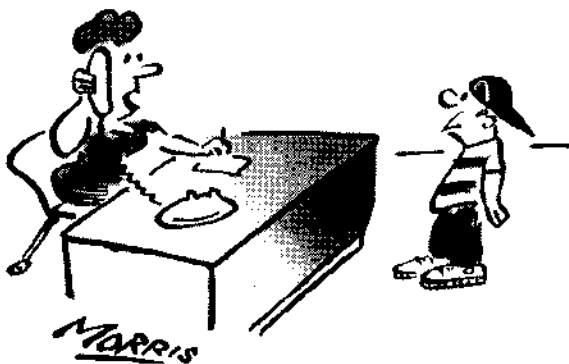
take

- a meal you buy in a restaurant to eat at home*
Shall we eat out or get a **takeaway**?
- getting control of a company by buying most of its shares*
Business sections of newspapers are full of company mergers and **takeovers**.

down

- failure or ruin following success*
She had a great career, but hard drugs were her **downfall**.
- a lot of rain that falls fast and heavily*
I got soaked in yesterday's **downpour**.
- information obtained from the Internet, usually free*
For free **download**, click here.

MAMMON INDUSTRIES



'He says his name is Billy and he's here to update our software.'

break

- new and successful development*
There have been great **breakthroughs** in organ transplants in the last 20 years.
- a serious mental illness*
After his mother died, Paul suffered a complete nervous **breakdown**.

Use **up** at the end of these four words.

- ending a marriage*
Sarah was very depressed after the **breakup** of her marriage to Tony.
- something used for support if the main one fails*
At the end of a day's writing, I make a copy of my work on disk as a **backup**.
- a situation in which a lot of changes are made*
There's been a big **breakup** at work. They've fired six managers and introduced new working practices.
- a way of organizing or arranging something*
I don't understand the political **breakup** in the States. Their elections seem to last for years.

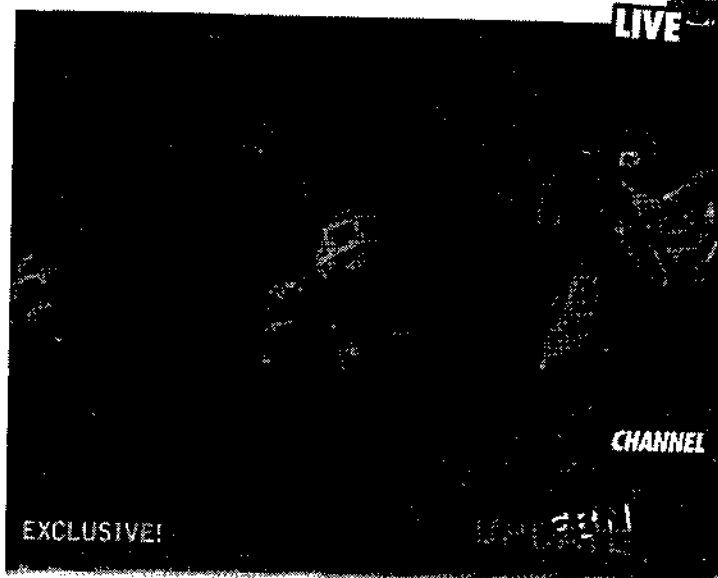
- 2 Work with a partner. Choose some of the words from the box. Write a definition and a sample sentence with a gap. Use a dictionary if necessary. Test the other students.

lookout	setback	outbreak	backlash	upkeep
slip-up	offshoot	comeback	showdown	upturn
write-off	drawback	hold-up	outburst	knock-out

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

A foreign correspondent

- 1 Look at the photos. Who are the different people? Where are they? What's happening?



- 2 'News is always bad news. We listen for a couple of days, then we lose interest.'

What recent news stories illustrate this or contradict it?

- 3 Check you know these words.

• do somebody justice	• off-beat places	• to shrink (pp shrunk)
• a pack (of wild animals)	• a patch (of land)	• subtlety
• inconspicuous	• a skirmish	• focused

- 4 **7 6 3** Listen to an interview with Simon Winchester, a foreign correspondent, and answer the questions.

Part one

- 1 What is the interviewer's first question? How does Simon Winchester answer it?
- 2 What kind of journalist is he? What kind of journalist *isn't* he?
- 3 What big news story of the 1970s does he mention?
- 4 What kind of places does he like?

Part two

- 5 What is the first reason he gives for the change in the foreign correspondent's role?
- 6 Why did the British press use to have a much better coverage of foreign affairs?
- 7 What does he say about *The New York Times*?
- 8 What is his attitude to television news reporting?
- 9 What sort of news reporting does he like?
- 10 How has an increased awareness of budgets affected foreign news coverage?

Language work

- 5 What do you understand by these lines from the interview?

- I was very much in the thick of things.
- a more fulfilling time personally
- I've never made a virtue out of danger.
- the echoes of Empire
- the little essay which illuminates brilliantly the inner workings of some distant place
- newspapers have become more market-driven, and less of a public service
- their hands are tied

- 6 Simon Winchester often understates his points. For example, he refers to some dangerous situations as *skirmishes*. Find other examples of understatement in the tapescript on p138.

What do you think?

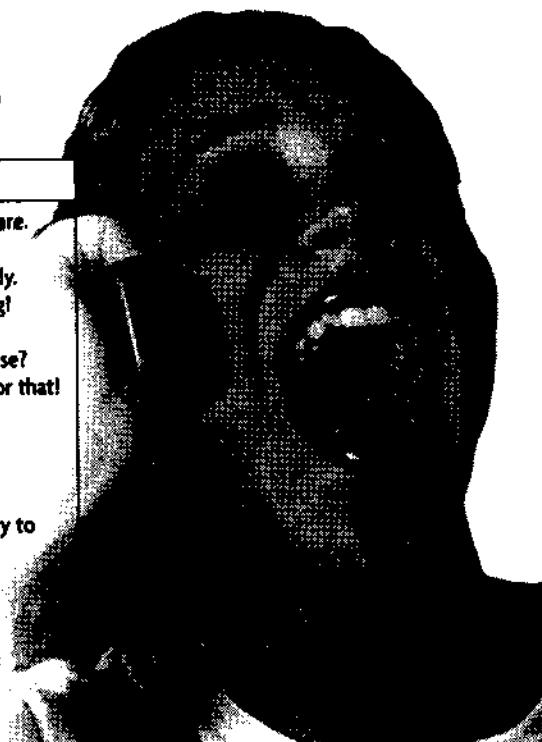
- Do you agree that people aren't so interested in what is happening outside their own country any more? Has television numbed our curiosity? How much foreign news coverage is there in your newspapers?
- 'We go in ... the blazing TV lights ... for a short time, and then we go on to the next story.' How much does TV report the news and how much does it create it nowadays? Think of recent big world stories that exemplify this.
- 'As soon as there's a disaster, reporters ask three questions. How many dead? Where were they from? How did you feel when it happened?' Do you agree?

THE LAST WORD

Responding to news

- 1 Match the statements and responses. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

A	B
1 Guess what! I won £5 million on the lottery!	a So what? I don't care.
2 My grandfather died last week.	b In your dreams.
3 One of my students told me I was a lousy teacher.	c Over my dead body.
4 Here we are! Home at last.	d Now you're talking!
5 I'm broke since I bought all those designer clothes.	e Nice one!
6 Have you heard that Jim's leaving to go to another job?	f Where's the surprise?
7 I missed the last bus and had to walk home.	g Thank goodness for that!
8 When I get a job, I'm going to be a millionaire.	h Tough.
9 I'm going on holiday to Barbados for two weeks.	i You're kidding!
10 My six-year-old daughter painted me a picture for Father's Day.	j What a drag!
11 I'm fed up with revising. Let's go out for a beer.	k What a cheek!
12 Susan says she never wants to see you again.	l Oh no! I'm so sorry to hear that.
13 My team lost again last weekend.	m Good riddance.
14 (12-year-old girl) Dad, I'm going to an all-night party. Is that OK?	n Bless her!



T 6.4 Listen and check. What additional comments do you hear?

- 2 What ideas do the responses in column B express?

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> surprise at someone's lack of respect | <input type="checkbox"/> no concern | <input type="checkbox"/> I'm impressed! |
| <input type="checkbox"/> sympathy | <input type="checkbox"/> relief | <input type="checkbox"/> I don't believe you. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> no sympathy | <input type="checkbox"/> I like what you're saying. | <input type="checkbox"/> What you're saying won't happen. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> pleasure that someone is leaving | <input type="checkbox"/> Isn't she cute? | <input type="checkbox"/> I won't allow this to happen. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> no surprise | <input type="checkbox"/> How boring! | |

- 3 Work with a partner. Cover the responses and try to remember the complete conversations.

- 4 **T 6.5** Listen to these lines of conversation. Reply using a response from column B in exercise 1, then continue the conversations.

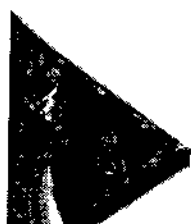
- 5 **T 6.6** Listen to the conversations. What is the second speaker's attitude?

Look at the tapescript on p138 and practise the conversations with a partner. B should try to sound sarcastic.

- 6 In pairs, make conversations from the chart. B needs to decide how to sound – sincere or sarcastic.

A	B
I've done all the washing-up.	You've been a great help.
I've spilt paint all over your carpet.	Thank you so much.
I've burnt the meal.	That's just brilliant.
I've hoovered everywhere.	I don't know what I'd have done without you.





7 Words of wisdom

Modal auxiliary verbs • Rhyme and reason • Breaking the rules of English

STARTER

- 1 Work with a partner. Which of these people have you heard of? Why are they famous?
- 2 What do their quotations mean? Which do you agree with? Do you have any favourites?

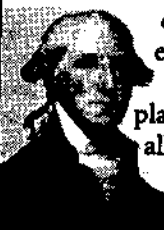
1 'A journey of one thousand miles begins with a single step.'

Confucius 551-479 BC



4 'The very atmosphere of firearms anywhere and everywhere restrains evil interference - they deserve a place of honor with all that is good.'

George Washington
1732-1799



8 'Love is like quicksilver in the hand. Leave the fingers open and it stays. Clutch and it darts away.'

Dorothy Parker 1893-1967

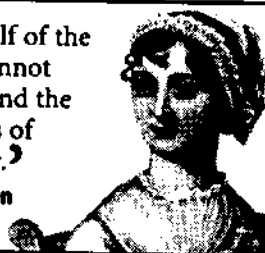


2 'Health is the greatest gift, contentment the greatest wealth, faithfulness the best relationship.'

Buddha 563-483 BC

5 'One half of the world cannot understand the pleasures of the other.'

Jane Austen
1775-1817



6 'When I was fourteen years old, I was amazed at how unintelligent my father was. By the time I turned twenty-one, I was astounded by how much he had learned in the last seven years.'

Mark Twain 1835-1910

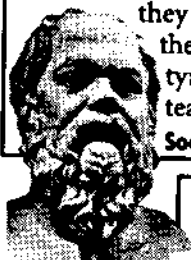


9 'The old law about 'an eye for an eye' leaves everybody blind.'

Martin Luther King 1929-1968

3 'Our youth now love luxury. They have bad manners, contempt for authority; they show disrespect for their elders; they contradict their parents and tyrannize their teachers.'

Socrates 469-399 BC



7 'I do not know with what weapons World War 3 will be fought, but World War 4 will be fought with sticks and stones.'

Albert Einstein 1879-1955

10 'Life is full of misery, loneliness and suffering - and it's over much too soon.'

Woody Allen b.1935

- 3 Which quotations do you find relevant to today's world or your own life? In what ways? Discuss with your partner, then the class.

READING AND LISTENING

Letter to a newborn son



Fergal Keane is a BBC foreign correspondent. He recorded this letter to his newborn son for a programme called *From Our Own Correspondent* while he was working in Hong Kong. Following the broadcast, hundreds of people jammed the BBC switchboard in tears because they were so moved by his words.

1 Read these lines from the letter and answer the questions below.

- You are asleep cradled in my left arm and I am learning the art of one-handed typing.
 - One man said you were the first baby to be born in the block in the year of the Pig.
 - Your coming has turned me upside down and inside out.
 - Like many foreign correspondents I know, I have lived a life that, on occasion, has veered close to the edge: war zones, natural disasters, darkness in all its shapes and forms.
 - And it's also true that I am pained, perhaps haunted is a better word, by the memory, suddenly so vivid now, of each suffering child I have come across on my journeys.
 - But there is something more, a story from long ago that I will tell you face to face, father and son, when you are older. It's a very personal story...
- 1 What do the lines tell you about Fergal's feelings on the birth of his son?
 - 2 What is *the year of the Pig*?
 - 3 What do you learn of his job as a foreign correspondent?
 - 4 What do you think the *personal story* from long ago might be?

2 **T 7.1** Read and listen to the first part of the letter. Answer the questions.

- 1 What has Fergal learned about the practicalities of looking after a newborn baby?
- 2 What do you understand by *the new grammar* of their daily lives?
- 3 Why are the Chinese people in their apartment block so pleased?
- 4 Is fatherhood as he expected it would be?

Letter to a newborn son

PART ONE

My dear son,

It is six o'clock in the morning on the island of Hong Kong. You are asleep cradled in my left arm and I am learning the art of one-handed typing. Your mother, more tired yet more happy than I've ever known her, is sound asleep in the room next door and there is a soft quiet in our apartment. Since you've arrived, days have melted into night and back again and we are learning a new grammar, a long sentence whose punctuation marks are feeding and winding and nappy changing and these occasional moments of quiet.

When you're older we'll tell you that you were born in Britain's last Asian colony in the lunar year of the Pig and that when we brought you home, the staff of our apartment block gathered to wish you well. 'It's a boy, so lucky, so lucky. We Chinese love boys,' they told us. One man said you were the first baby to be born in the block in the year of the Pig. This, he told us, was good.

Feng Shui, in other words a positive sign for the building and everyone who lived there. Naturally your mother and I were only too happy to believe that. We had wanted you and waited for you, imagined you and dreamed about you and now that you are here no dream can do justice to you.



3 **T 7.2** Listen only to part two. Are these statements true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 His Chinese friends say that his son has to be given a Chinese name.
- 2 He might call him *Son of the Eastern Star* after the beautiful sunrise.
- 3 He used to be very ambitious in his work.
- 4 These children he mentions were all hurt in floods.
 - Andi Mikail from Eritrea
 - Domingo and Juste from southern Angola
 - Sharja from Afghanistan
 - Three young children from Rwanda

4 **T 7.3** Read and listen to part three. Answer the questions.

1 Who are these people? How are they connected to the places?

a young woman	- a snowbound big city
a taxi driver	- a shop doorway
an alcoholic man	- a one-roomed flat
a baby boy	- the Adventist Hospital

- 2 What indications are there that Fergal's parents loved him and each other?
- 3 Describe his father. What is Fergal's attitude to him and his problems?
- 4 What regrets does he have about his father?

PART THREE

Daniel, these memories explain some of the fierce protectiveness I feel for you, the tenderness and the occasional moments of blind terror when I imagine anything happening to you. But there is something more, a story from long ago that I will tell you face to face, father and son, when you are older. It's a very personal story but it's part of the picture. It has to do with the long lines of blood and family, about our lives and how we can get lost in them and, if we're lucky, find our way out again into the sunlight.

It begins thirty-five years ago in a big city on a January morning with snow on the ground and a woman walking to the hospital to have her first baby. She is in her early twenties and the city is still strange to her, bigger and noisier than the easy streets and gentle hills of her distant home. She's walking because there is no money and everything of value has been pawned to pay for the alcohol to which her husband has become addicted. On the way, a taxi driver notices her sitting, exhausted and cold, in the doorway of a shop and he takes her to hospital for free. Later that day, she gives birth to a baby boy and, just as you are to me, he is the best thing she has ever seen. Her husband comes that night and weeps with joy when he sees his son. He is truly happy. Hungover, broke, but in his own way happy, for they were both young and in love with each other and their son.

But, Daniel, time had some bad surprises in store for them. The cancer of alcoholism ate away at the man and he lost his family. This was not something he meant to do or wanted to do, it just was. When you are older, my son, you will learn about how complicated life becomes, how we can lose our way and how people get hurt inside and out. By the time his son had grown up, the man lived away from his family, on his own in a one-roomed flat, living and dying for the bottle. He died on the fifth of January, one day before the anniversary of his son's birth, all those years before in that snowbound city. But his son was too far away to hear his last words, his final breath, and all the things they might have wished to say to one another were left unspoken.

Yet now, Daniel, I must tell you that when you let out your first powerful cry in the delivery room of the Adventist Hospital and I became a father, I thought of your grandfather and, foolish though it may seem, hoped that in some way he could hear, across the infinity between the living and the dead, your proud statement of arrival. For if he could hear, he would recognize the distinct voice of family, the sound of hope and new beginnings that you and all your innocence and freshness have brought to the world.

5 **T 7.1-3** Listen again to the whole letter. Summarize each part in one or two lines.

Vocabulary work

6 Work with a partner. Who or what do the pronouns in *italics* refer to? What is the meaning of the words underlined? Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 1 He was winded, fed and cradled.
- 2 He gambled with death, veering close to the edge of danger.
- 3 He cried out when the wind blew dust onto his wounds.
- 4 He was dying from malnutrition.
- 5 It was ransacked and in ruins.
- 6 They huddled and clung together.
- 7 She pawned her possessions to pay for his addiction.
- 8 He was hungover and broke.
- 9 The cancer of alcoholism ate away at their lives.

What do you think?

- What does Fergal Keane mean when he says:
'So much that seemed essential to me has, in the past few days, taken on a different colour.'
- How will his relationship with his son differ from the one with his own father?
- What lessons about life does Fergal Keane want his son to learn from this letter?
- Which parts of the letter do you think particularly moved the listeners to the BBC?
- What lessons have you learned from your upbringing that you would like to pass on to your children?



Daniel Patrick Keane

was born on
Thursday, February 4th
in Hong Kong

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Modal auxiliary verbs

Modal verbs in the present and future

- 1 All modal verbs can be used to express varying degrees of likelihood or probability. Match a sentence on the left with an explanation on the right.

It	will must could may might can can't shouldn't	be difficult.	I'm not sure but it's possible. (x3) All evidence points to this. I predict this strongly. I have a lot of evidence that it is. I have a lot of evidence that it isn't. There are times when it is difficult. If everything goes according to plan.
----	--	---------------	--

- 2 Certain modals can also be used to express *obligation* (mild and strong), *permission*, *ability*, *willingness*, and *habit*.

You should see a doctor. (mild obligation/advice)

You may go in now. (permission)

She will bite her nails. (habit)

Give some more examples.

►► Grammar Reference p153

- 1 Which sentences express a degree of probability?

- 1 He always looks so stressed. He *must* have a very demanding job.
- 2 You *must* come with us next time. You'd love it.
- 3 I *can't* hear you – the line's bad.
- 4 They *can't* be coming. They'd have been here by now.
- 5 She *might* change her mind if we keep on at her.
- 6 You *could* be right.
- 7 You *can* borrow the car. I don't need it.
- 8 We *may* stay over at Claire's if the party finishes late.
- 9 No, you *may not* go out on a school night just before your exams.
- 10 You *should* have no trouble passing. You're good at exams.
- 11 You *should* be studying three hours a night.
- 12 *Will* you give me a hand with this?
- 13 It's half past ten. She'll be at the airport by now.
- 14 It's so annoying. He *won't* admit when he's in the wrong.
- 15 He *can* read and he's only three.
- 16 Learning English *can* be difficult.

What are the uses in the other sentences?

Modal verbs in the past

- 1 Modals expressing probability all form their past in the same way.

Verb + Perfect Infinitive

She	will	
It	must	have arrived.
They	may	

Give some more examples.

- 2 Modals expressing other meanings can have different forms in the past.

We must stop to get petrol.
(present obligation)

We had to stop to get petrol.
(past obligation)

- 3 What are the meanings of the modals in these sentences?

She could/was able to read at three.

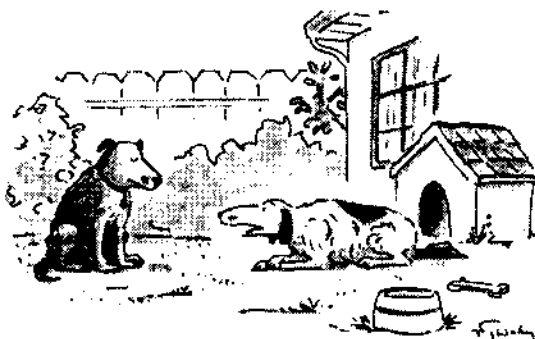
He wouldn't admit that he was wrong.

You should have seen the doctor.

He would always argue the point.

I needn't have brought my umbrella.

►► Grammar Reference p153



*'I've got the bowl, the bone, the big yard,
I know I should be happy.'*

- 2 Put the modal in the first sentence into the past to complete the second sentence.

- 1 It must be raining. Everyone's putting up their umbrellas.
It must have been raining. The ground is still wet.
- 2 I must stop smoking.
I _____ smoking because I became breathless just walking upstairs.
- 3 He should stop smoking before it's too late.
He _____ before it was too late.
- 4 We can go to Bob's party on Saturday.
We _____ to Bob's party last Saturday.
- 5 There's the phone. It'll be Paul.
Did he have a deep voice? It _____ Paul.
- 6 You needn't give me a lift, but if you're going my way that's great.
She _____ me a lift, but she did.
- 7 You needn't give me a lift because I've got my car with me.
She _____ me a lift, so she didn't.
- 8 My niece can't read very well because she's dyslexic.
My niece _____ until she was twelve.
- 9 Let's take a map. We'll get lost if we don't.
I'm glad we took the map. We _____ if we hadn't.
- 10 What's wrong with him? He'll just sit for hours staring into space.
Something was wrong. He _____ staring into space.

- 3 Look at these pairs of sentences and discuss possible differences in meaning with a partner.

1 He must be on his way.
I must be on my way.

2 I must stop smoking.
I have to stop smoking.

3 They must share a flat together.
We must share a flat together.

4 You don't have to buy her chocolates.
You mustn't buy her chocolates.

5 The exam will have started.
The exam will be starting.

6 He can't be married.
We can't be married.

- 4 Extend each sentence in exercise 3 to illustrate its meaning.

He must be on his way *because he said he was leaving at ten o'clock.*

I must be on my way. *I'm meeting John in half an hour.*

SPEAKING

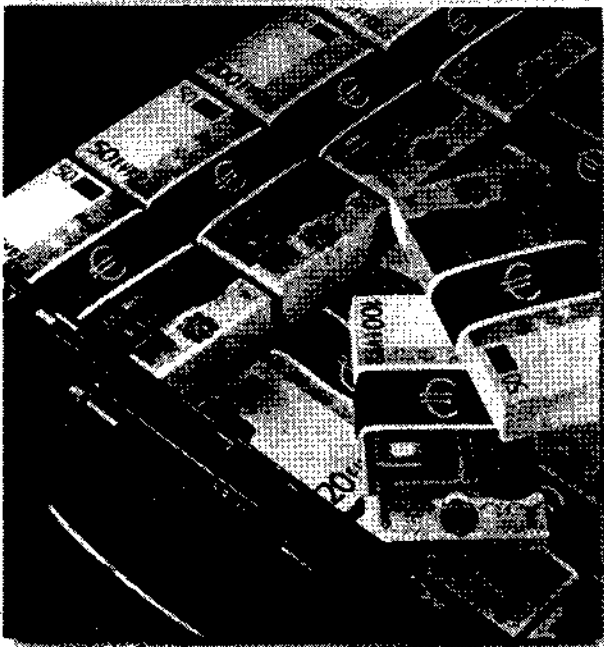
Dilemma!

- 1 Work in groups. In this game you have to predict how one of your classmates would behave in a certain situation. Your teacher will give each group cards like this.

SITUATION

You are a taxi driver.
You find a bag in your cab with €20,000 in it.
The name of the owner is on the bag,
but not the address.

WHAT WOULD YOU DO?



- 2 Choose a card. Then choose someone in the room and discuss with your group how you think he or she would react in that situation. Write down their prediction.
- 3 When it is your turn, read out the situation card to the person you chose. Ask him or her how he/she would react. If your prediction is right, your group scores a point. If it is wrong, challenge them and explain why you are right. The whole class votes to make a final decision.
- 4 The secret is to match a person and a situation, and then it is a question of how well you know your classmates. Be prepared for some surprises!

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Words of wisdom

- 1 **T 7.4** Listen to some people talking about advice they have been given in their lives. Take notes after each person to complete the chart.



Name	Words of wisdom	Given by whom?
1 Elaine		
2 Lizzie		
3 Justin		
4 Claire		
5 Henry		
6 Simon		
7 Fiona		
8 Chris		
9 Sue		
10 Martyn		

- 2 Work with a partner and use your notes to talk to each other about the people in the chart.
Which pieces of advice do you find most interesting or relevant to you?
- 3 Have you ever been given any particularly memorable words of wisdom that have helped you in your life? Tell the class.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Rhyme and reason

- 1 Work with a partner. Read the poem on p69 and discuss which is the best word to complete the lines. Use a dictionary if necessary. Compare your version with others in the class. Justify your choice of words.
- 2 **T 7.5** Listen and compare with the actual poem. Whose was closest to the original?
- 3 Listen again and mark the stresses in the first two verses. Read the poem aloud to each other, concentrating on the rhythm.
- 4 **T 7.6** Read and listen to one of the poems some school children wrote, modelled on Lewis Carroll's verses.

You are old, Uncle John

'You are old, Uncle John,' the young girl did say,

'Yet you spend six hours a day at the gym,

And you jog down the road before break of day

Pray, why keep yourself so very trim?'

'In my youth,' Uncle John replied to his niece

'I was hugely enormously fat,

But now that I've met a young lady from Greece

Motivation has got rid of that!'



- 5 Work with your partner to write some similar verses. Read them to the class.

You are old, Father William

BY LEWIS CARROLL

'You are old, Father William,' the young man said,
'And your hair has become very white;
And yet you incessantly stand on your _____.
Do you think, at your age, it is _____?'

head/hands/bed
smart/right/bright

'In my youth,' Father William replied to his son,
'I feared it might _____ the brain;
But, now that I'm perfectly sure I have _____,
Why, I do it again and again.'

injure/hurt/destroy
none/one/gone

'You are old,' said the youth, 'as I _____ before,
And have grown most _____ fat,
Yet you turned a back somersault in at the door,
Pray what is the reason of that?'

stated/mentioned/suggested
hugely/uncommonly/unnaturally

'In my youth,' said the sage, as he shook his grey _____,
'I kept all my limbs very _____
By the use of this ointment – one shilling the box –
Allow me to sell you a couple?'

curls/beard/locks
supple/fit/nimble

'You are old,' said the youth, 'and your jaws are too weak
For anything tougher than _____;
Yet you finished the goose, with the _____ and the beak
Pray, how did you manage to do it?'

cake/suet/jelly
body/feathers/bones

'In my youth,' said his father, 'I took to the law,
And argued each _____ with my wife;
And the muscular strength which it gave to my _____,
Has lasted the rest of my life.'

case/day/night
tongue/jaw/chin

'You are old,' said the youth, 'one would hardly suppose
That your eye was as _____ as ever;
Yet you balanced an eel on the end of your nose –
What made you so _____ clever?'

steady/true/focused
really/awfully/very

'I have answered three questions, and that is enough,'
Said his father. 'Don't give yourself _____!
Do you think I can listen all day to such _____?
Be off, or I'll kick you downstairs!'

airs/manners/away
rubbish/stuff/nonsense



THE LAST WORD

Breaking the rules of English

- 1 Look at two quotations on the subject of English grammar rules.
What point is being made by both writers?

‘Ending a sentence
with a preposition is
something up with
which I will not put.’

WINSTON CHURCHILL

‘There is a busybody on your staff who devotes a lot of his time
to chasing split infinitives. Every good literary craftsman splits
his infinitives when the sense demands it. I call for the immediate
dismissal of this pedant. It is of no consequence whether he decides
to go quickly or quickly to go or to quickly go. The important
thing is that he should go at once.’

GEORGE BERNARD SHAW in a letter to *The Times* newspaper

- 2 There are many ‘rules’ in English which linguistic pedants insist should be
taught to children. Work with a partner. Read these tips and say how the ‘rule’
in each one is broken. Correct them according to the rule where possible.

20 TIPS FOR PROPER ENGLISH

- 1 A preposition is a terrible word to end a sentence with. Never do it.
- 2 Remember to never split an infinitive.
- 3 Don't use no double negatives.
- 4 Don't ever use contractions.
- 5 And never start a sentence with a conjunction.
- 6 Write i before e except after c. I'm relieved to receive this anciently weird rule.
- 7 Foreign words and phrases are not 'chic'.
- 8 The passive voice is to be avoided wherever possible.
- 9 Who needs rhetorical questions?
- 10 Reserve the apostrophe for it's proper use and omit it when it's not necessary.
- 11 Use fewer with number and less with quantity. Less and less people do.
- 12 Proof read carefully to see if you any words out.
- 13 Me and John are careful to use subject pronouns correctly.
- 14 Verbs has to agree with their subjects.
- 15 You've done good to use adverbs correctly.
- 16 If any word is incorrect at the end of a sentence, an auxiliary verb is.
- 17 Steer clear of incorrect verb forms that have snuck into the language.
- 18 Take the bull by the hand and avoid mixing your idioms.
- 19 Tell the rule about 'whom' to who you like.
- 20 At the end of the day avoid clichés like the plague.

- 3 Which rules above do you think are ‘good’ rules and which are not? Why?
4 Which rules in your language do you think are unnecessary or silly?



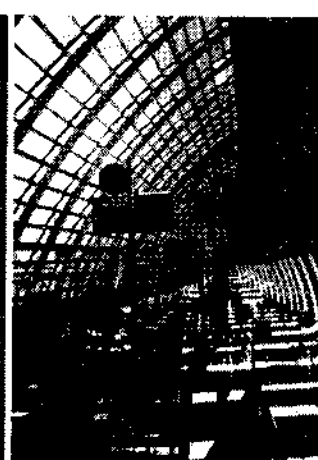
8 Altered images

Metaphors and idioms • Real and unreal tense usage • Softening the message

STARTER



- 1 Are these all examples of art? Are some more 'arty' than others?
What is the purpose of art? Or does it, by definition, have no point?
- 2 Work with a partner and try to describe each one. Discuss your reactions to them.



For artwork
references
see p6

- 3 **T 8.1** Listen to different people describing the works of art. Which picture are they talking about?
Make notes about what they say and discuss with your partner. Which picture is not described?
- 4 Compare the reactions of you and your partner with those of the people you listened to.
Discuss them with the class.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

At home with an artist

- 1 Look at the photographs. How would you describe Joe Downing's style of painting and sculpting? What's your opinion of it?
- 2 Read the biodata. Work with a partner and write some questions you would like to ask Joe Downing if you met him.
- 3 **T & E** These statements about Joe are *all* false. Listen to the first part of an interview with him and correct them. Check any unknown vocabulary in your dictionary.

Part one The early years

- 1 Joe wanted to be an artist from childhood.
- 2 He grew up surrounded by beautiful paintings.
- 3 He helped at home with the domestic chores, such as making quilts and shelling beans.
- 4 His mother showed no appreciation of beautiful things.
- 5 His childhood was idyllic until he had to go to war when he was 16.
- 6 He had his nineteenth birthday in Germany.
- 7 After the war he wanted to study optometry in Chicago.
- 8 As a country bumpkin he found it very difficult to be plunged into city life.
- 9 He says he would never have become an artist if he hadn't seen Georges Seurat's painting, *La Grande Jatte*.



Joe Downing Ménerbes

Joe Dudley Downing is a painter and sculptor who holds the distinction of being one of only three Americans ever to have had their work exhibited at the Louvre Museum in Paris.

Born in Kentucky, he grew up on a tobacco farm in the village of Horse Cave, but has lived in France since 1950, dividing his time between Paris and the southern village of Ménerbes.

Picasso visited his first exhibition in Paris in 1968 and offered him advice. His work can now be found in the permanent collections of museums in France, Belgium, Luxembourg, Israel, Canada, Australia, and the United States of America.





at home with an artist

4 **T 8.3** Before you listen to the second part of the interview, check that you understand the words in *italics*.

Part two On being a painter

- 1 Has Joe always been an abstract painter? What was his development as an artist? In what way did he *follow his bent*?
- 2 How did he *keep the pot boiling* when he moved to Paris?
- 3 What does he mean when he talks about a *very strong thread*, what the French call a '*fil conducteur*', in his work?
- 4 What does he say is *fragile* for all artists?
- 5 What is the connection between *velvety-looking lasagne* and *green leather gardening gloves*? Tell Joe's ridiculous story in your own words.

5 **T 8.4** Listen to the final part of the interview and answer the questions.

Part three On living in the South of France

- 1 What does Joe believe happens anywhere there's sunshine, olives, and Roman tiles?
- 2 What do you learn about the village of Ménerbes?
- 3 Why does Joe feel selfish and mean?
- 4 Who said: 'I'm tired of lugging you two around'? Why?
- 5 How did he discover his house in Ménerbes?
- 6 Why was it so inexpensive? What was written on the shoebox?
- 7 In what way has Joe's life come full circle?
- 8 Does he have any regrets about his life?

What do you think?

- Which of the questions you wrote with your partner in exercise 2 were answered?
- In what ways has fate played a part in Joe's life? How might his life have been different?
- What overall impression do you get of Joe as a man? Would his lifestyle appeal to you?

Talking about a work of art

Do you have a favourite work of art? A painting? A sculpture? A piece of music? A building? Where and when did you see/hear it? Make notes describing it and saying why you like it. If you can, bring a picture to the class.

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Metaphors and idioms

1 **T 8.5** Read conversation A and listen to conversation B. What are the differences?

2 Look at the tapescript on p140 and find the metaphors in conversation B. Match the metaphors to their meanings in conversation A. What are their literal meanings?

Time flies.

It means to go through the air.

Usually, birds, planes, and insects fly.



3 Work with a partner. Here are some more sentences that contain metaphors. What is the literal meaning? What is the metaphorical meaning?

Conversation A

A Hi, Annie! I haven't seen you for ages.

B I know. Time goes so fast, doesn't it?

A It's true. Work as busy as ever, is it?

B Yes, I'm working very hard as usual, but we have an awful lot of work at the moment. We're just about coping, but it isn't easy. How about you?

A OK. Business was bad this time last year, and we really had to make a lot of economies, but things have improved since then. You've moved, haven't you? Where are you living now?

B We've bought an old house in a little village where not much happens. You must come and visit us.

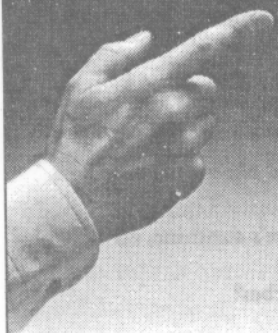
A I'd love to, but we're very busy at the moment. Does it need much doing to it?

B Everything. I hope we haven't given ourselves more work than we can manage.

A You'll be fine. Anyway, I must go. Lovely to see you again.

B And you. Bye!

Metaphors to do with the body



- 1 I don't want to point the finger at anyone for this defeat. I think we're all to blame.
- 2 When we set up the business, we had a few hiccups, but nothing we couldn't get round.
- 3 It broke his heart when she left him for another man.
- 4 The view over the snow-capped mountains takes your breath away.
- 5 Her terrible childhood experiences scarred her for life.

Metaphors to do with light



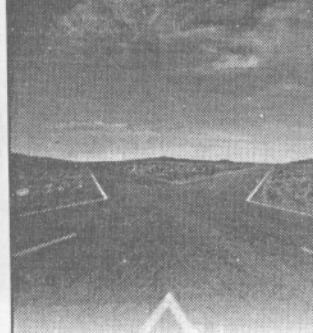
- 6 I couldn't solve the problem at all, and then the answer came to me in a flash.
- 7 When my daughter got her prize, she was glowing with pride.
- 8 It was going to an exhibition that sparked my interest in photography.
- 9 James has lived his whole life being overshadowed by his famous brother.
- 10 I didn't know why she was being so nice. Then it suddenly dawned on me. She wanted my money.

Metaphors to do with nature



- 11 Joe and Helen have a stormy relationship. They have some blazing rows.
- 12 His career blossomed after he was nominated for an Oscar.
- 13 She was in floods of tears when she was told she'd been made redundant.
- 14 The root of all my problems is lack of money.
- 15 Sorry. I haven't the foggiest idea what you're talking about.

Metaphors to do with movement



- 16 Help! I've reached a crossroads in life. What should I do next?
- 17 He followed in his father's footsteps and became a doctor.
- 18 The politician gave a long, rambling speech on the subject of monetarism.
- 19 We aren't getting any nearer to solving our problem. We're going round in circles.
- 20 There have been great strides in medical technology over the past fifty years.

- 4 **T 8.6** Listen to the conversation. Who and what is being talked about? The speakers use a lot of idioms. Which can you remember?
- 5 **T 8.6** These sentences are similar to some of those in the conversation. Replace the words in *italics* with the idioms you heard. Listen again and check.
- 1 *It was a complete surprise when he inherited a fortune.*
 - 2 When he heard about it, he was *thrilled*.
 - 3 He's *in real trouble* because he spent the whole lot in a month.
 - 4 He was going to ask her to marry him, but then he *lost the courage*.
 - 5 He'll have to *change his attitude, try harder* and get a job.
 - 6 Marilyn – no, that's not it. *I can almost remember her name.*
 - 7 She told him he was *useless*.
 - 8 I'm glad you told me, otherwise I might have *said something really insensitive*.
- 6 Replace the words in *italics* with a metaphor or idiom from exercises 3, 4, and 5. Make any necessary changes.
- 1 *I did what my mother did* and became a teacher.
 - 2 The actors had a few *small problems* at the beginning of the play, but then it went smoothly.
 - 3 My neighbours *row a lot*.
 - 4 When I heard I'd got the job, I was *very, very happy*.
 - 5 When Jane's marriage ended, she knew she *had to make an important decision that would affect the rest of her life*.
 - 6 This argument is stupid. We're *making no progress at all*.
 - 7 When she showed him the finished statue, it *left him stunned and he couldn't speak*.
 - 8 The business *developed successfully* when they won an order worth £1 million.
 - 9 I was going to ask the film star for his autograph, but then I *lost the courage* and couldn't do it.
 - 10 I went to the lecture on nuclear physics, but I didn't have a *clue* what it was about.
 - 11 The book got a *review with a lot of praise*, so I went out and bought it.
 - 12 You're *in real trouble*. I saw you steal that book.

READING AND SPEAKING

The man behind the mouse

- 1 What Disney films can you name? Have you ever been to a Disneyland® Theme Park? What do you know about them?
- 2 Which of these words or expressions would you relate to the world of Disney?

airbrushed reality	harmonious	romanticized
cruel	harsh	troubled
a dream factory	imaginative	a tormented childhood
fantasy land	idealized	violent
happy endings	magical	



- 3 Read the opening lines of the article. What first impression do you get of Walt Disney's childhood?
- 4 Read the rest of the article. Which of the words in exercise 2 on p75 relate to the life of the man, Walt Disney?
- 5 Imagine that Walt Disney lied about his life, and said these things. What in fact was the truth?
 - 1 I had an idyllic childhood with everything I could have wanted.
 - 2 We were a tight family unit, and we all got on well together.
 - 3 I wasn't particularly close to my brother.
 - 4 I put all of my childhood experiences into my work.
 - 5 Success came to me easily. I didn't have to work hard.
 - 6 I was a self-made man. Nobody helped me.
 - 7 I always put my family before my work, and I was always blessed with good health.
 - 8 The idea for Mickey Mouse was mine. I created every aspect of the character.
 - 9 There were never any hiccups in my career.
 - 10 I wasn't particularly involved in the creation of Disneyland.

Language work

- 6 Who might have said these things? About what?
 - 1 He'd beat us regularly for no reason.
 - 2 You'd better not do that again or I'll run away.
 - 3 I'd have been able to do more drawing if we'd been less poverty-stricken.
 - 4 If he'd asked our permission, we'd never have allowed him to go.
 - 5 Supposing we'd kept the name Mortimer?
 - 6 I know he'd rather we'd had a son.
 - 7 I'd have slept at home if she'd been quieter.
 - 8 If only you'd given up smoking years ago!

Are the 'd contractions short forms of *would* or *had*?

- 7 Work with a partner. Discuss the meaning of the words highlighted in the article.

What do you think?

- In what ways was Walt Disney a workaholic? What drove him?
- Successful people often have unhappy childhoods. Why is this? Do you know any examples?
- Are there features that all creative geniuses have in common?
- Compare the lives of Walt Disney and Joe Downing.



Walt

The man

It was 3.30 in the morning and 8-year-old Walt Disney was doing what he did at that time every morning - rolling hundreds of copies of the Kansas City Morning Times that he would soon place behind the screen door of subscribers along his route.

It was hard work for a little kid who also had to go to school, then deliver another round in the evening. Sometimes he had to traipse through three feet of snow. Other times he got so tired he'd sneak into an alley for a catnap. But the paper round beat picking apples for a living. That's what he'd been doing before, on his family's failing farm in Marceline, Missouri. The problem was that his boss - his stern father, Elias - had the nasty habit of delivering daily beatings both to Walt and his brother Roy, eight years Walt's senior. After a disgruntled Roy left home, the brunt of the work, and the beatings, fell on Elias' youngest son.

Walt Disney, born on December 5, 1901, never had time for a childhood. As a result, he spent all of his adult life attempting to invent one for himself. In the process - almost by accident - he created wonderful childhood memories for generation after generation of children worldwide.

An airbrushed boyhood

Later, Walt would paint a nostalgic picture of life in Missouri, carefully airbrushing away the difficult times. He'd talk about sketching the farm animals, which he did when he could find pencil and paper - rare commodities in the dirt-poor Disney home. Once he was punished for painting a cartoon on the wall of the house. As always, it was his teenage brother, Roy, who comforted him, rocking him to sleep.

When the Disneys moved to Chicago, Walt signed up for cartooning classes at the Chicago Academy of Fine Arts, working three part-time jobs to pay for them. But all these were abandoned during World War I, when, at the age of 16, he forged his parents' signatures and became an ambulance driver for the Red Cross in France.

Home again, Walt joined Roy in Kansas City and found work as a commercial artist. Here he met another artist, Ub Iwerks, and together they developed a series of short films called *Alice in Cartoonland*. Walt moved to Los Angeles, where Roy was in hospital with tuberculosis. He searched desperately for a distributor. The night he got a telegram offering him \$1,500

Disney

behind the mouse

by MELISSA BURDICK HARMON

apiece for six *Alice* shorts, Walt raced to the hospital where Roy was a patient, and persuaded him to leave hospital and come to work for him the next day.

Roy Disney would devote the rest of his life to helping his baby brother, skilfully handling the business end of the Disney empire. Walt also employed Ub Iwerks as chief animator.

Of mice, marriage and men

When he was 24, he married one of his employees, Lillian Bounds. It was a union that would last - although not always happily - until his death 41 years later. At 24, Walt was already married to his work. He created a cartoon character called *Oswald the Lucky Rabbit*, who was a great success. He then shifted his attention to mice, or one particular mouse called Mortimer. Lillian dismissed the name Mortimer as 'too sissy', so Mortimer became Mickey. Surprisingly, it was Ub Iwerks, not Walt, who first drew him. Walt, however, provided Mickey's voice. They made a talkie, *Steamboat Willie*, which premiered on November 18, 1928, to rave reviews, and Mickey Mouse became an overnight sensation.

Success followed success, but Walt pushed himself ever harder. In 1930 he suffered a nervous breakdown due to overwork, and when Lillian surprised him with the news that she was pregnant, he

became severely depressed. How could a man whose whole life was dedicated to giving himself a childhood take on the burden of becoming a parent?

He produced his first feature-length cartoon, *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*, for which he won a special Oscar. Then came the birth of a second daughter, Sharon, who took to crying all night. Walt, who had wanted a son, took to sleeping at the studio.

In many ways Walt was a benevolent employer, but, like his father he was subject to terrible fits of rage. Feeling totally betrayed when his animators went on strike because they wanted to join a union, he started working for the 'House of Un-American Activities Committee', which investigated 'communists' in Hollywood, and informed on the strike leader.

The last, best times

Post second World War, Walt continued to work prolifically. In 1950 he produced his first live-action film, *Treasure Island*. Then came *Disneyland*®. Everyone tried to dissuade him, saying it was too costly a dream, but he wouldn't listen. He oversaw every nut and bolt of its creation. His great world of fantasy opened on July 17, 1955. In the next seven weeks, more than one million people walked down *Disneyland*®'s Main Street USA, an idealized version of Main Street, Marceline, Missouri, circa 1900. The man who had spent his painful childhood in the real-life version of that town now stood in the window of an apartment decorated exactly like his boyhood home, tears streaming down his face, watching other people enjoy the perfect childhood world that he had created.

In November 1966 he was diagnosed with lung cancer. He was given six months to two years to live, but two weeks later, after spending the evening with Roy working on a new Florida theme park, Walt Disney died. He had just turned 65.

Walt Disney used to say jokingly, 'I hope we never lose sight of one thing ... none of this would have happened if it hadn't been for a mouse.' But in truth, it was started by a tormented childhood and became reality through Walt's irrepressible drive and imagination and the tireless help of a devoted brother.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

Real and unreal tense usage

would

- 1 *Would* has several different uses. Look at these examples from the text.
- Roy Disney would devote the rest of his life ... It was a union that would last ... until his death ...*
 - ... he'd sneak into an alley for a catnap. He'd talk about sketching the farm animals ...*
 - ... but Walt wouldn't listen.*

2 Which sentences, a, b, or c, express ...?

- past habits
- refusal on a past occasion
- the future in the past

►► Grammar Reference p154

1 Which use of *would* is expressed in these sentences?

- My car wouldn't start this morning. I had to get the bus.
- When I was a kid, I'd get up at 7.00 and take the dog for a walk.
- In Paris Charles met Penny, who he would marry five years later.
- Whenever we had time, we'd go windsurfing. Those were the days!
- When he was first going out with Jacky, he'd buy her presents all the time.
- So he took the job, did he? I knew he'd change his mind.
- I asked him why he'd lied, but he wouldn't tell me.
- Sorry about the noise. I didn't think you'd hear it.

2 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

- I could have smashed my computer this morning.
It just wouldn't ...
- My grandad was such a kind man.
He'd ...
- I don't know why she left me.
I told her a thousand times I'd ...
- My mother used to drive me mad.
She'd always ...
- I don't believe Manchester United lost 2-0!
I thought they'd ...
- Why did you tidy the flat?
I said I'd ...

Past tenses to express unreality

1 The examples of *would* in exercises 1 and 2 express real time. *Would* is also used in conditional sentences to express a situation which is contrary to reality.

I would sleep at home if the baby didn't make so much noise.

... none of this (success) would have happened if it hadn't been for a mouse.

Which is a second and which is a third conditional?
What are the rules of form and use?

2 There are other ways of expressing a situation which is contrary to reality. Identify the tenses in the examples below. What is the reality in each one? Complete the sentences.

I wish I didn't smoke so much. (But ...)

She wished she hadn't opened her big mouth. (But ...)

I wish you'd think before you speak. (But ...)

I wish I could drive. (But ...)

If only we'd set off earlier! (But ...)

►► Grammar Reference p154

3 These sentences all have verbs in the Past Simple. Which ones refer to real past time?

- Suppose we called him Mickey?
- He would become nostalgic when he told stories about his upbringing.
- I couldn't swim until I was fourteen.
- If I could afford it, I'd buy it.
- Isn't it time we had a break?
- My childhood was poor. If we had any money, it went to pay debts.
- He behaves as if he owned the place.
- I wish you didn't have to go.

4 These sentences all have verbs in the Past Perfect. Which ones refer to real past time?

- I wish you hadn't said that. It was cruel.
- I knew I'd seen her before.
- Had he known the truth, he would have acted more cautiously.
- She apologized, saying she hadn't had time to phone me.
- I'd rather you'd kept the news to yourself, but it's too late now.
- They looked as though they'd had a good time.

- 5 Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense or verb form. Where there is no verb given, use an auxiliary verb.

Seth and Amy are having a row in a hotel. They're on their way to London.

Amy Ugh! This hotel is horrible. I wish we (1) _____ (not come) here. I (2) _____ never _____ (see) such a dirty hotel in my life! It (3) _____ (not be) so bad if the bathroom (4) _____ (be) clean, but it (5) _____ (be) filthy. I (6) _____ even _____ (not wash) my socks in it.

Seth I know, but it (7) _____ (get) late, and we (8) _____ (drive) all day, and I (9) _____ (want) to stop. If we (10) _____, we might not have found a hotel and we (11) _____ still _____ (drive). That (12) _____ (be) awful. At least this is better than nothing.

Amy Well, I wish we (13) _____ (set off) earlier. Then we (14) _____ (can arrive) in London today, and we (15) _____ (have) a whole day to go round the galleries and museums. As it is, we (16) _____ (not get) there till tomorrow lunchtime, and we (17) _____ only _____ (have) a few hours.

Seth I (18) _____ (like) (19) _____ (spend) more time in London, too, but I (20) _____ (have) to go to work this morning. If I (21) _____, we (22) _____ (stay) in a top London hotel now instead of this dump.

Amy I (23) _____ (love) (24) _____ (see) a show, but we can't, so that's all there is to it. Anyway, it's time we (25) _____ (think) about getting something to eat. If it (26) _____ (not be) so late, I (27) _____ (suggest) going into town, but if we (28) _____ we might not find anywhere. It's quite late already.

Seth I wish you (29) _____ (not moan) about everything. I (30) _____ (not mind), but you're so indecisive. If it (31) _____ (leave) up to you, we (32) _____ never _____ (do) anything or go anywhere.

Amy OK, OK. I'm sorry. Let's go.



T 8.7 Listen and check. Practise the conversation with a partner. Pay attention to short forms and contractions.

THE LAST WORD

Softening the message

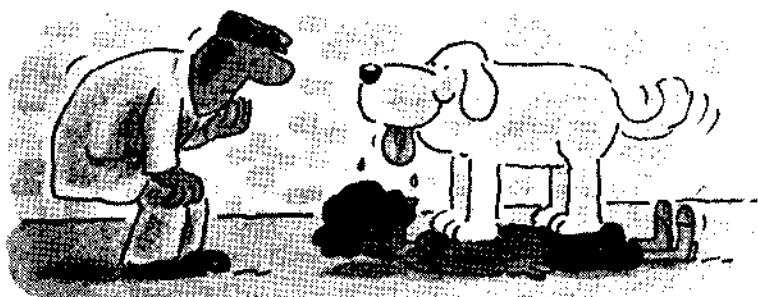
- 1 Sometimes we want to express ourselves in a tactful, polite way. We don't want to be too direct or confrontational.

Could you possibly lend me some money?
is less direct than *Lend me some money.*

Read the lines and number them in order, 1 being most direct. What makes each message less direct?

T 8.8 Listen and check. Practise the stress and intonation.

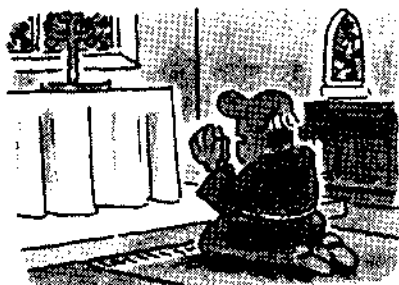
► Grammar Reference p156



- a ☐ I wonder if you could help me?
☐ Could you help me?
☒ Can you help me?
☐ I was wondering if you could possibly help me? I'd be very grateful.



- b ☐ Do you mind if I open the window?
☐ Would you mind if I opened the window? It's so stuffy in here.



- c ☐ I want to speak to you.
☐ I wanted to have a word with you, if that's all right.



- d ☐ If I were you, I'd dye it black.
☐ I'd have thought the best idea would have been to dye it black, but it's up to you.
☐ You could dye it black.
☐ Dye it black.

- 2 **T 8.9** Listen to some conversations. How is the message softened in each one?

Look at the tapescript on p141 and practise with a partner.

- 3 Rephrase these sentences so that they sound softer. Use the words in brackets.

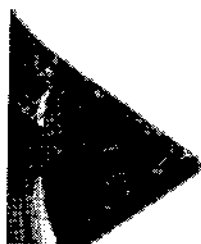
- 1 I want to use your phone. (*mind*)
- 2 Don't paint the wall red. (*If I ... you*)
- 3 We should go in my car. (*better*)
- 4 Ring back later. (*possible/possibly*)
- 5 We should phone to say we'll be late. (*Don't ... ?*)
- 6 Give me a lift to the station. (*hoping*)
- 7 She's French. (*think/thought*)
- 8 Would you like to come to the cinema with me? (*wondering*)
- 9 Fill in this form, please. (*mind*)
- 10 It'll rain this afternoon. (*surprised*)
- 11 I'm going for a walk. Anyone interested? (*thinking*)
- 12 I've popped in to see if you need anything. (*thought*)
- 13 It's a bad idea. (*say/said*)
- 14 Apologize to her. (*'d have said ... best idea*)
- 15 I gave her a present. She didn't say thank you. (*You'd have thought*)

T 8.10 Listen and check. Practise saying the sentences, paying attention to short forms and rhythm.

- 4 With a partner, write some conversations for these situations, using tactful, polite language. Choose one and act it out in front of the class.

- You want to invite someone to go out with you. Meal? Cinema? Dance? Picnic?
- You phone a hotel. You want to stay three nights, and you'd like a quiet room.
- Your friend has just moved into a new flat. He/She wants some ideas about what to do with it.
- Someone rings to speak to your flatmate. She's out. What time will she be back? (*I'd have thought ...*)

T 8.11 Listen and compare.



9

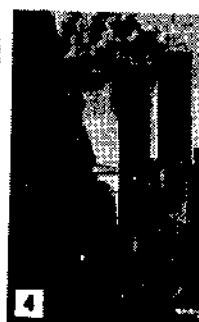
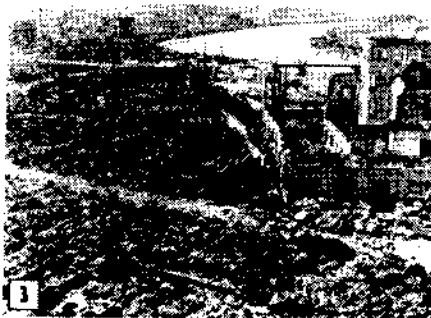
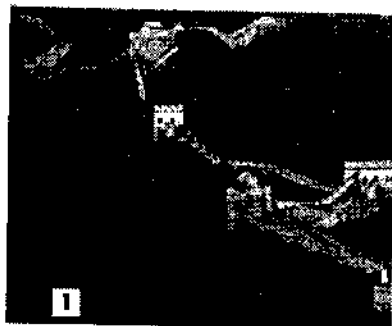
History lessons

Verb patterns • Homonyms, homophones, and homographs • Telling jokes

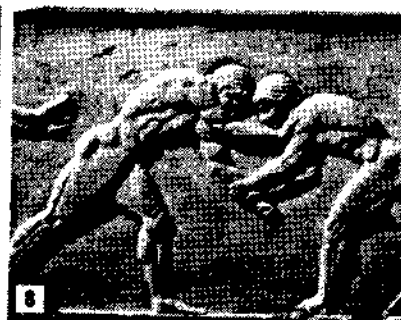
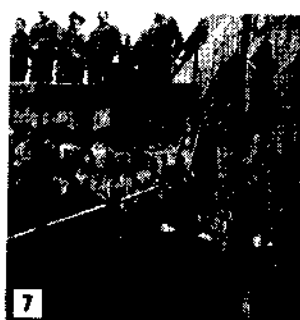
STARTER



- 1 Work in groups. Which historical events do the pictures illustrate? Match them to the events.
- 2 Put the twelve events in chronological order. In which century did they happen? Give any precise dates that you know.



- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> First World War begins | <input type="checkbox"/> Terrorist attack demolishes World Trade Center in New York | <input type="checkbox"/> US drops first atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Great Wall of China built | <input type="checkbox"/> Gottlieb Daimler and Karl Benz produce the first automobiles | <input type="checkbox"/> American War of Independence begins |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Charles Darwin publishes <i>On the Origin of Species</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> Leonardo da Vinci paints the <i>Mona Lisa</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> AIDS becomes a major health threat throughout the world |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Storming of the Bastille – start of French Revolution | <input type="checkbox"/> First Olympic Games held in Greece | <input type="checkbox"/> Berlin Wall demolished |



- 3 Write down the three events which you feel are most important. Add any others that you feel have been omitted from the list. Compare and justify your ideas in your groups and then with the whole class.
- 4 Which recent news events do you feel will go down in history?

READING AND SPEAKING

I was there

- Where do these historical events fit chronologically with those on p81?
 - The destruction of Pompeii by Mount Vesuvius
 - The first transatlantic radio message
 - The sinking of the *Titanic*
 - The first aeroplane flight across the Channel
 - The first men on the moon
- Match the events in exercise 1 with these extracts from eyewitness accounts.
 - It stood upright in the water for four full minutes, then it began to slide gently downwards.
 - There is nothing to be seen – neither the destroyer, nor France, nor England. I am alone. I am lost.
 - It had been awaiting its first visitors for a long time.
 - We saw the sea sucked away and apparently forced back by the earthquake.
 - The result meant much more to me than the mere successful realization of an experiment, it was an epoch in history.

Quickly scan all the texts to check your ideas.
- Work in groups. Look at the historical events on pp82–5 and divide them among you, choosing two or three that interest you. Read them and answer the questions.
 - What was the exact date of the event?
 - Who is describing it? Is the person a protagonist or an observer? In what way?
 - What kind of event is it? Natural or man-made? Good or bad? Describe it.
 - Who were the people involved? How did they react?
 - Why was it so important? What repercussions have there been since it took place?

Compare the answers with your group and share information about all the events.

Vocabulary work

- Which of these words are from the texts you chose? Divide them into nouns, verbs, and adjectives. Use a dictionary if necessary.

amplifiers	crude	shriek	toss
ashes	deploy	slant	trunk
blaze	jettison	slide	unimpeded
blot out	lunar	snowdrift	valves
bow	mob	stern	violent
cart	overwhelmed	stranded	wailing
coils	panic-stricken	swarm	whirl
condensers	pungent	sway	

- Explain the words from your texts to your group.
- Which words are technical words? Which texts are they from?

I was there ...

24 August, AD79

The Eruption of Vesuvius

BY PLINY THE YOUNGER

This was the eruption that destroyed and buried the towns of Pompeii and Herculaneum.

On 24 August, in the early afternoon, my mother drew attention to a cloud of unusual size and appearance. It was not clear at that distance from which mountain the cloud was rising. (It was afterwards known to be Vesuvius.) Its general appearance can best be expressed as being like an umbrella pine, for it rose to a great height on a sort of trunk and then split off into branches. Broad sheets of fire and leaping flames blazed at several points. By this time the courtyard was full of ashes so that its level had risen. The buildings were now shaking with violent shocks and seemed to be swaying to and fro.

My mother and I finally decided to leave the town. We were followed by a panic-stricken mob of people. Once beyond the buildings we stopped, and there we had some extraordinary experiences which thoroughly

I was there...

12 December, 1901

The first radio signal across the Atlantic

BY GUGLIELMO MARCONI

The signal was sent from Poldhu in Cornwall to Guglielmo Marconi, waiting on a cliff in Newfoundland.

Shortly before mid-day I placed the single earphone to my ear and started listening. The receiver on the table before me was very crude – a few coils and condensers – no valves, no amplifiers, not even a crystal. But I was at last on the point of putting the correctness of all my beliefs to the test. The answer came at 12.30 when I heard, faintly but distinctly, pip-pip-pip. I handed the phone to Kemp: 'Can you hear anything?' I asked. 'Yes,' he said, 'the letter S' – he could hear it. I knew then that all my anticipations had been justified. The electric waves sent out into space from Poldhu had traversed the Atlantic – the enormous distance of 1,700 miles – unimpeded by the curvature of the earth. The result meant much more to me than the mere successful realization of an experiment, it was an epoch in history. I now felt for the first time absolutely certain that the day would come when mankind would be able to send messages without wires not only across the Atlantic but also between the furthestmost ends of the earth.

us

alarmed us. We saw the sea sucked away and apparently forced back by the earthquake: it receded from the shore so that quantities of sea creatures were left stranded on dry sand. On the landward side a fearful black cloud parted to reveal great tongues of fire, like flashes of lightning magnified in size. Soon afterwards the cloud sank down to earth and covered the sea; it had already blotted out Capri. You could hear the shrieks of women, the wailing of infants, the shouts of men. Many besought the aid of gods, but still more imagined there were no gods left, and that the universe was plunged into darkness for evermore.

At last the darkness thinned. Then there was genuine daylight, and the sun actually shone out. We were terrified to see everything changed, buried deep in ashes like snowdrifts.

I was there...



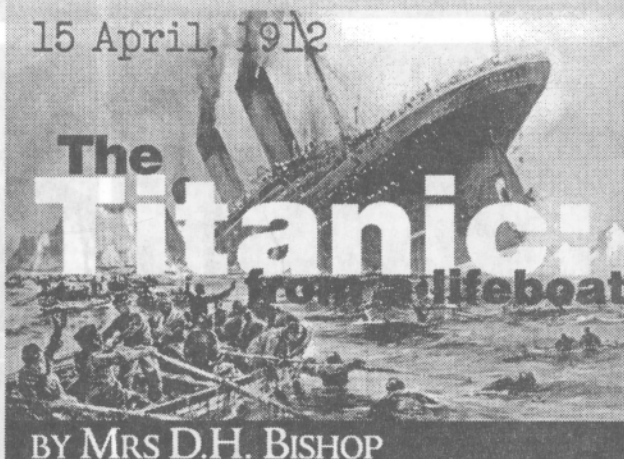
Blériot's monoplane averaged 46 mph and made the crossing in 40 minutes.

In the early morning of Sunday, 25 July 1909, I left my hotel at Calais and drove out to a field where my airplane was garaged. I had ordered the destroyer Escopette, placed at my disposal by the French government, to go to sea. I examined my aeroplane. I started the engine, and found it worked well.

At half past four daylight had come. Four thirty-five. Tout est prêt! In an instant I am in the air, my engine making 1,200 revolutions — almost its highest speed. I begin my flight steady and sure, towards the coast of England. The Escopette has seen me. She is driving ahead across the Channel at full speed. She makes perhaps 26 miles per hour. I am making over 40 mph. Rapidly I overtake her, travelling at a height of 250 feet. The moment is supreme, yet I surprised myself by feeling no exultation. Ten minutes go. I turn my head to see whether I am proceeding in the right direction. I am amazed. There is nothing to be seen — neither the destroyer, nor France, nor England. I am alone. I am lost.

Then I saw the cliffs of Dover! The wind had taken me out of my course. I turned and now I was in difficulties, for the wind here by the cliffs was much stronger, and my speed was reduced as I fought against it. My beautiful aeroplane responded and I found myself over dry land. I attempted to land, but the wind caught me and whirled me round two or three times. At once I stopped my motor, and instantly my machine fell on the ground. I was safe on your shore. Soldiers in khaki ran up, and also a policeman. Two of my compatriots were on the spot. They kissed my cheeks. I was overwhelmed.

I was there...



The 'unsinkable' Titanic had only 1,178 lifeboat spaces for 2,224 people on board. A total of 1,513 lives were lost.

We did not begin to understand the situation till we were perhaps a mile or more away from the Titanic. Then we could see the rows of lights along the decks begin to slant gradually upward from the bow. Very slowly these lines of light began to point downward at a greater and greater angle. The slant seemed to be greater about every quarter of an hour.

In a couple of hours, though, she began to go down more rapidly. Then the fearful sight began. The people in the ship were just beginning to realize how great their danger was. When the forward part of the ship dropped suddenly, there was a sudden rush of passengers on all the decks towards the stern. It was like a wave. We could see the great black mass of people in the steerage sweeping to the rear part of the boat. We could make out the increasing excitement on board as the people, rushing to and fro, caused the deck lights to disappear and reappear as they passed in front of them.

This panic went on for an hour. Then suddenly the ship seemed to shoot up out of the water and stand there perpendicularly. It stood upright in the water for four full minutes, then it began to slide gently downwards. Its speed increased as it went down head first, so that the stern shot down with a rush. The lights continued to burn until it sank. We could see the people packed densely in the stern till it was gone and we could hear their screaming a mile away. Gradually this became fainter and fainter and died away. Some of the lifeboats that had room for more might have gone to their rescue, but it would have meant that those who were in the water would have swarmed aboard and sunk her.

I was there...

21 July, 1969

The first men on the Moon

BY NEIL ARMSTRONG & BUZZ ALDRIN

Apollo 11, carrying Neil Armstrong, Edwin (Buzz) Aldrin and Michael Collins, was launched on 16 July. Five days later they stepped down onto the moon.

NEIL ARMSTRONG

On the way there Of all the spectacular views we had, the most impressive to me was on the way to the Moon when we flew through its shadow. We were still thousands of miles away, but close enough so that the Moon almost filled our circular window. It was illuminated only by earthshine. It made the Moon appear blue-grey, and the entire scene looked decidedly three-dimensional. It seemed almost as if it were showing us its roundness, its similarity in shape to our Earth, in a sort of welcome. I was sure it would be a hospitable host. It had been awaiting its first visitors for a long time.

After touch down The sky is black, you know. It's a very dark sky. But it still seemed more like daylight than darkness as we looked out the window. It's a peculiar thing but the surface looked very warm and inviting. From the cockpit it seemed to be tan. It's hard to account for that, because later when I held the material in my hand, it wasn't tan at all. It was black, grey and so on.

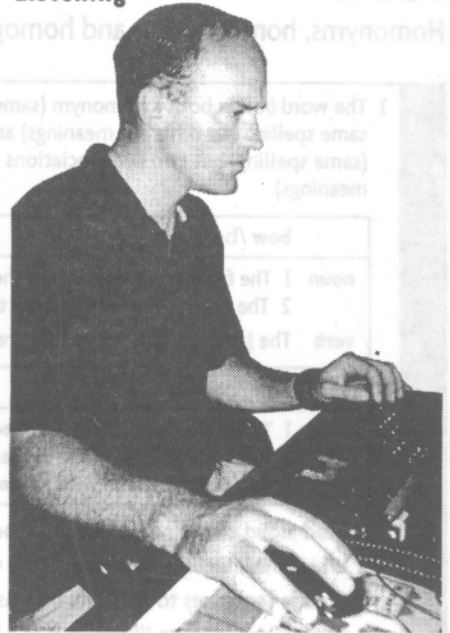
BUZZ ALDRIN

On the Moon The blue colour of my boot has completely disappeared now into this – still don't know what colour to describe this other than greyish-cocoa.

Back on board The Moon was a very natural and pleasant environment in which to work. On the Moon, in one-sixth gravity, you have a distinct feeling of being somewhere. As we deployed our experiments we had to jettison things, some objects we tossed away and they would go in a slow, lazy motion.

Odour is very subjective, but to me there was a distinct smell to the lunar material – pungent, like gunpowder. We carted a fair amount of lunar dust back inside the vehicle, on our suits and boots, and we did notice the odours right away.

Listening



- 7 **T 9.1** Listen to Justin Baines' eyewitness account. Which historical event did he witness? Where was he at the beginning of his story? From where did he watch events unfold?

Describe what he saw in your own words.

Do you remember where you were on that day? How did you hear about what happened? What were the repercussions of this event?

Personal history

- Close your eyes and select an important event in your own life.
- Write brief notes on what, where, and when.
- Discuss its significance with your group. Ask and answer questions.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Homonyms, homophones, and homographs

- 1 The word **bow** is both a homonym (same pronunciation, same spelling but different meanings) and a homograph (same spelling, but two pronunciations with different meanings).

bow /baʊ/	
noun	1 The front of a ship is called the bow . 2 The cast took their bows after the performance.
verb	The Japanese bow when they greet each other.
bow /bɔʊ/	
noun	1 The ribbon made a beautiful bow in her hair. 2 Robin Hood used a bow and arrow to fight. 3 You play the violin with a bow .

- 1 Read aloud all the sentences in the boxes.
2 Which meaning is both a noun and a verb?
3 Choose sentences to illustrate **bow** as a homonym.
4 Choose sentences to illustrate it as a homograph.
- 2 **bow** /baʊ/ is also a homophone. **bough** /baʊ/ has the same pronunciation, a different spelling and a different meaning. What is the meaning?

Homonyms

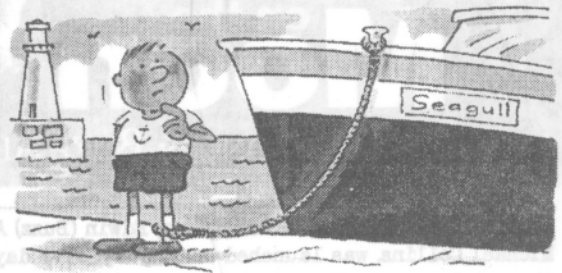
- 1 These sentences all contain words which have homonyms in the texts on pp82–5. Use your dictionary to check meanings and find the homonyms in the texts.
- Our company has branches in New York, Frankfurt, and Singapore.
 - It's time I replaced my battered old trunk with a new suitcase.
 - Don't pine for him, Clarissa. Cheer up! He isn't worth it!
 - We were given a stern warning about the dangers of drink-driving.
 - This deck of cards has both the jokers missing.
- 2 Identify the homonyms in these sentences. Make sentences for the other meanings.
- One swallow doesn't make a summer.
 - We spotted a really rare bird in the forest.
 - Don't go making any rash promises that you can't keep!
 - Lessons were interrupted for a fire drill.
 - I think we should scrap that idea. It's rubbish.
 - Stop rambling and get to the point!

Homophones

- 3 Read these words aloud. Think of a homophone for each one.

wait whirled fort heir site hire caught soar

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct homophone.



- They tied their boat to a small _____ in the harbour. a buoy
b boy
- His _____ remarks upset all those present. a coarse
b course
- Public speaking makes my voice go _____. a horse
b hoarse
- They say it was a _____ gunman that shot the president. a loan
b lone
- The thieves got away with a large _____ of old bank notes. a hall
b haul
- Squirrels _____ nuts in woods and gardens. a berry
b bury
- She lifted her _____ and smiled at her new husband. a vale
b veil
- This is only a _____ contract. You don't have to sign it. a draft
b draught

Homographs

- 5 **T 9.2** Listen and write the homograph you hear in each pair of sentences. What are the different pronunciations?

We're sitting at the back in row 102.

We've had another row about our finances.

- 6 Divide into two groups. Use your dictionaries to find the two pronunciations and the meanings of the words in your box. Make sentences to illustrate the meanings to the other group.

GROUP A

wind refuse defect

GROUP B

wound minute object

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Peace and goodwill

- 1 Many historical events are concerned with war. Which major wars have there been over the last hundred years? What conflicts are in the news at the moment?



- 2 **T 9.3** Listen to an extract from a musical called *Oh, What a Lovely War!*

- 1 Which war is it? Who is fighting who?
- 2 What nicknames do the two sides have for each other?
- 3 Where are they standing?
- 4 What is surprising about this enemy interaction?
- 5 The scene depicts the beginning of the so-called Christmas Truce, which took place on Christmas Eve in the first year of the war. What do you think happened next?

- 3 **T 9.4** Listen to an interview with Graham Williams and Harold Startin, who were on sentry duty that night. Complete the sentences with the exact words you hear.

- 1 ... lights began to appear all along the _____.
- 2 They sang this _____ right through.
- 3 ... when I woke up I found everyone was walking out into _____.
- 4 They were giving us _____ about as big as your arm.
- 5 ... we'd got no _____ against them, they'd got no _____ against us.
- 6 We were the best of _____, although we were there to kill one other.
- 7 They helped us _____ our dead, and we _____ our dead with their dead.
- 8 ... they'd come and help you _____ your defences against them.

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 How is Graham Williams' account similar to the scene in the play?
- 2 In what ways did the two sides communicate at first?
- 3 What is 'no-man's land'?
- 4 In what ways did they show goodwill towards each other?
- 5 How long did the truce last?
- 6 Who was Otto?

What do you think?

- Do you find the story depressing or uplifting? Why?
- How is it possible that enemies become friends in the middle of a war?
- Do you think that commanding officers could become friends in the same way?
- Could such an incident happen in modern warfare? If so, where? If not, why not?

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Verb patterns

1 Complete these common verb patterns from this unit with a verb on the right.

verb + infinitive	The buildings seemed _____ to and fro. We finally decided _____ the town. The lights continued _____ until it sank. I attempted _____ my plane. I placed the earphone to my ear and started _____.	appear burn bury go hate land leave listen make see sing sway
verb + object + infinitive	They had trained us _____ the Germans. I had ordered the destroyer _____ to sea. They helped us _____ our dead. It made the Moon _____ blue-grey.	
verb + preposition + -ing	The Germans joined in _____ with the British. Not speaking German didn't stop him from _____ friends.	
verb + adjective + infinitive	We were terrified _____ everything changed.	

▶▶ Grammar Reference p156

2 Read the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* entry on verb patterns with the verb *agree*. Use it to help you decide which of the sentences below are correct. Correct the others.

agree /ə'grɪ/ verb

SHARE OPINION 1 ~ (with sb) (about/on sth) | ~ (with sth); to have the same opinion as sb; to say that you have the same opinion: [V] When he said that, I had to agree. ◊ He agreed with them about the need for change. ◊ I agree with her analysis of the situation. ◊ 'He's a lousy cook.' 'I couldn't agree more (= I completely agree)!' ◊ [V (that)] We agreed (that) the proposal was a good one. ◊ [V speech] 'That's true', she agreed. **DISAGREE** 2 to be agreed (on/about sth) | be agreed (that ...); if people are agreed or sth is agreed, everyone has the same opinion about sth: [VN] Are we all agreed on this? ◊ [VN (that)] It was agreed (that) we should hold another meeting. **SAY YES** 3 ~ (to sth) to say 'yes'; to say that you will do what sb wants or that you will allow sth to happen **SYN** consent: [V] I asked for a pay rise and she agreed. ◊ Do you think he'll agree to their proposal? ◊ [V (that)] She agreed (that) we could finish early. ◊ [V to inf] He agreed to let me go early.

persuade /pə'sweɪd; AmE pər's-/ verb 1 ~ sb (into sth/into doing sth) to make sb do sth by giving them good reasons for doing it: [VN to inf] Try to persuade him to come. ◊ [VN] Please try and persuade her. ◊ She's always easily persuaded. ◊ I allowed myself to be persuaded into entering the competition. ◊ I'm sure he'll come with a bit of persuading. 2 to make sb believe that sth is true **SYN** convince: [VN that] It will be difficult to persuade them that there's no other choice. ◊ She had persuaded herself that life was not worth living. ◊ [VN] No one was persuaded by his arguments. ◊ (formal) I am still not fully persuaded of the plan's merits.

- 1 He persuaded his mother into lend him the money.
- 2 We were persuaded that it was the best course of action.
- 3 What do I have to do to persuade you that I love you?
- 4 You'll never persuade me of taking up mountaineering.
- 5 Eventually I was persuaded of all their arguments.

- 1 She thinks the war ended in 1918 and I am agree.
- 2 He agreed that they should spend some time apart.
- 3 They agreed on fighting the proposal was a bad idea.
- 4 He agreed to give us more time to finish the project.
- 5 They always agree to each other with the major decisions in life.
- 6 We agree to differ about politics.
- 7 Is this plan agreed with everyone?
- 8 They agreed to me with the time we should start the meeting.



'Rugged romantic seeks elegant lady. Must like hunting and gathering.'

- 4 Choose the verb which completes each sentence correctly. Change the verb patterns to make correct sentences with the other verbs.

1 He	enjoys used is used would rather	to be a soldier.
2 We	are trying have decided are thinking of had better	selling our flat.
3 They	stopped wanted hoped let	us to go.
4 I	am looking forward to happened avoided suggested that he	meet her.
5 Did you	mind see him remind him manage	do it?
6 She	didn't feel like made me couldn't help promised not	to laugh.
7 Why	didn't you dare were you made are you threatening were you forced into	resigning?
8 He	is keen helped me encouraged me can't stand	learn English.



"Society for the preservation of dragons" –
You don't want them to become extinct, do you ?!!"

- 5 T 9.5 Listen and report the conversations using different verb patterns.

- She was delighted _____
He congratulated _____
 - She was concerned _____
He urged _____
 - She was annoyed _____
They offered _____
 - She complained _____
They denied _____
 - She promised _____
He threatened _____
 - She accused _____
He apologized _____
 - He's really scared _____
She advised _____
 - He boasted _____
He challenged _____
- 6 Complete these sentences in your own words, using the correct verb pattern. Compare with a partner.
- I remember _____ when I was young.
 - I'll never forget _____ for the first time.
 - I like _____ when it's raining.
 - I'm thinking of _____ next year.
 - I find it difficult _____
 - I mustn't forget _____
 - I've always tried _____
 - I'm looking forward to _____
 - I try to avoid _____
 - Our teacher always makes us _____

THE LAST WORD

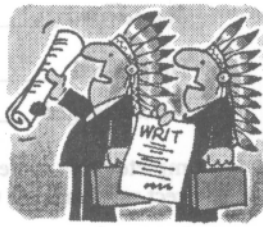
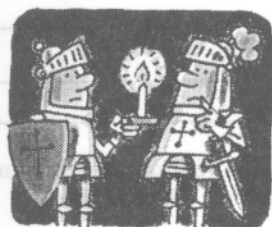
Telling jokes

1 Work with a partner. Match the questions and answers to make jokes.



HISTORY JOKES

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Who invented King Arthur's round table? | a Atlas, he held up the whole world! |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Why were the early days of history called the dark ages? | b Because his career lies in ruins. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Who was the greatest robber in history? | c Because there were so many knights! |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> What did Noah do for a job? | d Genghis Khan't. |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> What did the Sheriff of Nottingham say when Robin Hood fired at him? | e The Cs are. |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> Who was the famous Mongolian who conquered nothing? | f Napoleon Blownapart! |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> Which famous French general stepped on a land mine? | g The Sioux. /su: / |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> What Native American tribe has the most lawyers? | h Sir Cumference! |
| 9 <input type="checkbox"/> Which letters of the alphabet are like a Roman Emperor? | i That was an arrow escape! |
| 10 <input type="checkbox"/> Why is an archaeologist never successful? | j He was an arkitect! |



2 **T 9.6** Listen and check. Each joke depends on a play on words. Explain how. Which jokes rely on homophones and homonyms for their humour?

3 **T 9.7** Notice which words are stressed in the way the jokes are told.

Who invented King Arthur's round table?

I don't know. Who **did** invent King Arthur's round table?

Sir Cumference! D'you get it?

Aaargh! Of course I get it! How corny is that!

Practise telling the jokes and responding with your partner.

4 **T 9.8** Mark the main stresses in B's replies in these conversations. Listen and check.

- A Have you heard the one about the old man and his dog?
B I told you it!
- A I invited Anna but she isn't coming.
B I told you she wouldn't.
- A Peter hasn't told anybody.
B He told me.
- A I hope you didn't tell Clara.
B I didn't tell anyone.
- A Who told Clara?
B I didn't tell her.
- A John won't like it when you tell him.
B If I tell him.
- A It's the worst film I've ever seen.
B Tell me about it!
- A He dumped me.
B I don't want to say 'I told you so'!

Practise them with your partner.

5 Do you know any jokes in English? Tell the class.



10 The body beautiful

Sports • Intensifying adverbs • The body • Cliches

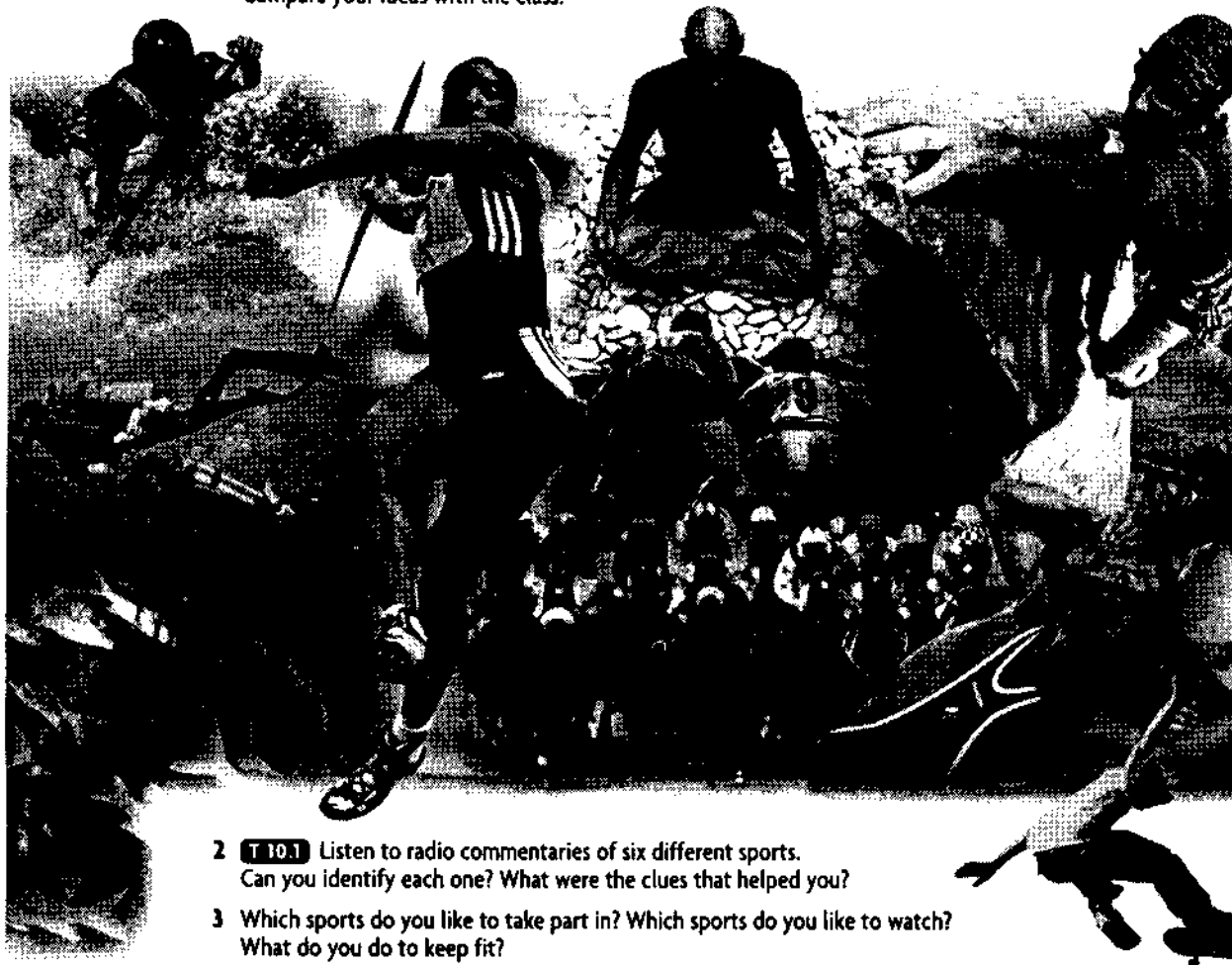
STARTER



- 1 Think of ten sports where you have to compete against an opponent, and ten sporting activities which you can do as an individual.

Competitive	Individual
squash wrestling netball	yoga aerobics skateboarding

Compare your ideas with the class.



- 2 **T 10.1** Listen to radio commentaries of six different sports. Can you identify each one? What were the clues that helped you?
- 3 Which sports do you like to take part in? Which sports do you like to watch? What do you do to keep fit?

READING AND SPEAKING

The age of sport

- 1 What sports are these people renowned for?
Why, do you think?
 - Australians
 - African-Americans
 - Kenyans
 - Brazilians
 - Chinese
 - Russians
- 2 Who is the most highly-paid sportsperson in your country?
In the world?
Is he/she in ... ?
 - motor-racing
 - golf
 - boxing
 - football
 - athletics
 - baseball
- 3 What are the biggest sporting events in your country?
In the world?
- 4 Look at the paragraph headings in the article and make some notes on what the text might be about. Compare your ideas with the class before reading the article.
- 5 Read the article and answer the questions.
 - 1 What is the correlation between sport and strawberries?
 - 2 The first paragraph describes various aspects of the current 'Age of Sport'. What, by implication, were these aspects like before this era?
 - 3 'Sport knew its place.' What does this mean? Why doesn't it know its place any more?
 - 4 How has TV changed sport? Has this change been beneficial or not?
 - 5 Why is the London Marathon mentioned?
 - 6 In what ways are most sports stars like everyone else?
 - 7 What is the correlation between modern sports stars and ancient gladiators?
 - 8 What can sport offer that a rock concert can't?
 - 9 What is special about the Olympics and the World Cup?
 - 10 Why is the besotted fan in a minority?

Vocabulary work

- 6 Work out the meanings of the highlighted words in the article.

What do you think?

- Do you agree that our culture is obsessed by sport?
- Which sporting events are taking place now? Do you think there is too much sport in the world? Too much sport on television?
- 'As individuals become rich, sport becomes impoverished.' Can you think of any examples that support this opinion?
- Who are the sports icons of the moment? Why are they famous?
- Who do you think is more interested in sport, men or women? Why?



Sport used to be like fresh fruit and vegetables. Football had its season, then it ended, and you had to wait a while to get some more. Tennis was an explosion of Wimbledon at the end of June, Flushing Meadow in September and the Australian Open in January, and that was that. Now, just as you can get fresh strawberries all year round, there are major championships for every sport taking place somewhere in the world all of the time.

Sport is everywhere

Sport is ubiquitous. Sky TV has at least thirteen sports channels. Throughout the world there is a proliferation of newspapers and magazines totally dedicated to sport. Sports personalities have become cultural icons, worshipped like movie-stars and sought after by sponsors and advertisers alike. Where sport was once for fun and amateurs, it is now the stuff of serious investment.

Of course, sport has always mattered. But the point is that in the past sport knew its place. Now it invades areas of life where previously it had no presence: fashion, showbiz, business. It is a worldwide obsession.

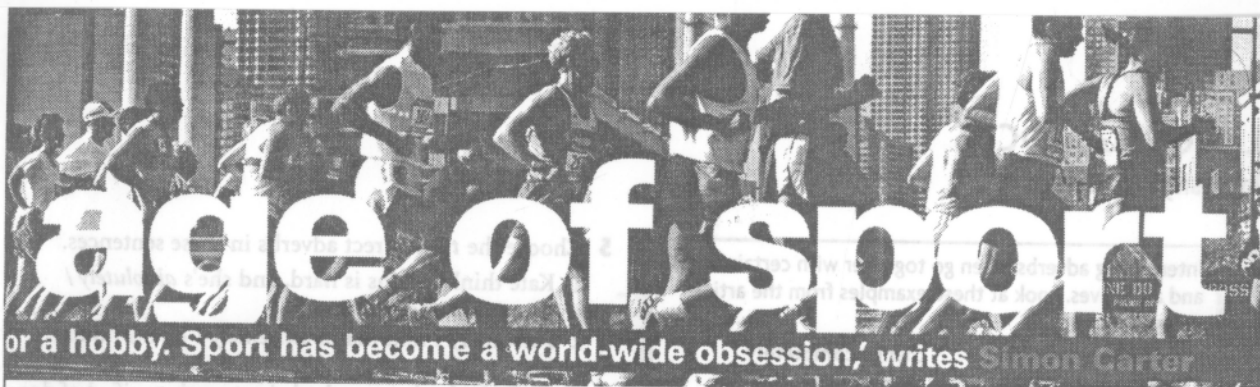
Why this obsession with sport?

What is it that makes sport so enjoyable for so many?

First, we seriously believe that sport is something we can all do, however badly or however well. Tens of thousands set off on the London and New York Marathons. Amateur football matches take place all over the world every weekend. Sport is a democratic activity.

Second, sports stars are self-made people. Sport is dominated by athletes from ordinary backgrounds. This is why it is a classic means by which those from the poorest backgrounds can seek fame and fortune.

Third, we enjoy watching sport because we like to see the supreme skill of those who act like gladiators in



or a hobby. Sport has become a world-wide obsession,' writes Simon Carter

the modern arena. There is the excitement of not knowing who is going to win. No rock concert, no movie, no play can offer that kind of spontaneous uncertainty. This gut-wrenching experience can be shared with a crowd of fifty round a widescreen TV in a pub, or a thronging mass of 100,000 live in a stadium.

The role of television

Television has been absolutely crucial to the growing obsession with sport. It gives increased numbers of people access to sporting events around the globe. With this, certain sports have accumulated untold riches via advertising, sponsorship and fees. Television changes sport completely, nearly always for the worse. We are saturated with football nearly every night of the week with the same top clubs playing each other again and again. TV companies dictate tennis players' schedules. The most important matches must take place at a time when most people are at home, even if this is late at night. Only in this way are the highest advertising fees commanded.

Sport as big business

The growing importance of sport is reflected in the money that surrounds it. Sky TV's sports channels are worth over £8bn. Manchester United football club is a public limited company worth around £1bn. It has even formed a superclub with baseball's New York Yankees, so that they can package themselves collectively.

The rise of sport has been accompanied by the growing prominence of sports stars. They have become public figures hence in great demand for TV

commercial. For advertisers, they convey glamour, success, credibility and authenticity. The rise of the sports star is mirrored by the rise of sports companies such as Nike and Adidas. Along with pop music, the Internet, and multinational companies, sport is one of the key agents of globalization.

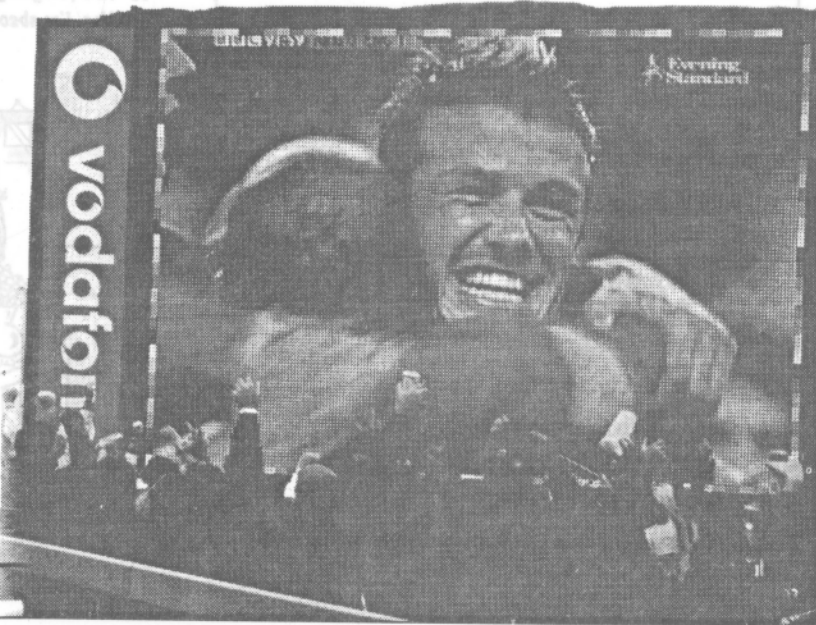
Sport the global unifier

'Sport probably does more to unify nations than any politician has ever been capable of.' So said Nelson Mandela. The only truly global occasions are the Olympics and the World Cup, watched by thousands of millions across the world. These great sporting events bring together players and athletes from different races like no other. Not only that, but sport provides just about the only example of global democracy

where the rich do not dominate: on the contrary, Brazilians have long been supreme at football, the Kenyans at middle-distance running, and black Americans at boxing.

The ultimate risk

However, there are signs of disquiet in this vast, global industry. The sheer volume of sport is reaching bursting point for all but the most besotted fan. In football, the president of FIFA has suggested staging the World Cup every two years instead of four, and overpaid tennis players and golfers fly endlessly in personal jets from one meaningless tournament to the next. Sport risks killing itself through greed and over-exposure. The danger is that we will all become satiated and ultimately disillusioned.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

Intensifying adverbs

Intensifying adverbs often go together with certain verbs and adjectives. Look at these examples from the article on pp92-3.

totally dedicated
seriously believe

change completely
absolutely crucial

▶▶ Grammar Reference p157

1 Choose the *two* correct adverbs in these sentences.

- I *totally / perfectly / quite* agree with you.
- She *totally / quite / strongly* disagrees with me.
- Some people *sincerely / seriously / entirely* believe there's life in space.
- I *perfectly / strongly / completely* understand what you're trying to say.
- I *totally / really / quite* like spicy food.

2 Choose the *one* correct adverb in these sentences.

- I *absolutely / completely / sincerely* adore ice-cream.
- I *perfectly / strongly / totally* forgot about her birthday.
- What you believe depends *entirely / seriously / sincerely* on your point of view.
- I *really / quite / completely* can't stand getting up in the morning.
- I have *absolutely / entirely / thoroughly* enjoyed the evening with you.

3 Match a gradable adjective with an extreme adjective.

Gradable adjective	Extreme adjective
stupid	delightful
expensive	brilliant
pleasant	exorbitant
unusual	devastated
upset	extraordinary
clever	ridiculous

With which group or groups of adjectives can we use these intensifying adverbs?

very absolutely really quite

T 10.2 Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

4 T 10.3 Listen to the sentences. When does *quite* mean ...?

- up to the top with an extreme adjective
- up a bit with a gradable adjective
- down a bit with a gradable adjective

Practise the sentences, paying attention to stress and intonation.

5 Choose the *two* correct adverbs in these sentences.

- Kate thinks maths is hard, and she's *absolutely / very / quite* right.
- Personally I find maths *extremely / totally / quite* impossible.
- She's *absolutely / completely / extremely* terrified of dogs.
- I was *absolutely / very / terribly* pleased to hear you're getting married.
- I'm sure you'll be *totally / extremely / really* happy together.

T 10.4 Listen and check. Practise the sentences, paying attention to stress and intonation.

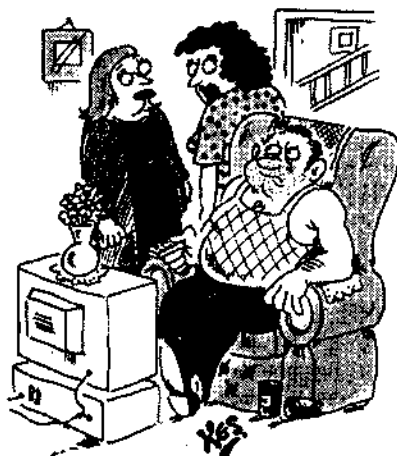
6 Choose the *one* correct adverb in these sentences.

- This wine is *absolutely / totally / rather* pleasant. You must try it.
- I'm *absolutely / terribly / very* determined to lose weight.
- The film was *totally / utterly / quite* interesting. You should see it.
- The restaurant was *quite / utterly / absolutely* nice, but I wouldn't recommend it.
- If you ask her, I'm *terribly / pretty / completely* sure she'll say yes.

T 10.5 Listen and check. Practise the sentences, paying attention to stress and intonation.

7 Work with a partner. Write questions to prompt responses which use some of the adverb collocations you have practised. Ask and answer questions with another partner.

- A Are you going to take the exams?
B Yes, I'm *absolutely* determined to pass.



'He's not *totally* lacking in ambition.
He dreams of one day owning a bigger TV set.'

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Words to do with the body

- 1 Label the numbered parts of the body, using the words in the box. The numbers in black boxes are inside the body.

ankle	earlobe	jaw	neck	throat
armpit	eyebrow	knee	rib	thumb
bone	forehead	kidney	shin	toe
brain	groin	knuckle	shoulder	vein
calf	heart	lip	spine	waist
cheek	heel	liver	stomach	wrist
chest	hip	lung	temple	
chin	intestines	muscle	thigh	

What other body parts can you name?

- 2 Complete the sentences with a part of the body used as a verb in the correct form.

- In the final seconds of the match, Martin _____ the ball into the back of the net.
- After his father's death, Tom had to _____ the responsibility for the family business.
- When a couple gets married, it's usually the bride's family who _____ the bill.
- The boys stood on one side of the room, _____ up the girls on the other side.
- You've got to _____ facts, Jack. You're in debt, and you have no income.
- Old ladies are the worst people in queues. They just _____ everyone else out of the way.
- I ran out of petrol, so I had to _____ a lift to the nearest petrol station.
- Maria, could you help me by _____ out these books to the other students?
- My friend Pat loves _____ around other people's houses, looking in cupboards and reading their letters.
- When a mugger tried to attack Jane, she _____ him in the groin and left him collapsed on the ground.

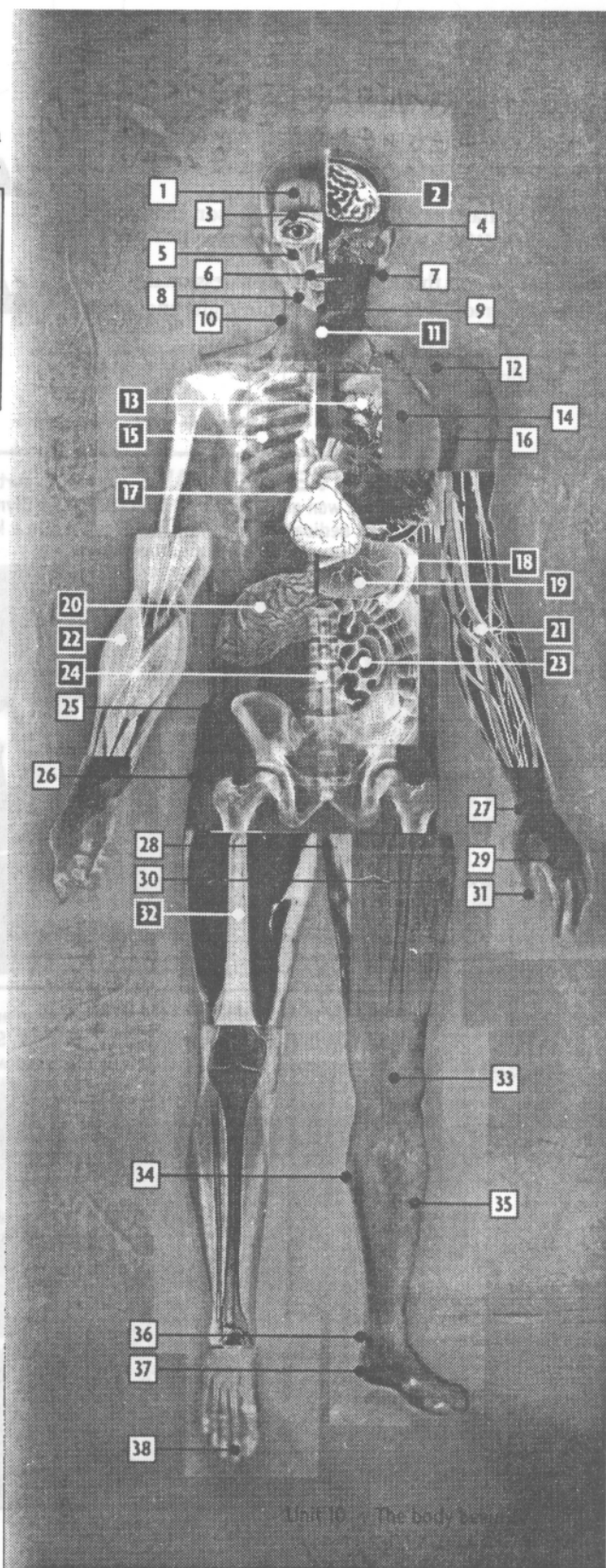
- 3 What part of your body do you use to do these things?

tickle	stroke	nudge	thump	sniff	slap	munch
smack	pinch	squeeze	grin	rub	clap	pat
hug	frisk	shove	spit	wink	scratch	

Why might you do these things?

You tickle someone to make them laugh.

- 4 Close your books and work with a partner. Take turns to mime a verb for your partner to guess.



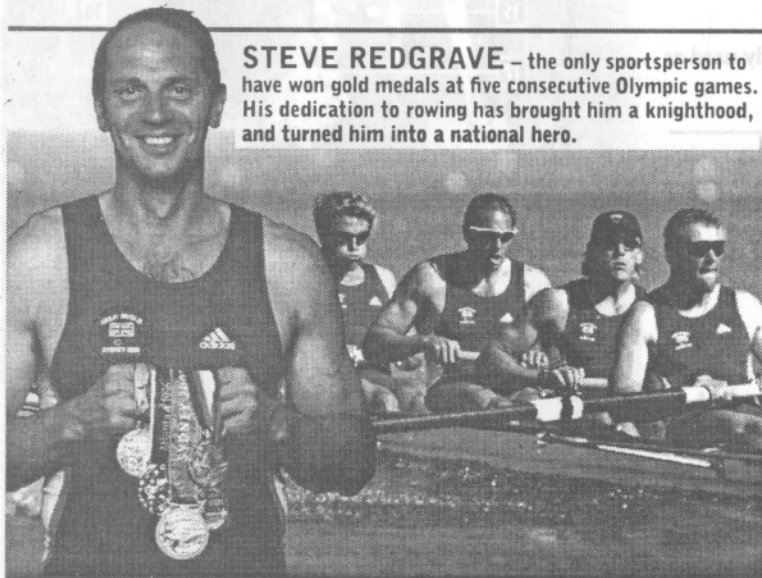
Unit 10 The body beautiful

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

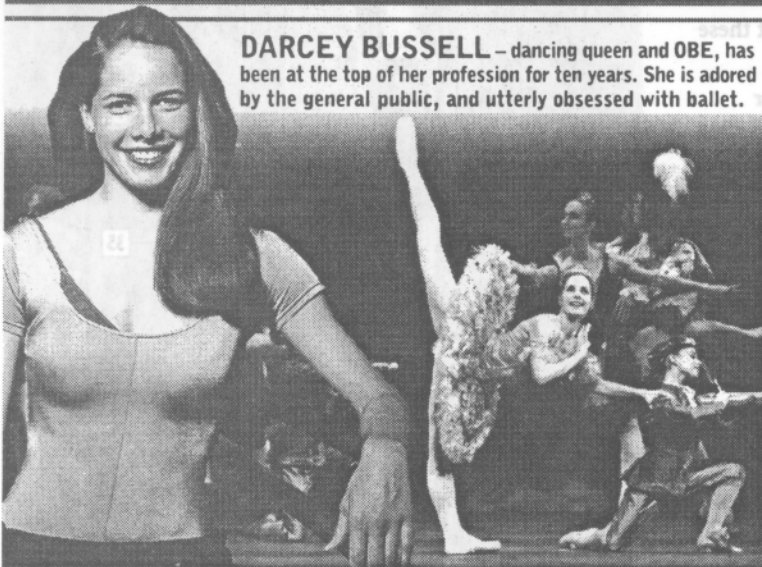
Sporting heroes and heroines

The rower and the ballet dancer

- 1 Do you have a particular sports person that you admire? Who? Why? Discuss as a class.
- 2 What do you think the life of a professional sportsperson is like? What are the highs and lows?
- 3 Look at the photos and read the quotations on the right. Who do you think says what?



STEVE REDGRAVE – the only sportsperson to have won gold medals at five consecutive Olympic games. His dedication to rowing has brought him a knighthood, and turned him into a national hero.



DARCEY BUSSELL – dancing queen and OBE, has been at the top of her profession for ten years. She is adored by the general public, and utterly obsessed with ballet.

- “ When you get tired, you can't slow the pace. You have to go through the pain barrier. You can't stop. ”
- “ Of course the worst thing that happens to you is your feet. I haven't had toenails for years. ”

4 Work in two groups.

Group A **T 10.6** Listen to Mick and Jez talking about Steve Redgrave, the Olympic rower.

Group B **T 10.7** Listen to Adelhaide and Kate talking about Darcey Bussell, the ballerina.

Answer the questions.

- 1 Why are the speakers interested in Steve/Darcey?
- 2 What have been the best moments of Darcey's/Steve's career?
- 3 What health problems has he/she had?
- 4 What is her/his training programme?
- 5 What does his/her diet consist of?
- 6 How does she feel during a performance? How does he feel during a race?
- 7 What sacrifices has he/she had to make?
- 8 Who are the significant people in her/his life?
- 9 What are his/her ambitions for the future?
- 10 What kind of a relationship do the two speakers have? What do you learn about them?

5 Work with a partner from the other group. Compare and exchange information.

What do you think?

- 1 Whose training programme is harder, Darcey Bussell's or Steve Redgrave's? Who has suffered more?
- 2 What sort of person do you have to be to succeed in sport? Why do you think they do it?
- 3 Do you know any examples of sports people burning out? What were the pressures on them?

SPEAKING

How healthy and fit are you?

- 1 'If you're fit, you don't need to exercise. If you aren't fit, exercise is dangerous.' Do you agree with this logic or not? How can you injure yourself taking exercise?
- 2 Work with a partner and ask each other the questions in the quiz. Work out and compare your scores, and decide on your priorities for action.

What do you think?

- How effective and useful are these quizzes?
- Will you pay attention to the results and alter your lifestyle?



'My doctor wants me to walk a mile after every meal but, frankly, ten miles a day is killing me.'

HEALTH & FITNESS QUIZ

How healthy & fit are you? How healthy & fit could you be?

How true are these statements for you?

☐ Always ☐ Often ☐ Sometimes ☐ Rarely ☐ Never

- 1 I start the day with a sensible breakfast. ☐
- 2 I tend to have 4 or 5 smaller meals a day. ☐
- 3 On an average day, my diet would include 5 portions of fruit and vegetables. ☐
- 4 Less than 30% of my daily calorific intake is fat. ☐
- 5 I regularly take food supplements of vitamins and minerals. ☐
- 6 Fried foods don't feature in my diet. ☐
- 7 I don't eat red meat. ☐
- 8 I make sure I drink 6-8 glasses of water a day. ☐
- 9 My sugar consumption is generally low. ☐
- 10 I don't have more than 2 alcoholic drinks (for men, 1 for women) a day. ☐
- 11 I exercise aerobically at least 3 times a week. ☐
- 12 I work out with weights or exercise machines twice a week. ☐
- 13 As well as a proper lunch break, I take a couple of breaks during the working day. ☐
- 14 I get about 7-8 hours of sleep a night. ☐
- 15 I actively cultivate relationships and interests outside of work. ☐
- 16 I probably break into laughter about 20 times a day. ☐
- 17 I allow myself adequate time off for holidays. ☐
- 18 I meditate, pray, or practise some form of relaxation technique daily. ☐
- 19 I feel in charge of my health and take full responsibility for it. ☐
- 20 I generally have a positive mental attitude. ☐

Check your answers to each question. To score your profile, add up the numbers.

My total score is:

If your total score is:

- 100-80** you have **excellent** health habits (great job, keep up the good work!)
- 79-70** you have **good** health habits (good, but let's work on it a little)
- 69-60** you need **special** attention (let's go to work on it now)
- 59-0** is a **red alert!** (do something about it now!)

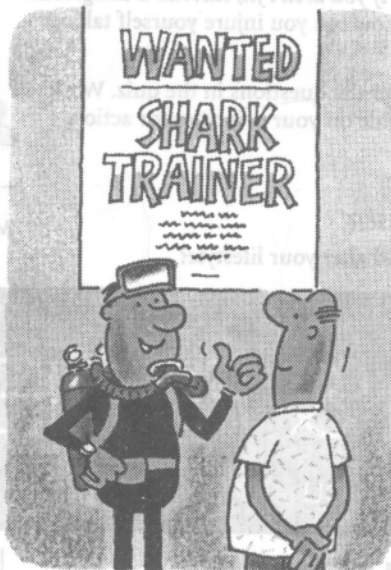
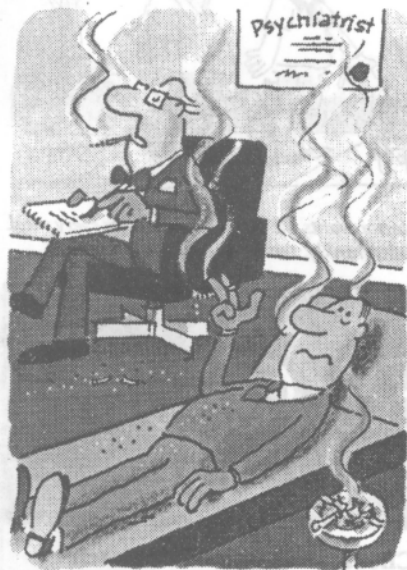
Decide on your top three priorities for action from your lowest scores in the quiz:

- 1
- 2
- 3

THE LAST WORD

Clichés

- 1 **T 10.8** A cliché is a phrase which has been used so often that it has lost much of its force.
Read and listen to the conversations and identify the clichés. What do they mean?



- 1 **A** You should get a new job, stop smoking, and have a healthier lifestyle.
B Easier said than done.

- 2 **A** I don't know whether to apply for that job or not. What do you think?
B Well, I'm not sure. At the end of the day, it's your decision.

- 3 **A** Jamie and I are off out for the evening.
B Have a great time! Don't do anything I wouldn't do.

- 2 Match a line in **A** with a line in **B**. Where are the clichés? What do they mean?

A	B
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Mum! Tommy's broken the vase! 2 I just need to go back in the house and make sure I've turned off the iron. 3 It's been raining non-stop for weeks! Do we need some sunshine! 4 Work's awful at the moment, and I have to go away on business this weekend! 5 I got a card from Jerry a week after my birthday. 6 We're having a complete break for a fortnight. 7 Took me ten years to build up my business. Nearly killed me. 8 Larry's failed his exams, Amy's got chicken pox. Whatever next? 9 They've got ten kids. Goodness knows what their house is like. 10 Bob's a weird bloke. Have you heard he's going to walk across Europe? 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a Oh, well. A change is as good as a rest. b Never mind. Accidents will happen. c Well, you know what they say. No pain, no gain. d Good idea. Better safe than sorry. e Oh dear! They say these things come in threes, you know. f You can say that again. g It takes all sorts. h The mind boggles. It doesn't bear thinking about. i Oh, well. Better late than never. j Sounds like just what the doctor ordered.

- T 10.9** Listen and check. Do you have any similar clichés in your language?

- 3 **T 10.10** Listen and respond to the statements, using a suitable cliché.



11

The ends of the earth

Relatives and participles • Compound nouns and adjectives • Idiomatic expressions

STARTER

1 Work in groups and answer the questions.



EARTH QUIZ

- 1 How old is the earth?
a 4.6 billion years
b 6.7 billion years
c 10.5 billion years
- 2 The earth is considered to have a maximum of seven continents. What are they?
- 3 How many countries are there in the world?
a 123 b 146 c 193
- 4 Which continent has the most countries?
- 5 What is the population of the world?
a 4.1 billion people
b 5.1 billion people
c 6.1 billion people
- 6 Which country has the largest population?
- 7 What proportion of the earth is covered by water?
a 61% b 71% c 81%
- 8 How many oceans are there? What are they?
- 9 How much of the earth's land surface is used to grow food?
a 11% b 16% c 21%
- 10 Where is the world's largest desert? What is it called?
- 11 What's the difference between a political and a physical map?
- 12 Which is the world's largest island?
a Greenland
b Iceland
c Madagascar

2 **T 11.1** Listen and check. What extra information do you learn about each?

3 Read these 'howlers' (funny mistakes) from some students' geography exams. Explain them.

1 The chief animals of Australia are the kangaroo and the boomerang.

4 The Mediterranean and the Red Sea are connected by the Sewage Canal.

2 Floods from the Mississippi may be prevented by putting big dames in the river.

5 The Pyramids are a range of mountains between France and Spain.

3 The inhabitants of Moscow are called Mosquitoes.

6 In the West, farming is done mostly by irritating the land.

READING AND SPEAKING

Three island stories



- 1 Did you know that one in ten people in the world live on an island? Which islands have you visited? When? What were they like?
- 2 Match the photos above to the islands of **Greenland, Tristan da Cunha, and Zanzibar**. Which island do you know most/least about? Compare ideas with the class.

- 3 Work in groups of three.

Student A Read about Greenland on p101.

Student B Read about Tristan da Cunha on p102.

Student C Read about Zanzibar on p103.

As you read, underline at least three things that you find interesting or surprising. Tell your group about them.

Language work

5 Geographical expressions

Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. Which island is being referred to in each sentence?

- 1 It is situated _____ the South Atlantic, 2,800 km _____ the nearest mainland and south _____ the island of St Helena.
- 2 Temperatures range _____ 0°C _____ 15°C in summer.
- 3 Its landscape is made _____ grey granite rock.
- 4 It lies just _____ the coast of East Africa.
- 5 It is equal _____ size _____ half of Western Europe.
- 6 If all this ice were to melt the world's oceans might rise _____ six _____ seven metres.
- 7 He didn't settle _____ the island but, nevertheless, he named it _____ himself.
- 8 The history of the island is _____ all proportion _____ its size.
- 9 It is divided _____ three areas.
- 10 It is an island burgeoning _____ spices and subject _____ favourable trade winds.
- 11 The population now numbers just _____ 300.
- 12 The population is estimated _____ 800,000.
- 13 It lacks the abundance _____ wildlife found _____ the mainland.

What do you think?

- Which of these islands would you like to visit? Which not? Why?
- People often dream of living on a desert island. Decide in your groups what kind of island the three of you would most like to inhabit. What climate would you want? What would you want the island to provide? What and who would you like to take with you?

Discuss these questions in your groups.

- 11 In what ways does the location influence life on the islands?
- 12 In what ways has its history influenced present island life?

1

GREENLAND

The largest island in the world



Geography

Greenland is the largest island in the world, measuring 2,670 km from north to south, but with a population of only about 56,000, one-quarter of which lives in the capital, Nuuk. It lies just south of the Arctic Circle, so its summer temperatures range from just 0°C to 15°C. Eighty-five percent of its 2,175,600 km² area is covered with a massive ice cap, which holds 9% of the world's fresh water. If all this ice were to melt, the world's oceans would rise by six to seven metres. Despite its name, Greenland is anything but green. Its bare haunting landscape is made up of grey granite rock and massive icebergs, with only tiny pockets of greenery.



History

The Inuit people (previously known as Eskimos) were the first people of this island. Then, around 980 AD, Eric the Red, a bloodthirsty Norwegian Viking, fled to the island and founded a colony. Despite the desolate greyness, Eric cunningly named the island 'Greenland', so as to attract settlers. His trick worked and the colony grew but then died out suddenly and mysteriously in the 1400s. In 1721, the Danish established a settlement there, and ruled for over 200 years, until 1979, when Greenland was declared an autonomous nation within the Kingdom of Denmark.

Greenland today

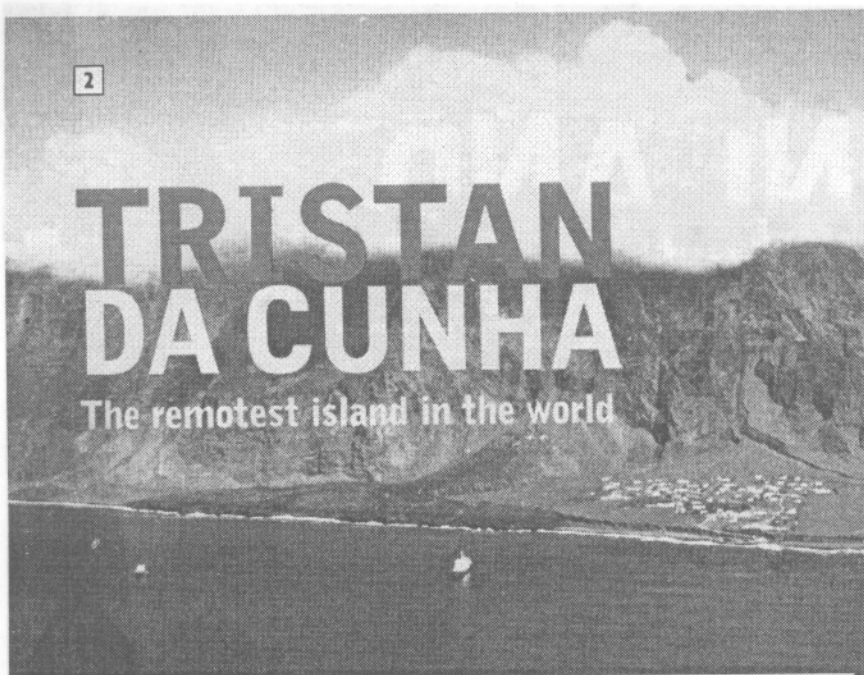
Regional boundaries divide the country into three areas: North, East, and West Greenland. East Greenland, known as Tunu, is the most isolated, blocked by ice for 9 months out of 12. Only 4,000 people live here, despite it being equal in size to half of Western Europe. In the harbour there are corpses of hunted seals, sunk in the cold water which acts as a natural refrigerator. The presence of polar bears is always a possibility. These dangerous, man-eating creatures are feared but also loved as the embodiment of the human spirit in a harsh land.

This is also the region of the semi-permafrost. Tombs are shallow and the dead are often stored for months before being buried in warmer months, when the soil can be dug. There are serious social problems, such as alcoholism and suicides, as a result of unemployment and seasonal depression. The latter is a common syndrome in places where winter lasts more than half the year, where there is no light at all.

Nowadays Greenlandic, or East Inuit language, has become the first language, and Danish the second. The Civil Service is largely Greenlandic as well and there are more Inuit signs than Danish ones. However, like most small remote nations, economic independence is non-existent. Most of the national budget is funded by Denmark. Everything in the supermarket is Danish. Job prospects remain poor and most services, from air transport to seal hunting, are subsidised by the Danish taxpayer.

TRISTAN DA CUNHA

The remotest island in the world



Geography

Tristan da Cunha is the remotest island in the world. Situated in the South Atlantic, it is 2,800 km from the nearest mainland, South Africa, and 2,575 km south of the island of St Helena. The island is roughly circular with an average diameter of 10 km. It rises out of the ocean, its volcanic peak crowned with an almost permanent cap of white cloud, and its 40 km of wild, storm-tossed coastline comprising magnificent, massive basalt cliffs. The surrounding seas are rich in fish, providing Tristan da Cunha with its main export.

History

The island was discovered in 1506 by a Portuguese explorer, Tristao da Cunha, who, despite being unable to land there, named the island after himself. The first actual settler was an American, Captain Jonathan Lambert, in 1811. Unfortunately he drowned a year later.

In 1816, the British annexed the island as a defence against the French, who, it was thought, were planning to rescue Napoleon from exile on the island of St Helena.

The British left, leaving the founder of the present community – a Scot, Corporal William Glass, who settled on the island with his family, two companions, and a mulatto woman from St Helena, making

a total of six inhabitants. The community comprised still no more than eleven thatched cottages when, in 1867, Alfred, Duke of Edinburgh and second son of Queen Victoria, visited the island and gave his name to the capital, which is called the Edinburgh of the South Seas. Throughout the nineteenth century the population slowly increased but Tristan da Cunha passed into obscurity. Then, in October 1961 a dramatic volcanic eruption forced the evacuation of the entire island. Its people were taken to what was glibly referred to as 'civilization' in South Africa and England. By August 1962 the eruptions had died down and in November 1963 the islanders chose to return home.



Tristan today

To visit Tristan da Cunha is to visit another world, another life, another time. The settlement of Edinburgh has a distinct air of yesteryear about it, although it has all modern conveniences. There is a small museum, a large supermarket, a swimming pool, and a radio station but no television.

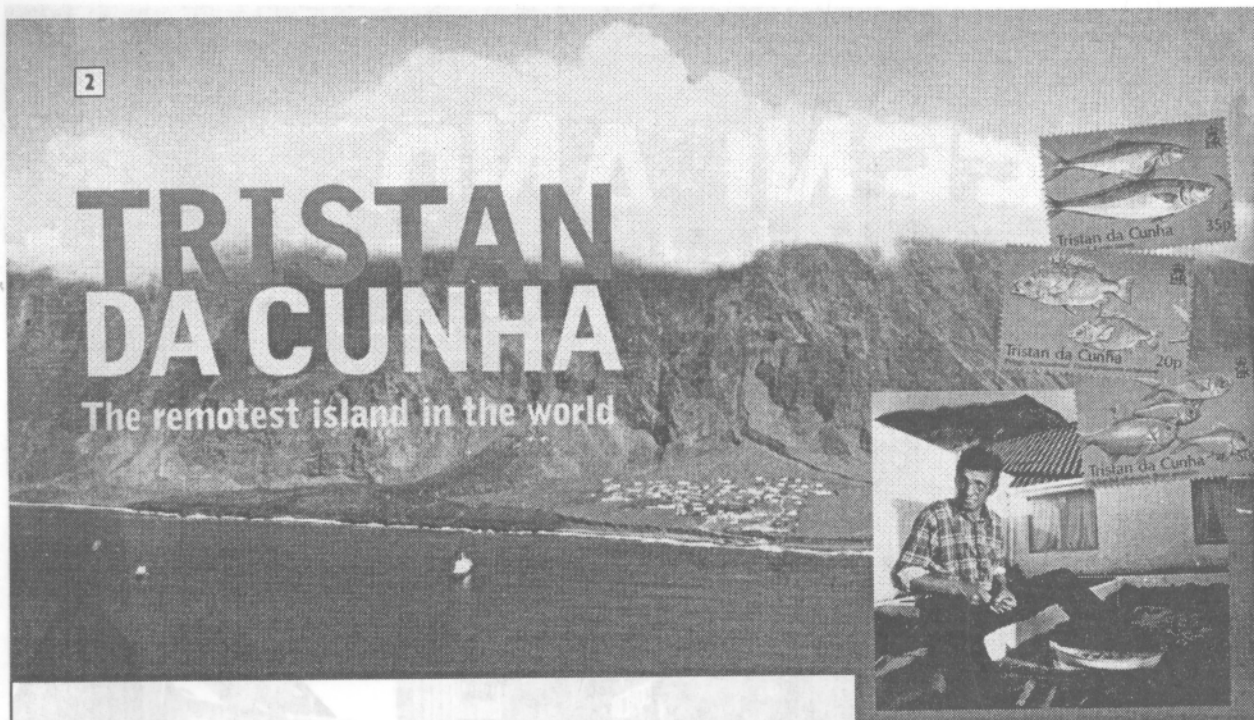
The population now numbers just under 300 – a proud and hospitable people with only seven surnames between them: Hagan, Rogers, Glass, Lavarello, Swain, Green, and Repetto. Through their veins flows the blood of English sailors from Nelson's fleet, Americans, Italians, two Irish girls, Dutch, and mulattos from St Helena and South Africa. English is the native tongue, albeit a slightly strange, old-fashioned dialect, laced with a few early Americanisms.

The island is self-supporting with a thriving economy. Income tax is low (although imported goods are very expensive). Serious crime is unknown, unemployment is virtually non-existent.

As well as the fishing industry, a main source of income on the island is the sale of postage stamps, which are prized by philatelists worldwide.

TRISTAN DA CUNHA

The remotest island in the world



Geography

Tristan da Cunha is the remotest island in the world. Situated in the South Atlantic, it is 2,800 km from the nearest mainland, South Africa, and 2,575 km south of the island of St Helena. The island is roughly circular with an average diameter of 10 km. It rises out of the ocean, its volcanic peak crowned with an almost permanent cap of white cloud, and its 40 km of wild, storm-tossed coastline comprising magnificent, massive basalt cliffs. The surrounding seas are rich in fish, providing Tristan da Cunha with its main export.

History

The island was discovered in 1506 by a Portuguese explorer, Tristao da Cunha, who, despite being unable to land there, named the island after himself. The first actual settler was an American, Captain Jonathan Lambert, in 1811. Unfortunately he drowned a year later.

In 1816, the British annexed the island as a defence against the French, who, it was thought, were planning to rescue Napoleon from exile on the island of St Helena.

The British left, leaving the founder of the present community — a Scot, Corporal William Glass, who settled on the island with his family, two companions, and a mulatto woman from St Helena, making

a total of six inhabitants. The community comprised still no more than eleven thatched cottages when, in 1867, Alfred, Duke of Edinburgh and second son of Queen Victoria, visited the island and gave his name to the capital, which is called the Edinburgh of the South Seas. Throughout the nineteenth century the population slowly increased but Tristan da Cunha passed into obscurity. Then, in October 1961 a dramatic volcanic eruption forced the evacuation of the entire island. Its people were taken to what was glibly referred to as 'civilization' in South Africa and England. By August 1962 the eruptions had died down and in November 1963 the islanders chose to return home.



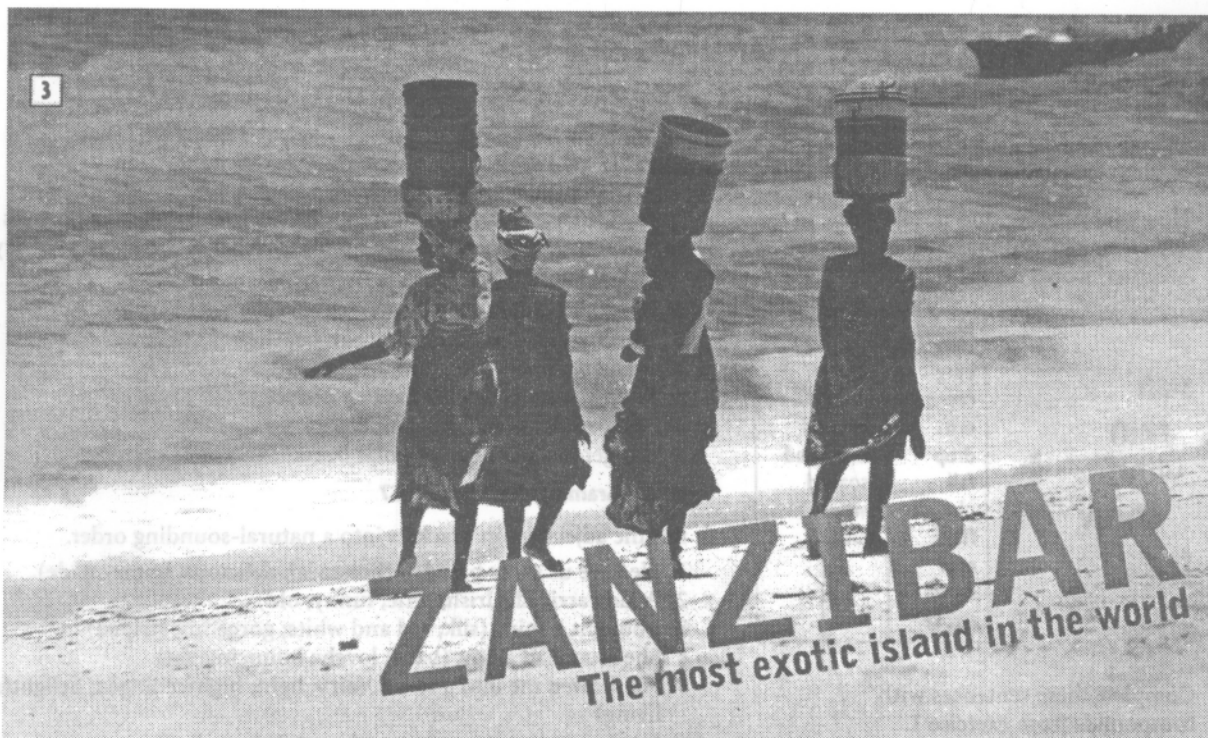
Tristan today

To visit Tristan da Cunha is to visit another world, another life, another time. The settlement of Edinburgh has a distinct air of yesteryear about it, although it has all modern conveniences. There is a small museum, a large supermarket, a swimming pool, and a radio station but no television.

The population now numbers just under 300 — a proud and hospitable people with only seven surnames between them: Hagan, Rogers, Glass, Lavarello, Swain, Green, and Repetto. Through their veins flows the blood of English sailors from Nelson's fleet, Americans, Italians, two Irish girls, Dutch, and mulattos from St Helena and South Africa. English is the native tongue, albeit a slightly strange, old-fashioned dialect, laced with a few early Americanisms.

The island is self-supporting with a thriving economy. Income tax is low (although imported goods are very expensive). Serious crime is unknown, unemployment is virtually non-existent.

As well as the fishing industry, a main source of income on the island is the sale of postage stamps, which are prized by philatelists worldwide.



Geography

A large proportion of the world's population have heard of Zanzibar. The name conjures up all sorts of exotic images: sultans, slaves, spices, ebony, ivory, gold, and explorers – words that start to tell the story of Zanzibar. However, only a small proportion of the world's population know exactly where Zanzibar is. It is located in the Indian Ocean, just off the Tanzanian coast of East Africa, immediately south of the equator. Zanzibar Island is 83 km long and 38 km wide with magnificent, golden, sandy beaches fringed by coconut palms and coral reefs. Zanzibar lacks the abundance of wildlife that is found on mainland Africa. No giraffes, elephants, or lions here today, just a few monkeys and small antelopes. However, in 1295, when visiting the island, Marco Polo recorded that Zanzibar had 'elephants in plenty'.



History

The history of Zanzibar is one out of all proportion to its size. It was the richest place in Africa for centuries, an island burgeoning with spices and subject to such favourable winds that it has served as the centre of trade between Africa, Arabia, and India for over five thousand years. The islands have always been highly prized by empire builders: Egyptians, Arabs, Portuguese, Chinese, Dutch, and British have all taken possession, valuing it not only for its strategic trading position, but also because of its fertile soils and temperate climate. Zanzibar used to be the world's largest producer of cloves, grown on plantations, established in the early 1800s by Sultan Said of Oman.

In 1964, the islands joined with the country of Tanganyika on the East African mainland, to become the United

Republic of Tanzania. 'Zanzibar' forms half the name of 'Tanzania.'

Zanzibar today

The population is estimated at about 800,000, an incredible mixture of ethnic backgrounds, indicative of the island's colourful history. Zanzibaris speak Swahili, a language which is spoken extensively in East Africa. Many believe that the purest form is spoken in Zanzibar as it is the birthplace of the language. Fishing and agriculture are the main economic activities of the local people. Although cloves are still a major export along with coconut products and spices, tourism has been earmarked as the primary foreign exchange earner, with more visitors coming to Zanzibar each year. Some of these come to visit the birth place of the late Freddie Mercury, lead singer of the band Queen, who was born Farouk Bulsara in Zanzibar City on 5 September 1946. However, the numbers of tourists are still relatively low (less than 100,000 annually) and the potential for tourism is still largely untapped. The island is trying hard to develop sensitive tourism that benefits both visitors and community, without losing the magic that is Zanzibar.

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Compound nouns and adjectives

Weather words

- 1 How many compound nouns and adjectives can you make using the 'weather' words on the left?

sun
rain
wind
snow
ice

+

Nouns	Adjectives
berg	-blown
cap	burnt
drift	-capped
drop	-drenched
fall	-soaked
plough	swept
flake	tanned
roof	
storm	
stroke	

- 2 Complete these sentences with compounds from exercise 1.

- The annual _____ in London is 610 mm.
- My sister stayed out in the sun for too long and she was ill for two days with _____.
- One winter's night there was a terrible _____. In the morning the _____ were so deep that even the _____ couldn't get through to our village.
- I'd love a convertible on warm days like these. My car doesn't even have a _____.
- The *Titanic* sank because it hit a huge _____.
- Did you know that Kilimanjaro is a _____ mountain even though it's on the Equator?
- After a hot day's sailing my face was _____ and my hair was _____.
- Did you know that the pattern of every single tiny _____ is different?
- I love the sight of _____ on rose petals after a shower.
- I love both the hot _____ beaches of the Caribbean and the wet _____ hills of Scotland for my holidays.

Adjective order

- 3 Look at these examples of adjectives before nouns. Which adjectives are more factual? Which are more opinion? What is their position? Try to work out some rules.

- Beautiful, old, thatched cottages
- Glorious, golden Mediterranean beaches
- Amazing, huge, grey, granite rocks
- Strange, old-fashioned English dialect
- Wild, storm-tossed Atlantic coast
- Dangerous, man-eating polar bears

▶▶ Grammar Reference p157

- 4 Put the adjectives in brackets into a natural-sounding order.

- He gave us some bread. (wholemeal; delicious; home-made)
- A lady arrived. (Irish; little; funny; old)
- I bought a shirt. (silk; red and white; gorgeous; striped)
- She's just had a boy. (baby; lovely; bouncing; fat)
- He showed me into a room. (airy; light; high-ceilinged; delightful; living)
- I met a student. (young; trendy; art; Venezuelan)
- She's wearing trousers. (leather; black; shiny; tight-fitting)
- It's a rose. (sweet-smelling; exquisite; apricot-coloured)

- 5 Add some extra information for each sentence in exercise 4.

It's a beautiful, old thatched cottage with a beautiful garden./ hidden from the road.

112 Listen and compare your answers.

Farflung spots

- 6 **113** Listen to some people describing the most farflung place they have visited and write down the adjectives they use. Then answer these questions about each person, using the adjectives you wrote down to help you.

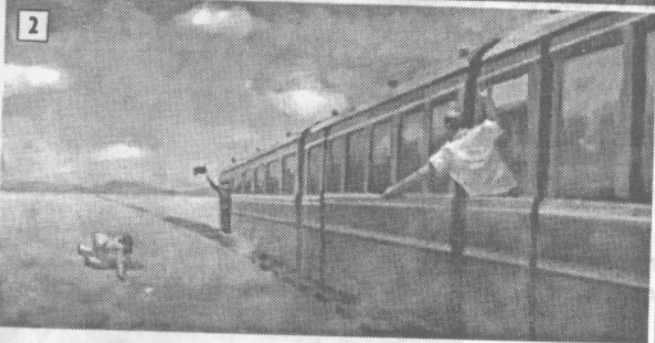
- Where did they go?
- What did they do and see?
- Why was it unusual and memorable?

- 7 Which of the places would you like to visit and why? What is the most unusual place you've been to?

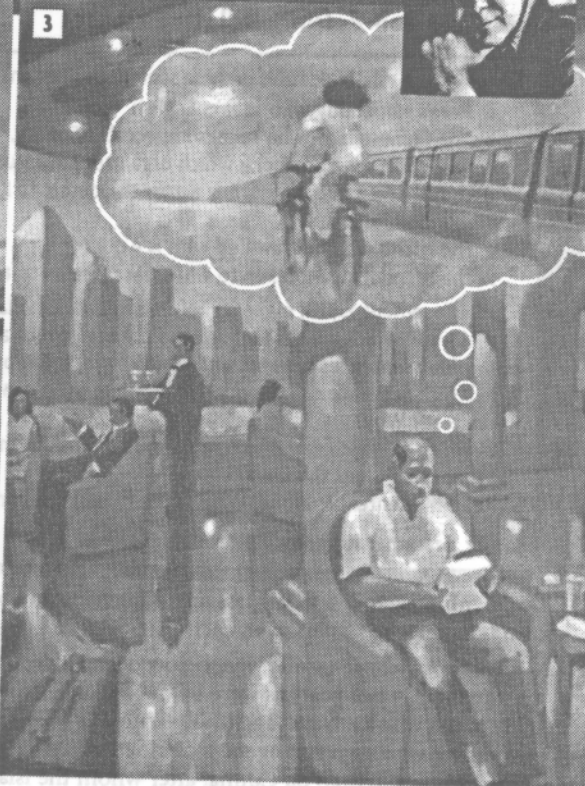
- 8 Write a short description of a place you have visited, using both factual and opinion adjectives.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

A meeting in the desert



Simon Winchester is a foreign correspondent who travels widely, often to the more remote parts of the world.



1 Look at the illustrations which tell Simon's unusual story about a railway journey in the far west of China. Work with a partner to try and predict what happens.

2 **T 11.4** Listen to the first part of the story. Are these statements true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 Simon made the journey alone.
- 2 He was attracted to the idea of travelling on a new railway line in such a remote area.
- 3 They stopped in a desert town called Urunchi.
- 4 The engine driver spoke impeccable English.
- 5 He met an exquisitely lovely, rather serious Chinese lady.

What do you think happens next?

3 **T 11.5** Listen to the second part. Were any of your predictions correct? Answer the questions.

- 1 Why did the lady check her watch?
- 2 How do Anthony Trollope and his book *The Eustace Diamonds* figure in the story?
- 3 Who struggled and scribbled? Why?
- 4 Who scrabbled? Why?
- 5 Why did the lady say 'Don't be silly!'?
- 6 Complete these extracts with the next three words.

- a I could just about remember _____
- b The last vision I have of her was her scrabbling on her _____

How do you think the story ends? What do you think was in the letter? The pictures may help you predict.

4 **T 11.6** Listen to the last part. How close were your predictions? Are these statements true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 The lady wrote to Simon to ask if she could meet him again soon.
- 2 She and her husband had to move to Kwi Tun as a punishment.
- 3 She called Kwi Tun 'this lovely little town.'
- 4 She regularly cycles thirteen miles across the desert to meet the train.
- 5 Her main motivation is to find somebody to talk to in English.
- 6 She once had a conversation with a migrant worker about Trollope.
- 7 She talked to Simon about religion.
- 8 Simon and the lady have unfortunately lost touch with each other.

5 Work with your partner to retell the story in your own words, using the pictures to help. Simon and his friend decided to ... After about 150 miles ...

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Relatives and participles

Defining and non-defining relative clauses

Underline the relative clauses in these sentences. Then answer the questions.

- Here's somebody who speaks English.
- The Chinese lady, who speaks impeccable English, lives in the desert.
- She works for a company which organizes adventure holidays.
- They made a railway journey across the desert to Kazakhstan, which sounded fascinating.
- The friend who he travelled with is a doctor.
- The islanders were taken to what was referred to as 'civilization'.

- Which sentences still make complete sense if the relative clauses are removed? Which are defining relative clauses? Which are non-defining?
- In which sentences can *who* and *which* be replaced by *that*? Why?
- In which sentence can the relative pronoun (*who* or *which*) be omitted? Why?
- In which sentence can *whom* replace *who*? Transform this sentence. What effect does this have?
- Read the sentences aloud. What is the role of the commas?

▶▶ Grammar Reference p158

- Work with a partner and discuss any differences in meaning and/or form between the sentences in each pair.

- The sailors whose cabins were below deck all drowned.
The sailors, whose cabins were below deck, all drowned.
- My sister, who's a travel agent, is terrified of flying.
My sister who's a travel agent is terrified of flying.
- The explorer Tristao da Cunha, after whom the island was named, never actually landed there.
The explorer Tristao da Cunha, who they named the island after, never actually landed there.
- I'm appalled at everything that happened.
I'm appalled at what happened.
- The map showed the place in which the treasure was buried.
The map showed where the treasure was buried.
- People seeking adventure meet all kinds of danger.
People who seek adventure meet all kinds of danger.
- There are white coral sands fringed by coconut palms.
There are white coral sands which are fringed by coconut palms.

- Read these incomplete sentences and discuss whether they should be completed with a defining or non-defining relative clause, or whether both are possible.

- I don't like children ...
- The journey from work to home ... took over two hours yesterday.
- Politicians ... aren't worth listening to.
- The Taj Mahal ... is built from exquisitely carved white marble.
- These are the photographs ...
- We docked at the small port on the coast of East Africa ...
- My cousin ... went hang-gliding at the weekend.
- We went on a cycling holiday in Wales ...

T 11.7 Complete them with your ideas, then listen and compare.

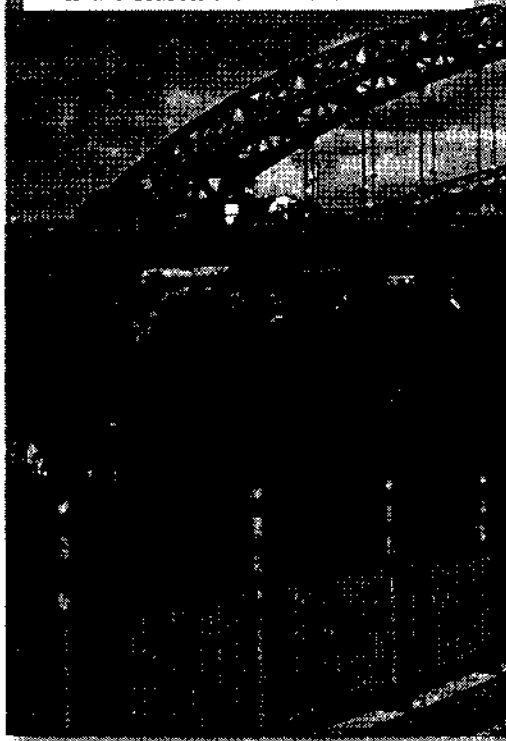
the town

- The part of Britain _____ I most like to visit is _____. I was born in the north-east of England.

- I was born in Sunderland _____ is on the coast and _____ there used to be a large ship-building industry.



- My sister _____ husband is an artist still lives in the town _____ is the reason I often return there.



- Complete the text above with relative pronouns and commas where necessary. If it is possible to omit the pronoun, add nothing.

where was born

- 4 My grandfather _____ worked in the shipyards went to London only once in his life and that was _____ the Sunderland football team won the FA cup in 1973.
- 5 The Wear Bridge _____ outline you can see from miles around spans the estuary of the River Wear and _____ once dockyards and warehouses stood there are now trendy restaurants and yacht clubs.
- 6 My brother-in-law _____ has travelled widely and _____ paintings depict many exotic places, still prefers to paint _____ is most familiar to him – the grey, stormy North Sea.
- 7 _____ I like most _____ I visit my home town are all the memories _____ come flooding back.

Participles

Participle clauses can express these ideas.

- at the same time • so that/with the result that
- because • if • after

▶▶ Grammar Reference p159

- 5 Which ideas do the participles in these sentences express?
 - 1 Living in London, I appreciate the pros and cons of city life.
 - 2 I cut myself opening a tin.
 - 3 Having read the minutes of the meeting, I wrote a report.
 - 4 Having read the minutes of the meeting, I understood the problems.
 - 5 Cooked in a red wine sauce, ostrich meat can be delicious.
 - 6 Knowing my love of chocolate, she hid it away in her drawer.
 - 7 Taken from his mother as a child, he's always had difficulty establishing relationships.
 - 8 Browsing in our local bookshop, I came across this great book on computing skills.
- 6 Complete the pairs of sentences with the same verb, once as a present participle and once as a past participle.
 - 1 Tomatoes grown under polythene ripen more quickly.
Growing up in the countryside is really healthy for young kids.
 - 2 We took a short-cut, _____ an hour on our journey time.
With the money _____ from not smoking we've bought a new computer.
 - 3 _____ all things into account, we've decided to offer you the job.
_____ three times a day these tablets can really help hayfever.
 - 4 Flights _____ one month in advance have a 10% discount.
_____ your flight in advance gives you a better deal.
 - 5 I fell on the ice, _____ my wrist.
The two boys _____ in the car accident are doing well in hospital.
 - 6 _____ promises leads to lack of trust.
_____ promises lead to lack of trust.
 - 7 _____ away secrets won't win you any friends.
I don't believe a word he says, _____ that he never tells the truth.
 - 8 The new uniforms _____ by the flight attendants looked very smart.
Students _____ studs in their noses will be asked to remove them immediately.

- 4 Write some notes about the town where you were born. Give it to a partner to read and ask questions.

THE LAST WORD

What on earth!

- 1 Complete the sentences with a suitable noun from the box.

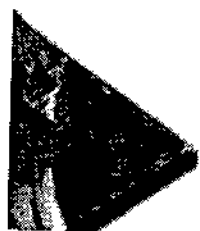
earth ground floor land soil world

- The sailors didn't see _____ again until the ship reached Australia.
 - Communication satellites orbit the _____ once every 24 hours.
 - This rich, black _____ looks extremely fertile.
 - He fell off the wall and hit his head on the _____.
 - We are all striving for _____ peace.
 - In American English they say 'the first _____'; but in British English we say 'the ground _____'.
 - What on _____ are you doing down there on your hands and knees?
 - He lives in a _____ of his own, you just can't get through to him.
 - I like her because she's such a down-to-_____ kind of person.
- 2 Here are some idiomatic expressions using the words in exercise 1. Match a line in A with a line in B. Use a dictionary if necessary.

A	B
1 I'm cleaned out! This new jacket cost the earth.	a I nearly wasn't. I had to move heaven and earth to get here.
2 Believe me, that guy's really going places.	b I can't. My dad caught me smoking and I've been grounded for two weeks.
3 The holiday's over. It's back to the real world.	c Come on! It's good to spoil yourself every now and then.
4 What? You're not coming out on Saturday night!	d Don't I know it! He landed that consultancy job that we all applied for.
5 Hey! Great to see you! I thought you weren't going to be able to make it.	e In your dreams. Not if you were the last man on earth!
6 We're throwing caution to the wind and emigrating to Oz.	f Don't ask me. I was totally floored by the last lot I read.
7 Come on, you know you want to go out with me really.	g Great! That suits me down to the ground.
8 Can you follow these instructions? Where on earth do all these screws go?	h You can say that again. Back to earth with a bump!
9 I don't want to drink, so I'll do the driving tonight.	i Don't your folks already live down under?

- 3 **T 11.8** Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.
- 4 Write some similar conversations with your partner, using some of the expressions from exercise 2. Read them to another pair.





12 Life goes on

Linking devices • Synonyms and antonyms 2 • Euphemisms

STARTER



- 1 Describe Pieter Bruegel's picture, *Landscape with the Fall of Icarus*. Where is Icarus?



- 2 Ask your teacher questions.

When was it painted?

Who was Icarus?

Which one is he in the picture?

- 3 **T 12.1** Listen to a description of the picture by an art historian. What does she say about ... ?
- the three men
 - direction and movement
 - the central event
 - an interpretation of the picture
- 4 Do you agree with Bruegel's message on life? Isn't it good to be ambitious? Is it true that 'life goes on'?

READING AND SPEAKING

A sideways look at time

- 1 What activities do you do at exactly the same time each day? Are you the kind of person who arrives early, exactly on time, or fashionably late? Are you annoyed by people who are unpunctual?
- 2 Why do people often say that the older you are, the faster time seems to go by? When does time seem to fly by? When does it drag?
- 3 Check these action verbs. Demonstrate some of them.

look sideways	blink
winkle sth out	spin
sigh	slip

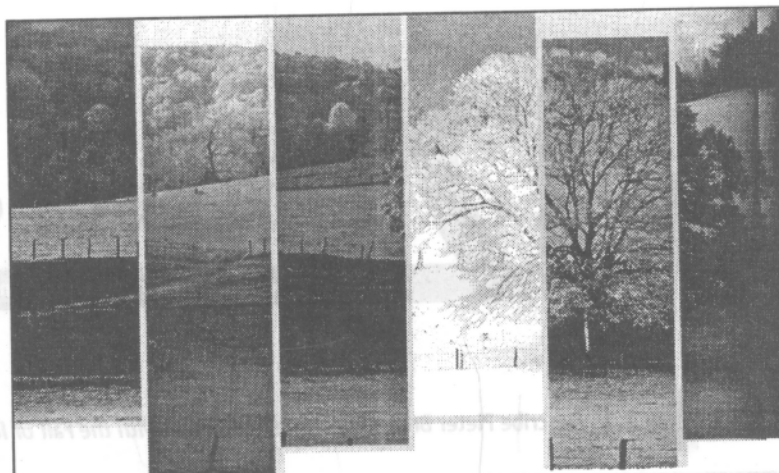
- 4 What do you think these mean?

- clock-time
- chronological time
- universal time
- kairological time

Read the article to find out.
Explain the title.

- 5 Answer the questions.

- 1 What is meant by 'Urban modernity lives under an assault of clocks'? Give some examples of the way our lives are governed by the clock.
- 2 Give examples of fast food. What is fast knowledge?
- 3 What is UT?
- 4 In what way is the earth inaccurate?
- 5 How is the forest a clock for the Karen tribe?
- 6 Explain how 'sunset' can be described as 'three kilometres away'.
- 7 What is a 'scent calendar'? What would you name the 'scent months' where you live?
- 8 How are adults and children different in their attitudes to time?
- 9 What is the difference between the two Greek gods of time?
- 10 How is the passage of time different in the town and in the country?



Of course you know what the time is. You can look at your brand new *DIGITAL* watch, can't you? **But do you really know?** JAY GRIFFITHS invites you to think again and take:

A sideways look at *TIME*

MEASURING TIME

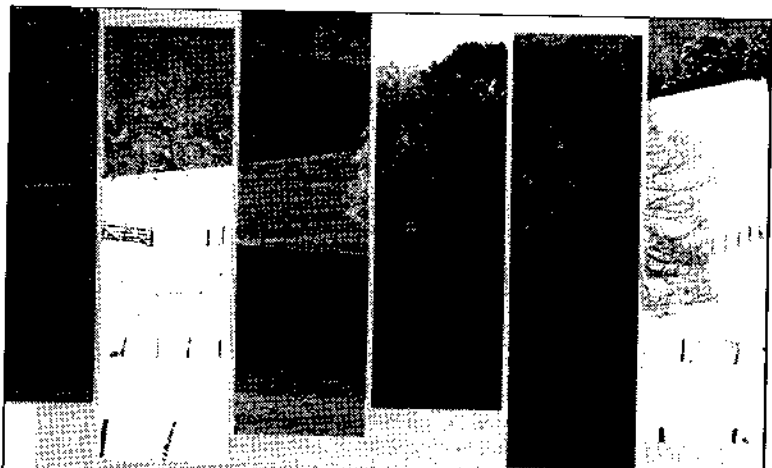
Time's measurement is everywhere. Leaving London, Berlin, New York, Washington or Paris: at the airport every transaction, each ticket and money exchange is timed. Around Heathrow, as at any other major airport, there are clocks, blinking the date and time, down to tenths of seconds. Urban modernity lives under an assault of clocks. Alarm clocks put the frighteners on sleep: the first thought in so many people's minds, every single waking day is 'What's the time? Am I late?' Digital clocks with their digital seconds seem to speed time, relentlessly tightening deadlines. People speak of the frenetic pace of modern society, everything is speeded up, from fast food to fast clothes and fast knowledge.

There are 86,400 seconds in a day and every one is artificially pipped off, day in, day out, by the MSF service of broadcast standard frequency and time on wavelength 60kHz in the LF band. This is the time, since on the first of January 1972 the second was defined as the atomic second, and Co-ordinated Universal Time (abbreviated to UT) was set by international agreement. Roughly every year a leap-second is added to realign the time with that of the earth – it is added to 'accommodate' the earth's unreliable time. For the earth, you see, is too inaccurate for modernity's time measurement, because its spin changes by up to a thousandth of a second in some years. A thousandth of a second, indeed, tut tut, how unpunctual the earth is!

So the timekeepers of today must tell the time from outside the earth itself, insisting that there is one time, abstract and universal, mono-time: the time. There is no such thing.

NOT JUST ONE TIME

The Karen, a hill-tribe in the forests of Northern Thailand, always know the time. Living with them for six months it became clear to me that the only person with a watch and the only person who could never tell the time was, well, myself. To the Karen, the whole forest was a clock. The morning held simplicity in its damp air, unlike the evening's denser wet when steam and smoke thickened the air. The Karen always know where they are and when they are, how far they are from sunset or home: for time and distance are connected in the Karen language: *díyi ba* – soon – means, literally, 'not far



away'. Sunset, therefore, could be expressed as 'three kilometres away', because the only way of travelling is to walk, which takes a known length of time.

Across the world the nature of each moon-month is characterized and, through each people's names for the months, you can see the specific landscape they inhabit. The Natchez tribes of the lower Mississippi river valley have months which include the Deer month and the Strawberries month, the Turkey, Bison, Bear and Chestnut months. In India's Andaman forests, people have a scent-calendar, using the smells of flowers and trees to describe the time of the year. Other peoples characterize time by starscapes. So, see how false is the ideology of Western imperialist time, declaring itself the time. There are thousands of times, not one.

CHILDREN AND TIME

Adults, generally, have learned clock-time. While old people sigh over how fast it goes, children are incapable of patience. How long is an hour to a child? Far, far longer than to an adult; asking a small child to wait a few hours for ice cream is like asking yourself to wait till Wednesday week for a whisky. Children live in the heart of the ocean of time, in an everlasting now. A child's eternal present is present-absorbed, present-spontaneous, present-elastic. Children have a dogged, delicious disrespect for punctuality.

GODS OF TIME

The ancient Greeks had different gods for time's different aspects. One of the most important was Chronos, who gives his name to absolute time, linear, chronological and quantifiable. But the Greeks had another, far more slippery and colourful, god of time, Kairos. Kairos was the god of timing, of opportunity, of chance and mischance, of different aspects of time. Time qualitative. If you sleep because the clock tells you it's way past your bedtime, that is chronological time; whereas if you sleep because you're tired, that is kairological time. If you eat biscuits when you're hungry, that is kairological; whereas if you eat by the clock, that is chronological time. Children, needless to say, live kairologically until winkled out of it.

KAIROLOGICAL TIME

Kairological time has a different sense of movement compared to chronological time. For a rough comparison, contrast an urban with a rural day. In cities, where time is most chronological, your progress through the day is like an arrow, while the day of itself 'stays still', for time is not given by the day but is man-made, and defined by the working day or rush-hours. In a rural place, time moves towards you and is nature-given, defined by sun or stars or rainstorms. In this more kairological time, the future comes towards you and recedes behind you while you may well stay still, standing in the present, the only place which is ever really anyone's to stand in.

What do you think?

1 'There is no such thing as a time-saving device. They should be renamed time-slaving devices.'

Do you agree? Think of some devices that are supposed to save us time. Do they, in fact? In what ways are our lives obsessed with speed?

2 Think of some examples of nature's clocks at work.

sunrise hibernation

3 Rename the months of the year according to where you are and what nature is doing in that month.

4 **12.2** Read and listen to the poem. What does it say about how time can appear to go quickly or slowly?

*Time is too slow
for those who wait,
too swift for those
who fear,
too long for those
who grieve,
too short for those
who rejoice,
but for those who
love, time is eternity.*



LANGUAGE FOCUS

Linking devices

There are many ways of making links between parts of a sentence or between sentences.

1 With conjunctions:

... the future comes towards you and recedes behind you
This is *the* time, *since* on the first of January 1972 the second was defined as the atomic second ...

2 With adverbs:

However, roughly every year a leap second is added ...
So the timekeepers of today must tell the time ...

3 With infinitives:

... it is added to **accommodate** the earth's unreliable time ...

4 With relative pronouns:

In cities, **where** time is most chronological ...

5 With participles:

... there are clocks on corporate buildings and hotels, **blinking** the date and time ...

Find more examples in the article on p110.

►► Grammar Reference p159

1 Choose the correct linker. Sometimes two are possible.

A day in the life of

Benjamin Ellis



I always wake up on the dot of six o'clock in the morning, (1) *unless/wherever/no matter where* I am in the world. I'm a morning person, (2) *so/therefore/since* I like to make the best of my creative period. (3) *As soon as/Whenever/After* I've had a shower, I take the dog out, and (4) *then/at last/finally* it's time for tea and emails. (5) *Since/As/Even though* I work at home, I get a lot of emails, and (6) *providing/if/unless* I clear them daily, they build up and up.

I work downstairs (7) *to not/in order not to/so as not to* wake up the rest of the family.

(8) *Since/In case/Once* everyone is up, we have breakfast, and (9) *after/afterwards/after that* it's the mad rush for school. (10) *Even though/Even so/Although* we ask the children every evening if they have everything for school the next day, there is always something they have forgotten. 'Where's my ...?' is the cry in our house (11) *however/as long as/whenever* a child has lost something. This is followed by the fatuous question from a parent, usually me, 'Where did you last have it?' (12) *Provided/Supposing/If* the child knew that, there wouldn't be a problem.

(13) *When/While/Whenever* everyone's ready, we all pile into the car. I like to leave early (14) *in case/unless/although* the traffic is bad. We go on country lanes (15) *to avoid/so as to avoid/because we avoid* the rush-hour, but (16) *even so/all the same/yet* the journey takes half an hour.

(17) *Immediately/Since/As soon as* I get home, it's back to the computer. (18) *Working/As I work/So that I work* at home, I know how easy it is to be distracted. (19) *As long as/Provided/Except when* I do about eight hours' work a day, I manage to keep on top. In the evening we all eat together (20) *so that/in order to/since* we can catch up with each other's news from the day.



2 Write a paragraph about a typical day in your life, using linking devices.

3 Rewrite each sentence in different ways, using the words in the box.

- 1 The bank robber wore a mask.
No one recognized him.

so that so as not to

The bank robber wore a mask so that no one recognized him.

The bank robber wore a mask so as not to be recognized.

- 2 I saw the film. Then I read the book.

having after

- 3 Look after this carefully. It will last a lifetime.

as long as provided

- 4 The curry was hot. We couldn't eat it.

so such too

- 5 It doesn't matter what you do, but don't touch this switch.

no matter whatever

- 6 Do I like her or not? I'm not sure.

whether

- 7 I'm on a strict diet. I still haven't lost any weight.

even though however even so

- 8 I took an umbrella. I thought it might rain.

in case as

- 9 He was penniless and starving, but he still shouldn't have stolen the food.

nevertheless although despite

- 10 I went to the party. I met Jenny. We got married and had three children.

Supposing I hadn't ...

4 Rewrite the biography of Salvador Dalí, using linkers to change each group of sentences into one sentence.

Salvador Dalí was born in 1904.

He was born in a small town, Figueras, in Catalunya, north-east Spain.

His father was a prestigious notary in the town.

Salvador Dalí was born in 1904 in a small town, Figueras, in Catalunya, north-east Spain, where his father was a prestigious notary.

Dalí wanted to study art.

He went to the Royal Academy of Art in Madrid.

He was expelled from the Academy twice.

He never took his final examinations.

In 1928 he went to Paris.

He met the Spanish painters Pablo Picasso and Joan Miró in Paris.

He established himself as the principal figure of a group of surrealist artists.

The leader of the group was André Breton.

By 1929 Dalí found his style.

This style would make him famous.

It consisted of the world of the unconscious.

This world is recalled during our dreams.

In 1927 he met Gala.

She was a Russian immigrant.

She was ten years older than Dalí.

She was married to a French poet at the time.

She decided to leave her husband.

She wanted to stay with Dalí.

In 1940 he went to the United States.

He stayed there for eight years.

In 1948 Dalí and Gala returned to Europe.

They spent most of their time in Spain or Paris.

Gala died in 1982.

Dalí became deeply depressed.

He moved to Púbol.

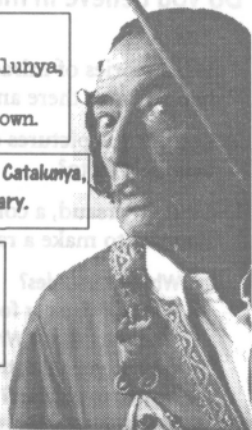
Púbol was a castle.

He had bought it for Gala.

He lived in his castle for the rest of his life.

He died there in 1989.

He died of heart failure.



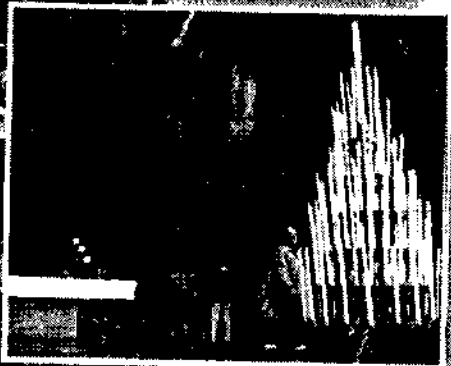
T 12.3 Listen and compare your answers.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Do you believe in miracles?

- 1 What stories of miracles do you know? Do you believe miracles can happen? Are there any rational explanations for these phenomena?
- 2 Look at the pictures of pilgrims. Where are they? Which religion do they belong to?
- 3 Dr Raj Persaud, a consultant psychiatrist at a London hospital, visited Lourdes to make a radio programme.

- Where is Lourdes?
- What is it famous for?
- Who goes there? Why?
- Why do you think the doctor wanted to go there?



- 4 These words are in the programme. What do you think they refer to?

- reverential
- introspective atmosphere
- in wheelchairs or borne on stretchers
- sanctuary
- 1858
- six million people every year
- paralysed
- multiple sclerosis

T 12.4 Listen and check your ideas.

- 5 **T 12.4** Listen again and answer the questions.

Part one

- 1 What strikes Dr Persaud most? Why is this surprising?
- 2 What are some of the statistics he quotes?
- 3 What does the sanctuary consist of?
- 4 What did Bernadette see?

Part two

- 5 What is special about the spring that Bernadette discovered?
- 6 Why is Dr Persaud puzzled?
- 7 Why, according to Andrew Walker, are Christians divided?
- 8 What is the miracle that he quotes?

Part three

- 9 What were Jean-Pierre's early symptoms?
- 10 What happened in 1984? What were the stages of his cure?

Part four

- 11 What, for Dr Persaud, is the danger of modern medicine?
- 12 What is his explanation of the attraction of Lourdes?

What do you think?

- The programme began with the question 'Can miracles exist in the age of science?' What is your opinion? Can miracles only have existed in the past?
- Is there a conflict between science and religion? What different theories of the creation of the universe do you know?

VOCABULARY

Synonyms and antonyms 2

We often use synonyms for reasons of style. Look at these sentences from the article.

... the earth's *unreliable* time ...
... how *unpunctual* the earth is ...

Complete the sentences with a word that has a similar meaning to the words in *italics*. Sometimes the word class changes.

- 1 It was an *immense* task, but its _____ only became apparent when we started working on it.
- 2 Progress will be *slow*, but if we persist, things will _____ improve.
- 3 You *can't count* on her. She's totally _____.
- 4 You want an *approximate* figure? At a _____ guess, I'd say there were about fifty.
- 5 'Did he *say* how his job's going?'
'No. He didn't _____ it.'
- 6 Massage *eased* the pain in my back, and _____ the tension I've felt for so long.
- 7 He's a very *cunning* opponent. He plays some _____ tricks.
- 8 He made a *miraculous* recovery, due to his _____ strength.
- 9 Soldiers *attacked* the enemy headquarters. The _____ took place before dawn.
- 10 Drugs can treat most *illnesses*, but there are some _____ that are incurable.

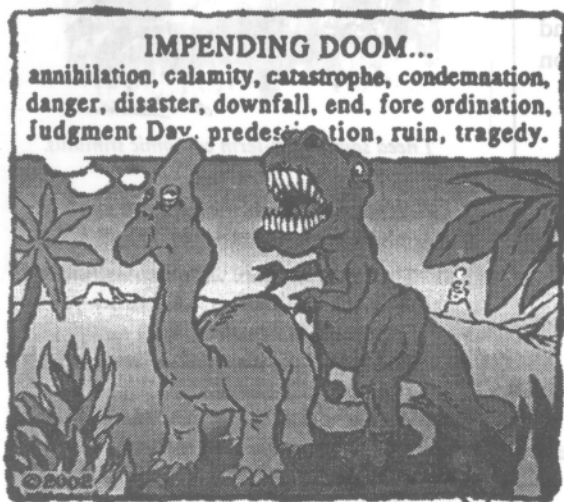
2 Divide the adjectives in the box into four groups, with three synonyms and three antonyms for each head word.

ancient	essential	impeccable	petty
antiquated	faultless	irrelevant	prejudiced
antique	faulty	liberal	second-rate
biased	flawed	novel	up-to-date
bigoted	immaculate	trivial	urgent
current	impartial	open-minded	vital

	synonyms	antonyms
old	ancient	novel
fair		
perfect		
unimportant		

3 Match adjectives from exercise 2 with nouns from the box that they collocate with.

machinery	crime	organs	Greece
idea	Press	vase	manners
racist	performance	mail	affairs



Ironically, a well developed brain actually contributed to the early extinction of the Thesaurus Rex.

THE LAST WORD

Euphemisms

1. A euphemism is a polite way of expressing something thought to have negative connotations.
For example, a blind person is *visually challenged*, a fat person is *full-figured*, and politicians don't lie, they are *economical with the truth*.
2. Complete the newspaper article with euphemisms from the box.

pass away	low IQ	Ministry of Defence
companion animal	disadvantaged senior citizen	working to rule
leisure garden	disabled	under the weather
retirement pension	job seeker's allowance	lower income bracket
taking industrial action	have a dialogue	

Letters

Stop being coy

I will die – not pass away

I AM an old cripple, drawing an old-age pension, working hard to raise vast quantities of vegetables on an allotment, and well aware that, one of these days, I shall die. All this is fact.

If, however, I listen to the voice of officialdom, it turns out that I am a (1) _____, registered as (2) _____, drawing a (3) _____, renting a (4) _____, and presumably immortal, because I shall never die – I shall merely (5) _____.

The euphemisms which pour from the lips of politicians and trade union leaders are endless. (6) _____ equals going on strike, and (7) _____ equals being bloody minded.

And let us please do away with the following:

- (8) _____ (poor)
- (9) _____ (ill)
- (10) _____ (stupid)
- (11) _____ (unemployment benefit)
- (12) _____ (Ministry of War)
- (13) _____ (talk)
- (14) _____ (pet)

All this effort to avoid unpleasantness is certain to fail, because the euphemism quickly acquires the stigma of the word it replaced. I, and probably others, do not feel younger because I am called a senior citizen.

Bryan Heath
Retired vet



'I've never been fired, but
I've been dehered a few times.'



'I need some short-term economic stimulus.'

- 3 What do you think these political euphemisms mean?
 - 1 The rebel fighters were *neutralized*.
 - 2 With all due respect, I think your figures are *misleading*.
 - 3 Could you please *regularize* your bank account?
 - 4 We had a *frank, open exchange of views*.
 - 5 This is not a *non-risk policy*.
 - 6 The company is in a *non-profit situation*.
- 4 Can you translate any euphemisms from your language?

Writing

UNIT 2 STORYTELLING

UNIT 1 FORMAL AND INFORMAL LETTERS

1 You are going to write a formal and an informal letter. Before you begin, think about these things.

- Layout: where to put the address/date.
- Register and style: who are you writing to? Should you use formal or informal language?
- Greeting/Opening: do you know the person's name? Do you know them well?
- Planning: are you asking for/giving information, thanking, or complaining? Always include your reason for writing in the first paragraph.

2 You are planning to work in the USA this summer, and wrote to your friends asking them about jobs for students. Read their reply and write back to your friends thanking them, explaining what you have decided to do, and asking them for more information on Florida about these things:

- possible to stay with them for a couple of weeks?
- Orlando expensive?
- travel cheap to other states?

Great news that you're thinking of coming over this summer. Orlando is a fantastic place to live.

The weather is wonderful, the beaches are great, and people are really friendly. It's only been four months since we arrived, but we've made lots of new friends. I already feel at home and Jon does too.

I'm not sure exactly how you can get a work permit, but I do know that there are organizations, like Go America!, which help foreign students find summer work. There are certainly lots of jobs in the amusement parks and restaurants, so I'm sure you'd have no trouble getting something. Anyway, let us know what you decide.

Lots of love

Sally

3 Now read this advert and write a letter to the employment agency giving them details of your qualifications and asking for further information about these things:

- type of jobs in Florida?
- accommodation?
- cost of flight included?
- work permit?

Go America!

offers students exciting summer jobs in the world's most exciting continent

Work anywhere in the USA – the choice of location is yours! Experience the wide open spaces 'out west', the bright lights of the city or beach life on east coast resorts. Then take time out and travel.

For more information contact:

Go America!
65 Renard Square
London SE6 WH9



UNIT 2 STORYTELLING

1 Read these opening paragraphs from three different stories and answer the questions below.

A

Christmas again. Joyce looked out of the frosted window at the bare, winter garden. A pair of sparrows were hopping through the frozen grass, searching for food. It'd been three long years and she still hadn't got over it. She sighed and pushed a wisp of white hair back behind her ear. The pictures on the mantelpiece were her only companions now, and she treasured them like nothing else. A few Christmas cards kept them company, but as the years went by they were fewer and fewer. No, she'd never get used to it ... but she didn't want to go into a retirement home, not yet. This house was her home, she thought fiercely as she walked unsteadily towards an old threadbare armchair and sat down next to the fire.

B

Hannah glanced anxiously at her watch. It was 11.54 p.m. and the night train for Bangalore was leaving in 6 minutes. She peered along the dimly-lit platform, searching for a familiar figure in faded jeans, carrying a well-worn rucksack. But the station was deserted, apart from a tired-looking porter shuffling around aimlessly and smoking a cigarette. She thought back to their conversation earlier that day, perhaps he'd been serious after all? They'd argued many times during their 3-month trip and he'd often gone off on his own to 'cool off'. But then he'd always turn up later and they'd sort out their differences. Hannah fingered her ticket nervously. She didn't want to leave without Peter ...

C

'What was that!' whispered Jes, his eyes wide with fear. 'Shhh', said Luis, slowly edging his way up the creaking stairs. 'Probably just a rat.' It had been Luis's great idea to explore 'Fletcher's place' as it was known, named after the eccentric old man who last lived there. It was the archetypal haunted house and had been deserted for years – nobody brave enough to buy it, or even break into it Luis had said. They'd been laughing about it just that afternoon, and had speculated wildly about the supposed murder that happened years before. School was out and they were both in high spirits so when Luis suggested a midnight raid, he'd readily agreed. Now, faced with the grim reality of a creepy, damp house, Jes was having second thoughts. 'Was there really a murder here?' he thought desperately.

- 1 How do the opening sentences attract the reader's attention? What atmosphere do they create? How do the characters feel?
- 2 Which tenses are used in the story? Is direct speech used? What effect does it have?
- 3 Who are the main characters in the story? What is their relationship?
- 4 How old are the main characters? How do you know this?

Brainstorming ideas

- 2 Discuss what happens next in the stories. Ask yourself these questions:
 - In each story, someone is facing a choice. What is that choice and what decision do you think each person will make?
 - What could be the consequences of that decision?
How will it affect other people?
 - What do you think will happen in the end?
- 3 Now read the rest of story A. Make it more interesting by adding the adverbs below. There may be more than one possible answer.

carefully softly instinctively gently strangely encouragingly slowly

It was his favourite chair and as she sat there (1) carefully warming her hands, she smiled to herself. She could almost see him at the table, browning through the Sunday papers. After a while she fell into a deep sleep.

'Joyce, Joyce,' a voice whispered (2) _____ in her ear. Joyce opened her eyes. At first she didn't know him – he looked younger and slightly different than she remembered – but she recognized his voice. 'What's the matter, dear?' she asked almost (3) _____. 'Come on old girl,' he said. 'Let's go for a walk.' He helped her up and (4) _____ took her arm. She felt calm and (5) _____ light as they walked (6) _____ out of the room. 'Almost there he said (7) _____, as he pulled at the latch on the front door. The door creaked open and warm sunlight streamed into the hall. Joyce smiled and stepped outside – it was a beautiful spring day.



- 4 In what ways were your ideas for story A similar or different?
What happens in the end? Which ending do you prefer and why?
- 5 Choose extract B or C on p118 and complete the story in 200–300 words.
Use the ideas you brainstormed in exercise 2, and follow the advice below.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Plan your story carefully. Decide what happens next, the order of events, and how the story ends.• Decide how the main characters will react to the events in your story, and which verbs, adjectives, and adverbs will best describe their feelings and actions. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use linking words to order the events in your story.• Use direct speech to vary the pace and focus.• When you have finished check your grammar carefully – make sure you have used past tenses and time adverbials correctly. |
|--|---|

UNIT 3 A BUSINESS REPORT

- 1 What features are typical of report writing?
Choose from these alternatives.
 - a state your aims in the introduction
 - b state your recommendations in the introduction
 - 2 a use headings for each section
b have one general heading
 - 3 a give mostly opinions rather than facts
b give mostly facts rather than opinions
 - 4 a use mostly active tenses
b use mostly passive tenses
 - 5 a give recommendations based on your personal experience
b give recommendations based on the facts
- 2 Read the report and check your answers.
 - 3 Read the report again. Underline words or expressions the writer uses to introduce recommendations.
e.g. *should introduce*
 - 4 Circle six different ways that customers' opinions are reported.
e.g. *commented that*

WORLDNET REPORT

INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this report is to evaluate Internet services provided by *Worldnet*, a chain of 24-hour Internet cafés in London. There has been a steady decrease in the number of customers over the past six months. This report will attempt to analyse and explain this trend based on findings from a series of customer questionnaires. It will evaluate the current services in relation to client needs, and will conclude with recommendations for improvements.

MAIN AREAS FOR IMPROVEMENT

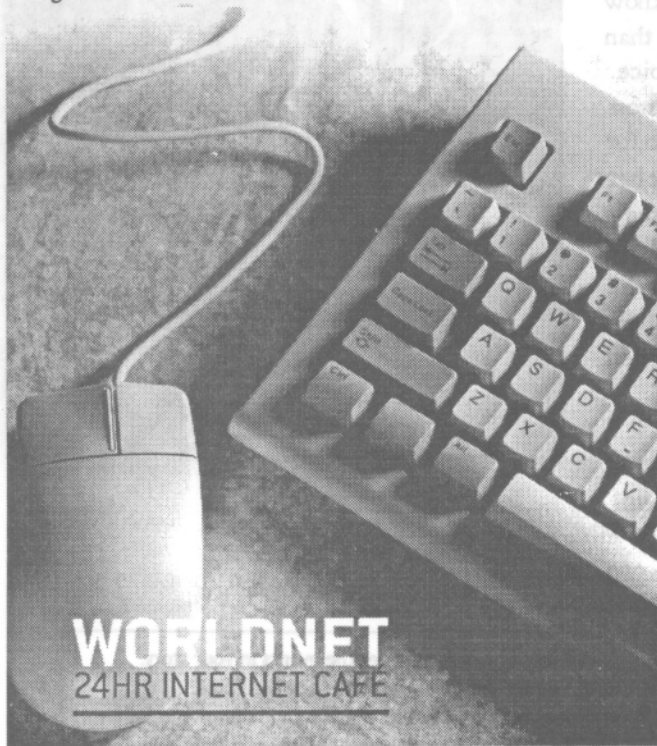
Worldnet caters for a wide range of customers with different backgrounds and ages. However nearly all customers (65%) commented that the cost of the Internet service at £2 per hour was too high and suggested half-hourly rates. The speed of the Internet connection was also criticized. At peak times the service was said to be extremely slow and unstable.

OTHER AREAS FOR IMPROVEMENT

In terms of the hardware, the computer terminals were generally thought to be out of date and badly maintained. The screens were felt to be too small and the seating uncomfortable. On a more positive note, the café was considered to be good value. The prices compared favourably with other cafés, and customers were satisfied with the quality of the food provided. However, although the café was popular, there were some complaints about the lack of variety.

RECOMMENDATIONS

In order to become more competitive, *Worldnet* should introduce new half-hourly rates immediately. Special student rates should also be considered as this would attract 16–25-year-old customers, who represent the majority of Internet users. In addition I would strongly recommend a faster and more reliable Internet service provider. The computer terminals and chairs also need upgrading and maintaining more regularly. Finally, the café could be improved by introducing a wider variety of food and drinks. If these recommendations are put into practice, the number of *Worldnet* customers should start to increase substantially.



5 Report these opinions about a new mobile phone, using the prompts in brackets.

'I've used the built-in digital camera – the photos are really good.'
(considered / good quality)

The built-in digital camera was considered very good quality.

1 *'It makes no difference to me if the display screen is in colour.'*
(commented / made no difference)

2 *'I don't use the voice recorder – to be honest I don't know how to!'*
(said / too complicated)

3 *'I prefer sending text messages to making a call. They're a lot cheaper.'*
(thought / better value for money)

4 *'I don't care about the gadgets. I just want a phone that's reliable.'*
(felt / unimportant)

5 *'The battery doesn't last very long. It's a real pain having to recharge it all the time!'*
(complaints / recharging inconvenient)

6 *'I never use the WAP service. There's nothing worth accessing apart from the football results.'*
(commented / limited value)

6 Read this introduction to a report on mobile phones. Rewrite it in a more suitable way.

Trident wanted me to write a report telling them what I thought about their new range of hi-tech mobile phones. People haven't been buying the phones, although they have lots of great new gadgets. Trident gave me about 50 questionnaires, asked me to have a look at them, explain why sales were dropping, and give a bit of advice on how to improve things.

The aim of this report is to ...

7 Look at the table containing the results of Trident's survey.



Trident 550-750 mobile phones
survey overview

	Good	Satisfactory	Poor	General comments
Price / quality ratio			✓	too expensive
WAP service			✓	
Voice mail service	✓			clear and reliable
Battery life			✓	
Colour display screen		✓		not important
Digital camera	✓			good quality
Voice recorder			✓	
Text messages	✓			cheap and effective

Write a report evaluating Trident's new generation of mobile phones, based on the survey and the opinions in exercise 5. Use the paragraph plan below to help you.

Paragraph 1: Introduction. State the aims of the report.

Paragraph 2: Summarize the problems and report customer opinions. Select three or four main points you want to address.

Paragraph 3: Summarize areas that are satisfactory and report customer opinions.

Paragraph 4: Conclusion. Give your recommendations for improving the service and/or ways of lowering the cost of the phone.

UNIT 4 EXPRESSING A PERSONAL OPINION

- 1 Read the essay title and the essay below. Tick the ideas a–g which appear in the essay. Are any of the ideas not relevant to the question?
- a We're intrigued by people who do anything to become famous.
 - b Personally, I'd say that the conversations are quite boring.
 - c I think that many people would love to be on television.
 - d Unlike soap operas, I don't think they're based on interesting stories.
 - e I think they are totally unpredictable which is very exciting.
 - f Generally speaking, I'd say detective series are quite boring.
 - g I can't imagine life without soap operas.

'TV reality shows are third-rate entertainment and not worth watching.' What do you think?

There is nothing new about reality TV. Confessional shows, where ordinary people make their private life public, have been around for a long time. However, over the last five years TV reality shows such as *Big Brother* and *Survivor* have become more and more popular. (1) *In fact / Obviously* some of these programmes have been the most successful shows in television history. (2) *After all / Surely* it's unfair to say they are third-rate entertainment?

In order to evaluate reality TV, we need to define (3) *ideally / exactly* what a TV reality show is. Reality shows have several things in common with soap operas. (4) *Generally speaking / Actually*, they both involve a group of people who have to live together and get on with each other whilst solving various problems. The difference is that reality shows aren't scripted, so the dialogues are often quite tedious. In addition, the problems contestants deal with are artificial and don't arise naturally from a 'story'. (5) *Apparently / Clearly*, in this sense, they could be seen as third-rate entertainment.

Why then do people watch them? (6) *After all / Presumably*, what holds the audience's attention is the 'reality' or spontaneity of the shows. You never know what is going to happen next, and we are fascinated by people who will stop at nothing in their pursuit of fame. (7) *Naturally / At least* we're also fascinated by how the contestants cope in different situations, and to some extent measure their reactions against our own.

To conclude, it's (8) *probably / exactly* true to say that reality shows are third-rate entertainment when compared with classic films or award-winning documentaries. However, as audience figures prove, they are strangely compelling because (9) *incidentally / basically*, we are able to empathize with ordinary people in extraordinary situations. This (10) *ultimately/ideally* is what makes TV reality shows worth watching.



Adverbs and expressions of opinion

- 2 Read the essay again. Choose the most appropriate adverb or expression of opinion.
- 3 Writers often use adverbs to express or intensify their opinions. Match sentences 1–6 with follow-on sentences a–f, adding an adverb or phrase from the box below. There may be more than one possible answer.

Admittedly	Presumably	Obviously
Naturally	Frankly	As a matter of fact

- 1 ☒ Some people say that the price of fame is too high.
 - 2 ☐ Famous people complain if there is a sensational story in the newspapers.
 - 3 ☐ Celebrities claim it's difficult to make new friends.
 - 4 ☐ People think celebrities have an easy life.
 - 5 ☐ Stalkers pose a very real threat to many celebrities.
 - 6 ☐ Why are we obsessed with fame?
- a _____ they shouldn't because they exploit newspapers to get famous.
- b _____ most celebrities have to work very hard.
- c _____ it must be difficult to know why people are 'friends'.
- d _____ it's because it's 'the new religion'.
- e _____ they have to spend a lot of money on security.
- f Admittedly life is difficult if your private life is public.
- 4 Write a 250-word essay on the subject below. Use the ideas from exercise 3 and the paragraph plan to help you.

'Most people think that being famous is heaven, but in fact it's more like hell.' What do you think?

- Paragraph 1: Summarize why people might want to be famous and paraphrase the question.
- Paragraph 2: Why might people think being famous is 'heaven'? Do you agree?
- Paragraph 3: Why might it be hell? What's your opinion?
- Paragraph 4: Conclusion: summarize the main points and restate your opinion.

UNIT 5 DISCUSSING PROS AND CONS

- 1 Read this extract from a magazine article and the essay which follows. Put the paragraphs of the essay in the correct order.

Up to the early twentieth century, marriage was considered a necessity. People chose partners who provided them with economic support and stability. Since then attitudes have changed and fewer people are tying the knot. Marriage is no longer necessary in modern society.

Do you agree with this view of marriage? What are the arguments for and against marriage today? *PBS Student* magazine invites readers to write in with their opinions.

A Secondly, it has been suggested that marriage provides more stability for children. Certain surveys of children in single-parent families claim they are more likely to commit a serious crime than children from two-parent, married households. But in spite of this, having married parents isn't necessarily the best thing. It's obvious that a stable single-parent environment is a lot healthier for children than an unhappy marriage.

B First of all, it could be argued that marriage brings emotional and financial security to a relationship. This is partly true as married people are still legally bound to support their spouses. On the other hand, getting married and divorced is becoming increasingly easy. As a result, fewer people are prepared to work at their relationship, marriage vows are broken, and many couples are left emotionally scarred.

C Finally, some people claim that marriage is becoming more flexible, with personalised vows and contracts enabling couples to define their relationship themselves. Nevertheless, precisely because the ceremony is flexible and easy to adapt, many people are abusing it. In America there have been televised game shows, where people can win and marry spouses, and in Australia one man actually married his television set.

D To conclude, it's clear that marriage is no longer necessary to a successful, modern relationship. Nowadays a growing number of people simply prefer to live together. This continuing decline in marriage means there is greater freedom for individuals to choose their own partners and decide how they wish to live, which is ultimately a good thing.

E Marriage used to be considered a necessity for anyone wanting to live together and start a family. But over the past two decades fewer and fewer couples have felt the need to tie the knot. What then are the advantages and disadvantages of marriage?

- 2 Read the essay again and look at the highlighted words. How does the writer introduce ...

- arguments he agrees with
- arguments he disagrees with

What examples does the writer use to illustrate different arguments? Which arguments do you agree with?

Linking words: contrast, reason, and result

- 3 Find phrases in the essay which introduce ...

- a contrasting point of view
- a reason
- a result

- 4 Rewrite these sentences, using the words in brackets.

- It's common for young adults to live at home in some countries, but not in others. (whereas)
- Many young adults live at home because of the money they save. (on account of)
- Some people prefer to leave home, even if they don't have much money. (despite)
- Some people stay at home because of economic circumstances. (due to)
- Many young adults save money for their own flat by living at home. (so that)
- Some people want more independence so they move out as soon as they can. (in order to)
- One mother evicted her sons because of their selfish behaviour. (owing to)

- 5 Choose a subject a-c and write a 250-word essay.

- What are the arguments for and against young adults living at home?
- What are the arguments for and against dating agencies?
- What are the arguments for and against living alone?

- First, brainstorm arguments for and against.

- Then organize your arguments into a plan:
introduction
first argument
second argument
third argument
conclusion

- Make sure you write a general introduction to the issue and paraphrase the essay question.
- Use phrases you found in exercise 3 to introduce arguments, and the linking words in exercise 4.
- Try to illustrate your arguments with examples.
- State the arguments you agree with last.
- Make sure you summarize the main ideas and give a clear opinion in your conclusion.

UNIT 6 A LETTER TO A NEWSPAPER

1 Look at this extract from a newspaper editorial, and read the letter to the editor.

'CANNABIS IS NO different from cigarettes in terms of health risks. And unlike cigarettes, for certain conditions such as multiple sclerosis, it has proven medicinal qualities. In short, there is no real reason why cannabis shouldn't be legalized.'

Legalize cannabis? We want to hear from YOU. Write a letter to the editor with your opinions at: In the News, PO Box 33, Bristol BH2 7YH

Richard Pearson
15 Hessel Road
London N7 6PS

7th March

The Editor
In the News
PO Box 33
Bristol BH2 7YH

Dear Editor

A _____ There has been much debate about drugs in the papers recently, and I am very concerned about the arguments put forward in support of new, more liberal laws. I feel that legalization would not only be the wrong decision to make, but also a dangerous one.

B _____ According to your article, cannabis is no more harmful than cigarettes. You state that in some circumstances, such as the treatment of MS, it can actually be beneficial. It is also claimed that 'cannabis is not a gateway to harder drugs, and that there is no proof to support the argument that it is. Finally, the article insists that it is a waste of police time and money to bring a cannabis user to court, when this money could be better spent on preventing 'real' crime.

C _____ Tests have shown that the average joint contains more than twenty times the amount of cancer-causing agents than cigarettes. Moreover, it is a well-known fact that heavy users develop acute mental problems and dependency on the drug. This far outweighs any beneficial effects. Secondly, it is not true that cannabis use is unrelated to hard drugs. As rehabilitation centres have shown, there is a disturbing trend from cannabis use to cocaine, then heroin use. Essentially all these drugs feed the same addiction. Thirdly, I would argue that controlling the drug is not a waste of time and money. Preventing people from buying cannabis ultimately saves money for the health and social services, as well as saving lives.

D _____ Legalizing a drug which is addictive and encourages the use of other drugs is not only irresponsible but downright dangerous.

Yours faithfully

Richard Pearson

- 2 Now match paragraphs A–D to the descriptions below.
Which paragraph ...

- ☐ summarizes arguments in the article that the writer disagrees with?
- ☐ concludes and restates the writer's point of view?
- ☐ puts forward arguments the writer agrees with?
- ☐ introduces the reason for writing and states the writer's point of view?

How many arguments does the letter put forward? Which ones do you agree with?

- 3 Choose the best introductory sentence for each paragraph.

Paragraph A

- 1 Here's my reply to your article about making cannabis legal.
- 2 I am writing in response to your article on the legalization of cannabis.

Paragraph B

- 1 One of the main arguments for legalization is related to health.
- 2 In your article you say that cannabis really isn't that bad for our health.

Paragraph C

- 1 Taking each of your arguments in turn, first of all it has been scientifically proven that cannabis is more of a health risk than cigarettes.
- 2 Looking at your arguments one by one, it really is true that smoking cannabis is a lot riskier than smoking cigarettes.

Paragraph D

- 1 To be honest, I can think of lots of reasons why cannabis users should be arrested.
- 2 To conclude, there are many reasons why cannabis should not be legalized.

- 4 Rewrite these sentences in the passive, using phrases from the box.
There may be more than one possible answer.

It could be argued that ...
It is assumed that ...
It would appear that ...

It is believed that ...
It would seem that ...
It has been proved that ...

- 1 If we ban cigarettes, we should ban hamburgers too.
It could be argued that if cigarettes were banned, hamburgers should be banned too.
- 2 Young people's friends often encourage them to smoke.
- 3 Lack of exercise and an unhealthy diet causes most ill health.
- 4 Passive smoking kills people.
- 5 People know about the risks of smoking.
- 6 Companies have increased the nicotine content in cigarettes.
- 7 You can't frighten people into giving up smoking.

- 5 Read the newspaper extract below and write a letter to the editor in 200–300 words. Make sure the layout is correct and that you use an appropriate register. Use the paragraph plan to help you.



EVERY YEAR MILLIONS of people die from cigarette-related illnesses. Despite awareness of the health risks, many people are unable to control their addiction. It's time we banned all cigarette advertisements, extended no-smoking policies to all public areas, and forced cigarette companies to contribute to a crippling healthcare bill.

Do you agree with this editorial?
We'd like to hear your point of view.
Write a letter to the editor at:

YOU AND YOUR HEALTH
56 Hoole Place, Edinburgh EH3 9QT, Scotland.

- Paragraph 1: Introduction: state your reason for writing and your point of view.
Paragraph 2: Summarize the arguments you disagree with.
Paragraph 3: Discredit the arguments you disagree with and put forward the arguments you agree with.
Paragraph 4: Conclusion: restate your opinion.

UNIT 7 DESCRIBING A PERSONAL EXPERIENCE

- 1 Read these two versions of the opening paragraph from a personal account, then answer the question below.

A Two years ago I was in Wick, a small town in the North of Scotland. I'd just been to John O'Groats and had gone to Wick so I could catch a train there the next morning. I arrived at 11 at night and most places were closed. I suppose I should have booked somewhere before I arrived. I was walking around the streets looking for a place to stay, but everywhere was closed. Then I met an old man who offered me a room for the night.

B It was a freezing November night and the stars shone coldly as I trudged through the deserted town of Wick with my heavy overnight bag. It was the third time I'd walked round the wintry streets looking for somewhere - anywhere - to stay. But there was no sign of life, even the pubs were shut. A bitter wind blew in from the North as the church clock struck midnight. I paused to wrap my scarf round my neck. 'Five more hours before the next train to Thurso,' I thought miserably, resigning myself to a bleak night on the streets. Then suddenly I heard a voice behind me: 'What's up, laddie? Need some help?'

Which opening paragraph ...

- describes emotions, the surroundings and the weather?
- gives a mostly factual narrative?
- uses a variety of vocabulary?
- uses similar sentence structures throughout?
- has more impact on the reader?

- 2 Choose the most suitable title.

- a The weather in Scotland c An interesting journey
b The kindness of strangers

- 3 Now read the rest of the account and answer the questions below.

The voice belonged to a sprightly old man called Robert MacDougal. He was walking home after a meal at a friend's, when he noticed me huddled in the street. When I explained my predicament he immediately offered shelter for the night. At first I was suspicious. I'd learnt from experience not to trust strangers, having been robbed once in London. That incident had left its mark, but it soon became clear that what motivated Robert was a genuine desire to help. Wick was a small town and it was obvious I wasn't a local. It was also obvious that I needed a place to sleep.

I followed Robert back to a small cottage on the edge of town where he offered me a whisky. As we sat in front of a warm fire we talked for a while about Wick. Robert was a widower and had lived there all his life. He had three children and several grandchildren, although most of them had moved away. I began to understand why Robert was glad of some company.

After a peaceful night on an old sofa, I got up at 4.30 a.m. to catch my train, leaving behind a crumpled note of thanks. Today I sometimes think about Wick, and wonder if Robert is still there. I'll always remember with gratitude his simple act of kindness.

- 1 What was the writer's first reaction to Robert's offer?
- 2 Why did Robert offer to help?
- 3 Why was the writer suspicious at first?
- 4 What did he learn about Robert?
- 5 Why won't he forget him?

Ways of creating emphasis

- 4 Look at this example from the account.

Robert was motivated by a genuine desire to help. (*What ...*)

What motivated Robert was a genuine desire to help.

Now rewrite these sentences in a more emphatic way.

- 1 People rarely help a stranger in trouble. (*Rarely ...*)
- 2 The problem is mistrust. (*It's ...*)
- 3 People worry about being robbed. (*What ...*)
- 4 We should try to help in some way. (*The thing ...*)
- 5 I won't forget the first time a stranger helped me. (*Never ...*)

- 5 Write about a small or great kindness that happened in your life. Write 200-300 words. Use the paragraph plan below to help you.

Paragraph 1: Set the scene for the story. Remember to grab the reader's attention at the beginning. Describe the surroundings or the situation, but don't give them all the facts at once.

Paragraph 2-3: Describe what happened. What were you doing? Were you alone? Why did you need help? How did you feel? Who did you meet? How did they help you?

Paragraph 4: What happened in the end? Did you learn anything from the experience?



UNIT 8 REVIEWING A FILM OR BOOK

UNIT 9 PERSONAL PROFILE

Quickly read the film review.

- What's the purpose of the review?
- Who is likely to read it?
- Is the language mostly formal or informal?

Divide the review into paragraphs, then match the paragraphs to these headings.

- Recommendation
- Positive points
- Negative points
- Subject of the review
- Summary of the plot

Read the review again and answer the questions.

- What type of film is it?
- What does the writer compare the story to?
- What does the writer compare some scenes to?
- Which words are used to describe ...
 - the visual imagery?
 - the acting?
 - the atmosphere?
 - the plot and the ending?
- What tense does the writer use to describe the story?

Complete the sentences with a verb from the box in the correct form.

create strike adapt suspend reveal set tell see

- The story _____ in Washington, DC, in 2054.
- It _____ from a book by Philip K Dick.
- The film _____ the story of a man accused of a future crime.
- When the truth _____ he goes on the run.
- The soundtrack and special effects help _____ an atmosphere of suspense.
- The plot is sometimes unconvincing. You have to _____ your disbelief.
- What _____ you most is Tom Cruise's impressive performance.
- I highly recommend it. I'd say it's well worth _____.

Write a 250-word review of a film, play, or book. Follow this advice.

- Choose a film, play, or book that you know well.
- Brainstorm your opinions about the characters, the plot, the acting, and the special effects.
- Use intensifiers to reinforce your opinions.
- Summarize the story, but don't give too much away.
- Organize your review into logical paragraphs with logical linkers.
- End the review with a personal recommendation – try to give a balanced opinion.

Reviews films

Road to Perdition

rating ★★★



Road to Perdition is the latest film by Sam Mendes, director of the Oscar-winning film *American Beauty*. Adapted from a novel by Max Allan Collins and Richard Piers Rayner, *Road to Perdition* is extremely dark and atmospheric. Like a Greek tragedy, it follows the predestined fates of the main characters on their road to perdition (or hell). The film is set in a wintry 1930s Chicago and tells the story of a hitman called Mike Sullivan (Tom Hanks) and his mafia boss John Rooney (Paul Newman). Sullivan looks up to Rooney as a 'father figure'. However, when Sullivan's son witnesses a gangland killing, Rooney turns against him, and both father and son are forced to go on the run. Visually, the film is quite stunning. There are some impressive special effects, but what strikes you most are the dark images of rain and shadow. These create a heavy atmosphere of bleakness and fear. In many scenes brown and black are the dominant colours, which often make the film look like a well-crafted oil painting. The acting too is first-rate, with both Hanks and Newman giving completely convincing performances. However, although it is wonderfully directed and acted, *Road to Perdition* is not a gripping film. The plot is quite slow and the ending is totally predictable. But what the film really lacks is human warmth – the characters ultimately fail to move us. To sum up, *Road to Perdition* is a beautifully-filmed gangster movie. It's well worth seeing, but it doesn't quite deliver the great film we expect.

UNIT 9 PERSONAL PROFILE

- 1 Many people need to write a personal profile as part of an application for a place at university or for a new job.

Quickly read this personal profile and match paragraphs A–D to the descriptions below.

- ☐ Summary of main skills and qualities
- ☐ Leisure activities
- ☐ Present responsibilities and skills
- ☐ Experience and achievements



A I am currently a student at Leeds University, completing a degree in History. As a member of the Student Union Executive Committee, I am actively involved in the day-to-day running of student life. The Committee takes responsibility for improvements to student facilities, coordinating student events such as concerts and sports days, as well as fund-raising activities such as Rag Week. I play a large part in organizing these events, my role specifically being to oversee publicity and manage the budgets. These responsibilities test my leadership as well as my organizational and negotiating skills.

B For many years I have been keenly interested in journalism. While I was at school, I helped to run the school magazine, and in my first year at university I often contributed articles to the Student Magazine, 'Juice'. Running and writing a magazine requires the ability to produce interesting, topical articles while working under pressure and meeting tight deadlines. The success of the school magazine shows that I managed to develop these abilities to a high standard.

C In my free time I enjoy watching films. I am a member of a local community film club and helped organize a short film festival last year. I contributed my own short video about student life to the festival, which was very well received. My involvement with this local community project has given me experience of organizing off-campus events as well as working with young people in the community.

D I believe I have made a positive contribution to both school and university life, as well as to the local community. I am confident and competitive, but also a good team worker. My natural enthusiasm has often helped me motivate others and achieve excellent results.

- 2 Read the profile again and answer these questions.

- How does the writer contribute to university life? What skills has he developed?
- What did the writer do at school?
- What type of challenges did he experience?
- Which hobby does he mention? What experience has he gained from it?
- What qualities help the writer do a good job?

- 3 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box in the correct form.

take	manage	work	play
coordinate	meet	run	

- Matt didn't want to _____ responsibility for the project. It was too much work.
 - Your education and experience _____ a large part in the skills you have to offer.
 - It's not easy to _____ a newspaper. You often have to _____ very tight deadlines.
 - People are sometimes most creative when they _____ under pressure.
 - Holly had to _____ a lot of people for the fundraising event.
 - He's no good at _____ budgets. He's hopeless at maths!
- 4 Write your own personal profile in 250–300 words. Use the plan below and the phrases in exercise 3 to help you.
- Paragraph 1: Introduce yourself and what you do. Talk about your current responsibilities and skills.
- Paragraph 2: Talk about your past experiences and achievements. Highlight the personal qualities you developed as a result of them.
- Paragraph 3: Talk about your leisure activities. Think about how they contribute to the skills and experience you already have.
- Paragraph 4: Point out the main contributions you have made to your school/university/work. Summarize your main skills and qualities.

UNIT 10 ENTERING A COMPETITION

- 1 Read this advert for a competition. What do people have to do?

Calling all sports people—



NO LIMITS magazine is offering a free weekend of skydiving. All you have to do is write and answer these questions about an adventure sport you enjoy: How did you start? Why do you enjoy it? Why do you think adventure sports are popular? The winning entry will be published in next month's magazine.

Send in your article to:
NO LIMITS magazine, 67 Walford Road, London SW6 7TY.

- 2 Now read the competition entry and answer the questions below.

There comes a time in everyone's life when you want to try something completely new. I'd been a wife and a mother for some years when I started climbing – I knew I was ready for a change. Most winters the family would go to Zermatt in Switzerland. We would rent a chalet there and go skiing. But three years ago it wasn't skiing that interested me. It was climbing. The idea of climbing had always appealed, but I'd never really tried it. That year was different and I decided to take a guided climb up Mount Matterhorn. It proved a difficult experience, but when I reached the top the feeling of excitement and achievement was overwhelming. I knew then that this was what I wanted to do.

When friends find out that I climb, they often want to know what motivates me. It's difficult to put into words because I'm not the stereotypical adrenaline addict and I'm not terribly competitive. For me climbing is more about personal achievement. It provides a challenge, a change of scene, and a bit of escapism. My friends might relax by watching a film or reading a book. Well, I prefer to climb. It transports me out of my everyday life and into a world where anything is possible.

- 1 Is the style of writing mostly formal or informal?
- 2 How does the opening paragraph engage the reader's interest?
- 3 How does the writer explain her hobby to her friends?

Answering the question

- 3 Look at these two versions of the final paragraph. Which do you think is the best at answering the question? Why?

A Some people argue that sports like climbing are dangerous and that the sportsmen and women who do them are totally irresponsible. Others say that adventure sports are no longer interesting as there's nothing new to do. But whatever people say, the fact remains that for many of us these sports satisfy a very real need – the need to explore, to push ourselves to the limits, or simply to feel 'alive'.

B Why are more and more people doing adventure sports? Firstly, it's probably a result of the whole modern-day obsession with sport. Adventure sports especially have a very positive image. They're seen as exciting, daring and different. Secondly, many people are attracted to the challenge or are curious to see what they are capable of achieving. But whatever the reason, the fact remains that for many of us adventure sports fill a very real need – the need to explore, to push ourselves to the limits, or simply to feel 'alive'.

- 4 Read this advert for another competition.

*free gym membership for one year

SportingLife is offering a free gym membership for one year for the best article about sport.

Simply write 200–300 words about what sport means today.

- 1 – Is it about teamwork or individual achievement?
- 2 – How are we influenced by sports and sports people?
- 3 – Why are sport and fitness centres so popular?

Send your article to:

Sporting Life, 56 Ryan Street, Chester CH6 9KJ.

Closing date: 30 August

- 5 Write your competition entry in 200–300 words.

Use the paragraph plan to help you.

Paragraph 1: Begin with a personal anecdote which illustrates what sport means today. It could describe an experience where you were watching a sport, or taking part in a sport.

Paragraphs 2–3: Answer the questions in the competition entry one by one. State your opinions clearly and give examples where relevant.

Paragraph 4: Sum up your ideas and give your opinion.

UNIT 11 DESCRIBING A JOURNEY

1 Read three extracts from a travel diary and answer the questions.

- Which countries did the writer visit?
- How did he travel? Where did he sleep?
- In which extracts does he ...

- get on with the local people?
- experience bad weather?
- comment on the changing scenery?
- feel anxious about his journey?

Adding interest

2 Read another extract by the same writer. Add adjectives from the box to make it more interesting.

windswept desolate spectacular derelict shimmering blazing

In the Atacama desert, the road ahead was my only link with civilization. The sun beat down on the sand dunes and ghost towns which lined the route. In the distance I could see volcanoes which marked the edge of the desert and the border with Bolivia.

A After picking up the Honda in Buenos Aires, I carefully packed my camping equipment and left the city. I was soon making my way south along the storm-tossed Atlantic coast, passing glorious, golden beaches and small bustling resorts. I decided to stop off at Bahia Blanca and enjoy the hospitality of the friendly locals, before heading out west. A few days later I set off inland, and was soon riding through bleak wasteland. The days were getting shorter now and the night temperatures were definitely cooler. It was exciting, but also a little troubling to see the next stage of my journey loom ahead – the barren, snow-clad Andes.

B Chile's lush green vegetation was a welcome change after the desolate landscape of the Andes. But then it started raining. Unfortunately, this was no ordinary shower – it was a real downpour and it went on for days, which was pretty depressing. I passed several rain-drenched, dreary towns, which were about as welcoming as the gloomy-looking people. In fact the rain continued until I reached the capital, Santiago.

C After Santiago, the weather picked up. It was great riding along the wild Pacific coast in the bright sunshine. But as I approached the Atacama desert, the scenery started to change again. Instead of grassland, there was cactus, then sand. Soon I found myself on the edge of the driest desert in the world, where temperatures ranged from a sizzling 40°C in the day to a freezing -5°C at night.

3 Find adjectives in extracts A–C which describe ...

- beaches • towns and cities • the coastline • people • the mountains

4 Match these sentence halves describing different journeys.

- It was a beautiful sunny day when we headed
- They crossed the swamp, then slowly made
- After travelling for several hours on the motorway we stopped
- The road was flooded so we had to turn
- If you follow this road for 15 kilometres, you'll find
- It was hard work hiking through the snow, but we soldiered
- The express train sped
- We were crossing a bridge when the bus broke
- a off at a service station for lunch.
- b their way to the crocodile farm.
- c out towards the mountains.
- d through the countryside without stopping. / towards the gloomy city.
- e on until we got to the cabin.
- f back and look for an alternative route.
- g yourself on the coast.
- h down and blocked the road.

5 Write a 250-word description of a memorable journey you have taken. Use the paragraph plan and the questions to help you.

- Paragraph 1: Describe the beginning of your journey. Where were you going? Who were you travelling with? How did you get there?
- Paragraph 2–3: Describe what happened during the journey. What was the weather like? What were your impressions of people and places? How did you feel? Did anything unusual happen?
- Paragraph 4: Describe the end of your journey. What was your final destination? When did you arrive? How did you feel about the journey? Was it a good or a bad experience?

UNIT 12 BRINGING A BIOGRAPHY TO LIFE

- 1 Look at these facts taken from a biography. Combine the sentences to make one sentence, using the words given.

- Robert Capa was a famous photojournalist. **Robert Capa, the ...**
He was also the founder of Magnum Photos.
He was born in Budapest in 1913.
- He was a very talented photographer. **A talented, ...**
He was self-taught.
He started working for a publishing house when he was just 18.
At the same time he studied journalism at a Berlin university.
- There was much political upheaval in the 1930s. **During the 1930s ...**
Many of his student companions became involved.
Capa was also very much involved.
- Capa had to leave Hungary as a result. **Consequently ...**
Later he had to leave Berlin too.
He went to live in Paris.

- 2 Quickly read the rest of the biography. Match paragraphs A–D to the descriptions.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> an evaluation of his achievements | <input type="checkbox"/> his continuing success |
| <input type="checkbox"/> the end of his career | <input type="checkbox"/> how he built his reputation |

Robert Capa

A DURING HIS FIRST years in Paris, Capa worked mainly on local photo stories. It was not until 1936 that he got his big break. He was sent to cover the Spanish Civil War and, as a result, his work started to appear regularly in top magazines and newspapers. It was his picture of a Loyalist soldier falling to his death which brought him international repute and became a powerful symbol of war.

B In 1939, shortly after the Spanish Civil War, Capa worked in New York for a while. However, he quickly returned to Europe on the outbreak of World War II and stayed there for six years. His photographs of the Normandy invasion became some of the most memorable war photographs in history, and he received the Medal of Freedom Citation for his work.

C Capa's job as a war photographer often put him in great personal danger, but despite the risks his motto was always: 'If your pictures aren't good enough, you aren't close enough!' However on 25 May 1954, Capa's luck ran out. He was working on an assignment in French Indochina when he stepped on a land mine. He was killed instantly.

D Today Robert Capa is considered one of the finest war photographers of all time. He was an exceptional photojournalist who used his camera to express and record the horror of the events around him. Not surprisingly Capa hated war, especially his often passive role in it. 'It's not always easy to stand aside and be unable to do anything except record the sufferings around one,' he said.

- 3 Read the biography again and answer the questions.

- How did Robert Capa get his 'big break'?
 - What do you think he was trying to achieve through his pictures? How did he feel about his work?
 - Did any of the facts about his life surprise you? What do you think was the most interesting fact?
 - How does the writer use direct quotes? What effect do they have?
 - Do you think Robert Capa was a brave man? Would you describe him as a 'hero'?
- 4 Write your own biography. Either write about someone who interests you, or use the notes about Isabel Allende below. Use the paragraph plan to help you.

ISABEL ALLENDE

Paragraph 1: The early years

- 1942: born in Lima, Peru – moved to Chile when she was three
- worked as a secretary, then a journalist
- 1973: military coup – her uncle, President Salvador Allende, was assassinated
- went with her husband and children to Venezuela

Paragraph 2: How she built her reputation

- 1975–1984: worked as a journalist in Venezuela
- 1981: wrote letter to her dying grandfather – became her first novel *The House of the Spirits* – critically acclaimed

Paragraph 3: Her continuing success

- 1984–1985: wrote *Of Love and Shadows* and *Eva Luna* – bestsellers and made into films
- 1994: wrote *Paula* – inspired by the illness of her 23-year-old daughter

Paragraph 1: An evaluation of her achievements

- now lives in San Francisco with her second husband
- continues to write novels – also teaches literature
- one of most talented writers of her generation



Tapescripts

Unit 1

T 1.1

- 1 I tried to repair my car, but I couldn't. I didn't have the right tools.
- 2 'You look awful. Why don't you see a doctor?' 'I have. He just gave me some pills and told me to take things easy.'
- 3 'It's a long journey. Take care on the motorway.' 'Don't worry. We will.'
- 4 I met your sister last night. She thought we'd met before, but we hadn't.
- 5 'Have you read this report?' 'No, I haven't, but I will.'
- 6 The weather forecast said that it might rain this afternoon. If it does, we'll have to call off the tennis.
- 7 My car's being mended at the moment. If it wasn't, I'd give you a lift. Sorry.
- 8 I'm so glad you told Sue exactly what you thought of her, because if you hadn't, I certainly would have!
- 9 I got that job I applied for, so I was delighted. I really didn't think I would.
- 10 'Come on, John! It's time you were getting up!' 'I am! I'll be down in a second.'
- 11 'I think I'll give Bob a ring.' 'You should. You haven't been in touch with him for ages.'
- 12 I went to a party last night, but I wish I hadn't. It was awful.
- 13 My boyfriend insists on doing all the cooking, but I wish he wouldn't – it's inedible!
- 14 'Aren't you going to Portugal for your holidays?' 'Well, we might, but we're still not sure.'
- 15 'Andy got drunk at Anne's party and started insulting everyone.' 'He would! That's so typical. He's always doing that.'

T 1.2

- 1 A Can you come round for a meal tonight?
B Thanks very much. I'd love to.
- 2 A Did you post my letter?
B Oh, I'm really sorry. I forgot to.
- 3 A I can't take you to the airport after all. Sorry.
B But you agreed to!
- 4 A Was John surprised when he won?
B He certainly was. He didn't expect to.
- 5 A Why did you slam the door in my face?
B It was an accident. I really didn't mean to.
- 6 A You'll be able to enjoy yourself when the exams finish.
B Don't worry. I intend to!

T 1.3 I = Interviewer, V = Vijay, B = Bhikhu

Part one

- I What was it like, life in Eldoret then?
- V It was a quaint little place ... very safe ... we had sunrise at six, sunset at six in the evening and that was the same all the year round simply ... that's because we were on the equator and 7,000 feet above the sea level, therefore the climate is excellent and do you know they claim that it was the best climate in the world ...
- B Life was quite difficult in some respects ... erm ... the biggest tragedy of our life was we lost our father when we were quite young, I was ... eight I think my brother was six and ... er ... and in spite of the sort of safe community there, my mother had to bring us up so ... it was quite difficult really ... er ... to manage on a day-to-day basis but my mother made sure we had enough and she used to teach nursery school children ...

- I Did you come to England together ... at the same time?
- V Bhikhu is the older and I followed him ... it was a year after he came, a year and a quarter ... I was sixteen.
- B I came here at the age of seventeen or eighteen, I think ... yeah.
- I Now, what was it made you come to England?
- B Well, in our case, certainly we were British citizens and we knew that we could educate ourselves, as well as work ... we knew as we could study and work we knew we would be fine ... we knew we had to work hard ... we did see it as a land of opportunity.
- I It is said that you came here with just a few pounds in your pocket.
- V That's absolutely true. Maybe Bhikhu had a pound more than me, but I honestly had five pounds of my own.
- I So what about the steps then from that point to actually starting your business? What happened?
- B It's a long way really, I mean ... er
- V We could write a book ... [laughter]
- B I mean when I first came, my ... my first and main ambition really was to study, get a university degree and so on, so I set about getting that sorted out and that was first of all ... er ... applying for ... well doing A levels full-time and working part-time to sustain ourselves ... er
- I This was in London?
- B This was in London. I wanted to be an architect.
- I Did you qualify as an architect?
- B Yes, I did. I went to Bristol University and did seven years.
- I But ... but you Vijay you didn't follow that path I mean architecture wasn't your ...
- V [laughs] No, no it wasn't me, I haven't got the discipline of an architect, I think. I actually did my A levels and then went to a school of Pharmacy in Leicester and I did my degree in Pharmacy there. In the back of my mind I suppose was the fact that if you are in pharmacy you can go into business more than if you are a doctor and that's sort of what led me to do pharmacy.
- I And that, of course there is the tradition among the Patels, certainly in East Africa of business, isn't there?
- V Sure.
- I And what I neglected to ask you, about your father, was he a businessman?
- V He was a timber merchant. Yes, and ... er ... he ... he had actually only just started his business and within a year of him starting the business, which he did very well at, though he was there for a short time, but he passed away.

T 1.4 Part two

- I So you started your business with ... er ... the equivalent of a corner shop except ... er ... it was a pharmacy ...
- V Yes, it was a pharmacy, indeed, yes.
- I Now, what was it in you two that made you go from that one corner shop to what we have now?
- B Er ... well, I mean, what I did ... I mean, I qualified as an architect, worked in private practices and so on, and ultimately ... erm ... decided that was not for me. Erm ... so, thereafter I went into business, which was a couple of corner shops, newsagents, all my friends thought I was mad ... and so I went into business, in ... in East London in two newsagent shops, but then after a couple of years I left it erm ... so I came across to where my brother Vijay was ... and joined him and by then ... he had started his pharmacy business, made a success of it and by the time I joined him I think he had about three or four, quite a few shops and we decided to go together and ...
- I Two brothers working in the same business could be a recipe for disaster – you know power struggles and all the rest of it but in your cases, what is it, what do you each bring that the other perhaps lacks?

- V Bhikhu is a trained architect and, do you know, Bhikhu has a tremendously disciplined and a very high IQ mind, so I was building up a very, very successful enterprise, that's something I do have in me, the vision, the go, even if I say so myself, I have that in me to build a successful enterprise, I do lack the discipline to look after it ... and hence Bhikhu's strength really enhances my weakness tremendously, so the deal was, I make the wealth brother, you look after it. Today twenty or twenty-two, twenty-three years on, that stays.
- B Yeah, so it works very well, I think basically we complement each other, and ... erm ... where we're different from other people perhaps ... er ... there isn't sort of ... er ... siblings rivalry ... a lot of it is sort of for the greater good of the family. A lot of Asian families are like that they look after the family as a whole and I think that comes across in our ... our relationships as well really. And that is important.
- I On the subject of family you ... you mentioned earlier how much of a role your mother had in your early life, especially after your father died. What ... is she with you now?
- V Indeed she is, and do you know she is a very strong person. She lives with me ... she's a very strong personality. I mean a truly great lady, she sacrificed her entire life. You know she just worked twelve hours a day, seven days a week for umpteen number of years 'til we were grown up enough to leave the nest, as it were.
- I What about ... in England in achieving what you've achieved ...
- V Sure ...
- I ... did you come up against much racial discrimination?
- V No, and I can safely and honestly and in my heart say that I have not come against any segregation as such ... in my business, in my working life.
- B Yeah, I mean I came slightly earlier on and I had slightly different experiences when I first came to the UK. ... Erm I couldn't get a job despite all my qualification ... er ... and at that time, it was very apparent I couldn't because of my colour of my skin and this was going back to the sixties. Also as a newsagent I had a terrible time, where I was ... windows would be smashed, my shutters in the shops were ... were attacked, there were all sorts of harassment where I was ... it was terrible.

T 1.5 Part three

- I You've just been nominated ... or named as joint entrepreneurs of the year ... what was it for?
- V Well ... coming from where we did ... to actually build a successful business ... er ... and the other, other thing is to actually provide employment, we provide employment for six hundred people directly.
- I Do you think success has spoiled the Patels?
- V Speaking for myself and my brother, I don't think it has. We are not the sort of helicopter or yacht people in any sense. Er ... we ... I can say ... truly say ourselves that we do not see ourselves any different to what we saw ourselves as when we were younger. We ... in fact we've got the same friends as we had when we were children, same college and university friends, we still keep in touch with them and I would like to think that we're approachable so ... I would say it hasn't really spoilt or changed us. Yeah? I mean, clearly, in terms of luxuries in life one tends to sort of indulge oneself a little bit but not extraordinarily, I hope.
- B No way extravagantly, because if I could go on the train somewhere rather than the car, then I would. Er ... that sums up our, you know, approach to life, we really ... I would rather do some philanthropic work rather than waste money.
- I One final question. Young people starting out ... what sort of advice would you give to them?

V Shall I go first?

B Yeah do.

V Live your dreams. If you have an ambition go for it. Do not let little, small distractions or calamities stop you. Chase your dream and go for it and that's, that's exactly what I have done. That's where I would like to be a role model, for anybody who wants to be somebody tomorrow ... er ... to see what we have done and if I can touch one life, then my job in this life's done.

B Now what I would say is ... er ... with the dreams one needs a sl... dose of reality a lot of hard work and, as Vijay says, not to be set back by ... by any temporary kind of difficulties.

T 1.6

1 Eric

Many people think of my country as a great big, frozen land of ice, up north, with eskimos and red-coated policemen but it's obviously a very different country from that, eh. It's a bilingual country, 40% of the population has French as a mother tongue and it has a very dispersed population, but 90% of it lives in a small ribbon of land just 90 kilometres from the US border, eh. In fact probably one of the biggest concerns we have is the effect of US domination on our unique culture, because of TV, sports and such like. I think many of us have an inferiority complex relative to the US. Here in Europe, a lot of the time people think we're American, it's annoying.

2 Mary

So our stereotype is that we're miserable, mean and dour and unhappy with our lot and that we're a proud people, maybe quite nationalistic, especially in sport - we'll support any team that's playing against England. Maybe there's an element of truth in all of this. I mean you do meet people who are mean but far more you meet people who are generous. I saw a guy collapse in the street and folk were running out the shops and bringing him a chair, and a glass of water and things and d'you know if somebody collapses in London, folk'll step over them, assume they're drunk or whatever. Oh, and as for whether people are miserable, well I remember standing at a bus stop and it was a gorgeous sunny day, real blue sky, you know you don't see many days like that here, not very often. And I said to the woman next to me 'Isn't it a gorgeous day?' And she said 'Aye, but we'll pay for it!' And I thought how can you be so pessimistic when it's such a gorgeous day.

3 Julia

Ah well, I think we have a very, erm, well-deserved reputation for being loud, we are certainly very loud, erm, everywhere, it doesn't matter where we are, we just talk all at the same time and quite loud. And we're also very disorganised, erm, people believe that we are, and another thing that is well-deserved. Erm, what else, we're very lazy, erm, I don't think that is true, erm, we used to sleep our siestas er, but I think we're a bit more European now and we all have the same sort of timetables. Erm, and then well, we're sociable and outgoing, erm, we're always with other people, we're rar... rarely on our own, erm, we tend to do lots of things at the same time, and, that's also because, there are so many places and they open until late, erm, it's a bit more relaxed atmosphere than in England.

4 Zoltan

Most foreigners seem to think that all our dishes are spicy and really hot, which is not exactly true ... er ... we use quite a lot of paprika but it's not hot at all especially not when it's compared to Asian dishes for example. And also the other thing that people think of is ... er ... horses and ... er ... the great plains ... one in five live in Budapest which is a big city, and quite a lot of people live in smaller towns and smaller cities and not on the great plains at all and many ... would not have seen a horse in their whole lives.

5 Rosemary

Erm ... I think that there is a stereotype in the eyes of a lot of British. I think they consider them loud, they consider them in many cases arrogant. Remember they lost the rev... the revolutionary war, and they still have this attitude of being, 'we once ruled you'. And although that was two hundred years ago, I think there is still this attitude that they are the rebellious children, or the rebe... rebellious offspring of Great Britain. And -erm, I think it's, it's very silly as an attitude because I think there are, yes there are a lot, who are extremely narrow, they don't see beyond their border, they are very arrogant, but there are also an incredible amount who are very aware of what's goes on in the rest of the world.

6 Tristan

We're generally perceived as being quite cold and ... er ... really quite uptight as well and I know this from my own experience ... erm ... that they're perceived also as being somewhat hypocritical - two-faced, now I don't think that was in relation to me, I hope not anyway and I think now they also come across as incredibly yobbish, sort of heavy drinking, potentially violent, which is ... erm not entirely my experience.

T 1.7

- 1 A Where do you live?
B We've got a small flat. It's on the ground floor of a block of flats in the centre of town.
A Have you got a garden?
B No, we haven't, just a car park at the back.
- 2 A Where do you live?
B We have a small apartment. It's on the first floor of an apartment building downtown.
A Do you have a yard?
B No we don't, just a parking lot in the back.

T 1.8

- 1 A Do you have the time?
B Yeah, it's five of four.
A Did you say five after?
B No, five of four.
- 2 A What are you gonna do on the weekend?
B The usual stuff. Play soccer with the kids, and sweep the yard.
- 3 A Did you enjoy the game?
B Yeah, it was great, but we had to stand in line for half an hour to get tickets.
- 4 A Did you have a good vacation?
B Yeah, real good.
A How long were you away?
B Five days in all. Monday thru Friday.
- 5 A Can you mail this letter and package for me?
B Sure thing.
A And can you stop by the liquor store and buy a six-pack of Michelob and some potato chips?
B Is that all?
- 6 A Did you see *The Birds* on cable last night?
B Sure, even though I've seen it two times before.
A My third time. Isn't it just an awesome movie?
B Sure is. One of my favorites.
- 7 A Did they bring the check yet?
B Yeah. They just did. But I can't read a thing. It's lighted so badly in here.
- 8 A Do we need to stop for gas?
B Yeah, why not? I need to use the restroom, anyway.

T 1.9

- 1 A Have you got the time?
B Yeah, it's five to four.
A Did you say five past?
B No, five to four.
- 2 A What are you going to do at the weekend?
B The usual. Play football with my kids, and do a bit of gardening.
- 3 A Did you enjoy the match?
B Yeah, it was great, but we had to queue for half an hour to get tickets.

4 A Did you have a good holiday?

B Yeah, really good.

A How long were you away?

B Five days altogether. From Monday to Friday.

5 A Can you post this letter and parcel for me?

B Of course.

A And can you call at the off-licence and buy a six-pack of Stella and some crisps?

B Is that all?

6 A Did you watch *The Birds* on telly last night?

B I did, even though I've seen it twice before.

A My third time. Isn't it just a terrific film?

B It certainly is. One of my favourites.

7 A Have they brought the bill yet?

B Yeah. They just have. But I can't read a thing. The lighting is so bad in here.

8 A Do we need to stop for petrol?

B Yes, why not? I need to go to the loo, anyway.

Unit 2

T 2.1

- 1 What did you think of your brother's new girlfriend?
- 2 You've lost weight! What have you been doing?
- 3 When do we have to do that homework for?
- 4 Did you finish that crossword?
- 5 I've got nowhere to stay tonight.
- 6 What's wrong? You don't look very well.
- 7 The children look very guilty, don't they?
- 8 OK, that's it for today. Don't forget! The next meeting's Friday the 6th at 2.30.

T 2.2

- 1 What did you think of your brother's new girlfriend?
She's lovely. I got on with her very well.
- 2 You've lost weight! What have you been doing?
I've started working out every morning at the gym.
- 3 When do we have to do that homework for?
We have to hand it in on Friday.
- 4 Did you finish that crossword?
No, I gave up. It was too difficult.
- 5 I've got nowhere to stay tonight.
Don't worry. We'll put you up.
- 6 What's wrong? You don't look very well.
I feel dreadful. I think I'm going down with the flu.
- 7 The children look very guilty, don't they?
Yeah. I wonder what they've been getting up to?
- 8 OK, that's it for today. Don't forget! The next meeting's Friday the 6th at 2.30.
I'll put that down in my diary straight away.

T 2.3 LB = Lady Bracknell, J = Jack

- LB Do you smoke?
J Well, yes, I must admit I smoke.
LB I am glad to hear it. A man should always have an occupation of some kind. There are far too many idle men in London as it is. How old are you?
J Twenty-nine.
LB A very good age to be married at. I have always been of the opinion that a man who desires to get married should know either everything or nothing. Which do you know?
J I know nothing, Lady Bracknell.
LB I am pleased to hear it. I do not approve of anything that tampers with natural ignorance. Ignorance is like a delicate exotic fruit; touch it and the bloom is gone. What is your income?
J Between seven and eight thousand a year.
LB In land, or in investments?
J In investments, chiefly.
LB That is satisfactory.

- J I have a country house with some land, of course, attached to it, about fifteen hundred acres, I believe; but I don't depend on that for my real income. In fact, as far as I can make out, the poachers are the only people who make anything out of it.
- LB A country house! You have a town house, I hope? A girl with a simple, unspoiled nature, like Gwendolen could hardly be expected to reside in the country.
- J Well, I own a house in Belgrave Square.
- LB What number in Belgrave Square?
- J 149.
- LB The unfashionable side. Now to minor matters. Are your parents living?
- J I have lost both my parents.
- LB To lose one parent, Mr Worthing, may be regarded as a misfortune; to lose both looks like carelessness. Who was your father? He was evidently a man of some wealth.
- J I am afraid I really don't know. The fact is, Lady Bracknell, I said I had lost my parents. It would be nearer the truth to say that my parents seem to have lost me. I don't actually know who I am by birth. I was ... well, I was found.
- LB Found!
- J The late Mr. Thomas Cardew, an old gentleman of a very charitable and kindly disposition, found me, and gave me the name of Worthing, because he happened to have a first-class ticket for Worthing in his pocket at the time. Worthing is a place in Sussex. It is a seaside resort.
- LB Where did the charitable gentleman who had a first-class ticket for this seaside resort find you?
- J In a handbag.
- LB A handbag?
- J Yes, Lady Bracknell. I was in a handbag – a somewhat large, black leather handbag, with handles to it – an ordinary handbag, in fact.
- LB In what locality did this Mr. James, or Thomas, Cardew come across this ordinary handbag?
- J In the cloakroom at Victoria Station. It was given to him in mistake for his own.
- LB The cloakroom at Victoria Station?
- J Yes, The Brighton line.
- LB The line is immaterial. Mr. Worthing, I confess I feel somewhat bewildered by what you have just told me. To be born, or at any rate, bred in a handbag, whether it had handles or not, seems to me to display a contempt for the ordinary decencies of family life. As for the particular locality in which the handbag was found, a cloakroom at a railway station might serve to conceal a social indiscretion – has probably, indeed, been used for that purpose before now but it could hardly be regarded as an assured basis for a recognized position in good society.
- J May I ask then what you would advise me to do? I need hardly say I will do anything in the world to ensure Gwendolen's happiness.
- LB I would strongly advise you, Mr. Worthing, to try and acquire some relations as soon as possible, and to make a definite effort to produce at any rate one parent, of either sex.
- J I don't see how I could possibly manage to do that. I can produce the handbag at any moment. It's in my dressing-room at home. I really think that should satisfy you, Lady Bracknell.
- LB Me, sir! What has it to do with me? You can hardly imagine that I and Lord Bracknell would dream of allowing our only daughter – a girl brought up with the utmost care – to marry into a cloakroom, and form an alliance with a parcel! Good morning, Mr. Worthing!

T 2.4

I never set out to pinch anyone's bloke, let alone Nina's. The day it all started, picking up a bloke was the last thing on my mind. Even I don't go out on the pull in manky old combats and a sweater that's seen better days. All I was thinking of, on that drizzly

afternoon, was finding a cab home. Having started off in mist-like fashion, the drizzle had moved up a gear, as if it were thinking about turning into proper rain. At this point I was just up the road from Covent Garden, with drizzled-on hair and a jumper starting to smell of a wet Shetland sheep. That was when I saw Nina coming out of a smart little restaurant, with a bloke on her arm.

If I can misquote Jane Austen here, it is a truth universally acknowledged that if you are fated to bump into someone like Nina when you haven't seen her for four years, you will be looking like a pig's breakfast. While she will be looking like a *Sunday Times* fashion shoot in silk and cashmere. Only about six paces away, she was talking and laughing in her silver-tinkle way to the bloke, who was holding her umbrella up to stop her getting wet. The last time I'd seen her (at a wedding four years back) she'd had some tall, dark specimen in tow. Although everything about him was theoretically perfect, I hadn't been particularly impressed – to me he'd seemed just a bit plastic, somehow. I don't quite know what it was with this one – he wasn't classically good-looking, exactly, but the spark hit me at once!

T 2.5 See p26

T 2.6

- 1 She threw the ring into the bin with the rubbish.
- 2 Sorry we're late. We got behind a farmer with a herd of cattle in the lane.
- 3 We'll meet you outside the cinema at six o'clock.
- 4 Oh, how sweet of you to remember my birthday!
- 5 Speak up! I can't hear a word you're saying.
- 6 We saw some deer when we were walking in the mountains.
- 7 The cupboards are bare. We'll have to go shopping.
- 8 Those two are a right pair of troublemakers.
- 9 The children sat in orderly rows in the school hall.
- 10 Uncle Bill chews every mouthful of food twenty times.

Unit 3

T 3.1

Halico enjoyed a steady rise in profits in January. Unfortunately they fell dramatically in February, then picked up in March and April when they went up gradually. May saw profits shooting up, but then the company suffered a substantial decrease in June. In July and August profits increased slightly, then went up steadily in the early autumn months of September and October, before tumbling sharply in November. They then evened out in December.

T 3.2

Becom's sales began the year healthily, with January figures in the mid five thousand units a month. They dropped dramatically in February and March, plummeting to one thousand. Sales picked up slightly in April, then shot up in the early summer months of May and June, at the end of which period sales were peaking at six thousand five hundred a month. There was a bit of a downturn in July, when sales dropped by eight hundred, but then they remained stable in August and September. October saw a substantial decrease, down to three thousand, before sales picked up in the build-up to Christmas, rising steadily to end the year at four thousand five hundred.

T 3.3 I = Interviewer, PM = Prime Minister

- I We are very pleased to have with us in the studio tonight the Prime Minister. Prime Minister, we've been ...
- PM Good evening, Jeremy.
- I Good evening, Prime Minister. Er ... Prime Minister, we've been hearing endlessly in the media about the latest crisis that is facing your government.

PM May I just say straight away that this is not a crisis.

I Well, many people say ...

PM No, Jeremy, I think not ... polls distinctly show that the vast majority of the population strongly support us.

I With respect, Prime Minister, the poll I read only this morning in the *Daily Sun* ...

PM But surely you don't believe a word you read in the tabloid press. No – my government fully deserves every penny of their pay rise.

I Prime Minister, you can hardly argue the case for Members of Parliament voting themselves, ... yes, voting themselves a 40% pay rise when your government has offered nurses just 2.6%, teachers merely 1.7% and firefighters ...

PM Let me say that I greatly respect our public sector workers, they work hard and carry heavy responsibilities. However, MPs also work very conscientiously and carry burdens which are just as heavy. Also ...

I But, Prime Minister, how can you justify ...

PM If I can just finish, Jeremy. The fact is that this pay rise is much nearer 20% when you take into account the many expenses which all politicians regularly incur.

I Such as?

PM Well, you know, ... er ... travel – air and rail fares, an entertainment allowance, their personal secretaries, all of these highly necessary for any MP. You can't expect them to travel second class, eat in third-rate restaurants and do a first-class job. You know, Jeremy, the fact of the matter is ...

I The fact of the matter is, Prime Minister, that this pay rise is five times the rate of inflation, and lately you and your ministers have repeatedly urged workers to accept increases in line with inflation. It seems perfectly plain to me and many people that ...

PM Jeremy, Jeremy, let me explain. We set up an independent review body to look into ...

I As I understand it, Prime Minister, this so-called independent review body was made up of mainly Members of Parliament, who, with respect, can hardly be called independent.

PM Ah, but only MPs can appreciate the particular workload of a politician. And I have to tell you that the review concluded that the effectiveness of the nation's MPs is being severely hampered by lack of funds, and that their salaries are pathetically low compared to those people working in industry, banking and the like.

I And what about your own pay rise, Prime Minister? Is there any truth in the rumour that you will be getting a rise of 50%?

PM Ah now, Jeremy, I came on your programme to talk about MPs' salaries, my own salary is being reviewed separately and it will be reviewed fairly. And, as you know, I believe passionately in fair and just settlements for all working people and I include myself in that, Jeremy.

I Of course you do, Prime Minister. Prime Minister, thank you very much.

PM Thank you, Jeremy.

T 3.4 I = Interviewer, AR = Anita Roddick

Part one

I I wonder what it was in you that ... that enabled you to have that kind of feeling about what business should be.

AR I think it's what, I think what's ... gave this erm ... whole edge is that I was saved by not going to business school, by not doing the traditional route.

I That's a terrible condemnation of business school.

AR It is because I don't believe ... I believe they do an incredibly good job of developing people to understand financial science. You can't expect to

raise an entrepreneur in a business school. Entrepreneurs are usually erm ... outsiders. That's why immigrants, refugees make the best erm ... entrepreneurs. My parents were economic immigrants. Whether you had the ... you know ... the Jewish immigrants in the beginning of the century, or the Italian immigrants in the mid-century, or the Pakistani and the Bangladeshi, and the Indian ... or the Caribbean ... they all had ... they all dance to a different drum beat. They're not part of the system. They're outside the system. And when you're a young person, and you feel as an outsider ... 'cos we were the first Italians in this town. You were just braver because you didn't know any different. Business school ... would have polished my thinking into a much more disciplined way. Market, product development, finance, instead of saying 'Hey!', having a great idea, and thinking 'My God! If I make this idea really good, people will buy it from me, hopefully give me a profit.' And it became, it was a notion of trading, which ... entrepreneurs are manic traders. We're buyers and sellers ... you know. And all we want to do is go into the market place for feedback on our ideas. And all the money we make is of no interest to us. This is what upsets the financial journalists because we don't give a darn about money. We just want the money to oil the wheels, to see how far this idea could go. And many of us feel fraudulent, because ideas just come out of our head like er ... you know ... like a genie in the bottle. We vomit ideas. But we are terribly, terribly bad at managing.

I But as you ... but ... business needs, of course, all those other things ...

AR Of course it does.

I ... the structure, the management.

AR Yeah, but that ... it should be subservient. It's like ... you need to breathe to stay alive, and if you keep on concentrating, breathing in ... out, in out ... What a life you're going to have if you concentrate only on profits. You're going to have a business that's going to die within a nano second because it's more than the profit. It's just the avenue, the engine for making you develop other ideas, or to invest in other things. So, you know, for me business school has never been ... you know ... has never been the sacred ground for it. It's always 'Have an idea. Learn.' And the best business people, entrepreneurs are people who ask questions. You know, I don't want to be the biggest retailer, you know, in the world. I have no interest in that. I just want to be the most idiosyncratic, the wildest, the bravest.

Part two

Anita Roddick is asked what she sees as the big dilemmas in business these days.

AR You know, for me the big dilemma now in business is, are ... businesses ... businesses rule. That's the fact. Any institution ...

I Rule our lives?

AR Rule our lives.

I Rule the world?

AR Rule the world. I mean, you can forget politics, and you can forget religion, as being the two most, foremost institutions. Business institution now has, because it's so wealthy, because it is so creative in many ways, it controls government thinking, it controls political thinking. And it controls our health, our safety, it controls what we eat, controls what we think. And it's because this whole growth in the global economy, and which really means corporate global economy. So this growth in corporations, multinational corporations which are ... just bow down to nothing, no local laws, no national laws. They stop any environmental standards, any human rights standards if they deem it gets in the way

of trade. So they for me are the big enemy. So my messages now is 'Look for businesses that support local communities, because you keep the money in the local arena. Support local economic initiatives, support local farming, support local, anything local. And if we're working and trading internationally, let us trade with the grass roots. And let's trade in a way that is honourable. Let us pay living wages, and not slave ... slave wages. Let us be penalized if we have human rights abusers within the products that we make or sell.' People are standing up and challenging those big brand names because they don't like their business practices.

Part three

Anita Roddick has announced that she has no intention of leaving her children any money when she dies.

I You won't give your wealth, will you?

AR To them.

I To your children.

AR No.

I But in that mother role, shouldn't you be doing that?

AR No. One of the biggest criticisms from the media is that my wealth is not going to go to them. And 'Oh!' they say 'Oh! What do your kids think about it?' My kids say 'I don't want to even talk about this, 'cos it means that my mum's going to be dead.' And number two, well 'What have we got already? We've got great homes, we've got our work.' And they're not poor. I mean, but they also know that if there's ... if the wealth comes out at fifty or a hundred and fifty million quid, or whatever it is, what better thing to do than to give it away? What a great legacy, just you know with the building of the schools in Africa, the support of the community organisers, the human rights, this whole campaign I'm putting moneys into at the moment on the elimination of sweat shops and child labour and slave labour. I can't think of a better legacy. If all you're recognized for is the ability to accumulate money, then I think that is the next thing from being obscene. You know, the thing about wealth, it allows you to be generous. The sadness, one of the sadnesses about poverty, it doesn't allow you to be that.

T 3.5

- 1 We're in class learning English.
- 2 It's eight o'clock and time for a break.
- 3 I'm dying for a cup of coffee.
- 4 We've been in here for over an hour.
- 5 As a matter of fact, I think our teacher's asleep.
- 6 She doesn't understand that her English students are about to creep out.

T 3.6 See p36

T 3.7 See p36

T 3.8

- 1 A Could I have your first name, please?
B It's Marc. That's M - A - R, and then C for Charlie, not K for Kilo.
A And the surname?
B De Weck.
A Could you spell that for me?
B Yes. It's two words. First D - ...
A Is that T for Tango?
B No, D for Delta, and E for Echo. And then a separate word, WECK.
A Is that with a V for Victor?
B No, it's W for Whisky - E - C - K.
A And your name, please?
2 C It's Pilar Asajani.
C Could you spell the first name for me?
D It's P - ...
C B for Bravo?

- D No, P for Papa - I for India - L - A - R.
C OK ... Pilar. And your surname, please?
D Asajani. That's A - S ...
C Was that F for Freddie?
D No, it's A - S for Sierra - A, then J for Juliet - A - N for November, and I for India.
3 E ... And could I have the name of the other person who'll be driving the car?
F Yes, it's Ginny Dummet.
E Jimmy. You mean, J for Juliet - I - ...
F No, it's G for Golf - I - double N - ...
E Double M for Mike?
F No, double N for November, and Y.
E Was that I for India or Y for Yankee?
F Y for Yankee. And the surname is Dummet ...
D - ...
E D for Delta?
F That's right. D for Delta - U - double M for Mike - E - T.

Unit 4

T 4.1

- 1 A celebrity is a person who works hard all his life to become well known, and then wears dark glasses to avoid being recognized.
- 2 I don't want to achieve immortality through my work. I want to achieve it through not dying.
- 3 There is only one thing worse than being talked about, and that is not being talked about.
- 4 What goes up, must come down.
- 5 Winning isn't everything, but it sure as hell beats losing.
- 6 Whenever a friend succeeds, a little something in me dies.
- 7 Genius is one per cent inspiration, ninety-nine per cent perspiration.
- 8 If at first you don't succeed, try, try again.
- 9 Nothing succeeds like success.
- 10 Let me tell you about the rich. They are different from you and me.

T 4.2

All the A-list stars were there. That model, Angeline, I think it was Angeline, was there with her new boyfriend. They've been secretly going out for months. Oh, it was a glittering occasion. Stars everywhere and the crowds outside simply begging for autographs. I couldn't believe my eyes. And the dresses! I don't know how much they would have cost - a fortune, I imagine. All designer labels. The photographers were having a field day, and there were reporters everywhere, falling over each other to interview the biggest names. We didn't have the best seats, we were in the back row. We could still see everything. I was so busy star spotting that I didn't take in the plot. You'd have been the same. I'm not too keen on thrillers but it must have been good because at the end the whole audience rose to its feet and clapped. I'm not terribly sure what the story was about, but you really must go to see it when it's on general release. It was an amazing evening and to top it off we went to Quaglino's for supper afterwards and Sarah Jane Fox and Brad Brat were at the next table. How cool is that? Sarah Jane Fox has awful skin problems. Who cares about that when you've got that much money?

T 4.3

All the A-list stars were there. That model, Angeline, at least I think it was Angeline, was there with her new boyfriend. Apparently they've been secretly going out for months. Anyway, it was a glittering occasion. Stars everywhere and the crowds outside simply begging for autographs. Quite honestly I couldn't believe my eyes. And the dresses! I mean, I don't know how much they would have cost - a fortune, I imagine. All designer labels, naturally. The photographers were obviously having a field day, and of course there were reporters everywhere,

falling over each other so to speak, to interview the biggest names.

Admittedly we didn't have the best seats – as a matter of fact we were in the back row. Mind you, we could still see everything. Actually, I was so busy star spotting that I didn't take in the plot. No doubt you'd have been the same. To tell you the truth I'm not too keen on thrillers but it must have been good because at the end the whole audience rose to its feet and clapped. As I was saying, I'm not terribly sure what the story was about, but you really must go to see it when it's on general release.

All in all, though, it was an amazing evening and to top it off we went to Quaglin's for supper afterwards and guess what? Sarah Jane Fox and Brad Brat were at the next table. How cool is that? By the way, Sarah Jane Fox has awful skin problems. Still, who cares about that when you've got that much money!

T 4.4 A = Anna, B = Ben

- A Have you heard that Jan is thinking of marrying Paul?
 B Really? I don't know what she sees in him.
 A I know what you mean. Mind you, he is a millionaire.
 B Yes, I suppose having all that money does help.
 A Where did he get his money from?
 B Apparently, he made a fortune in I.T.
 A He's been married three times before. Did you know that?
 B Actually, it's just the once, I think.
 A I suppose they'll have a big wedding.
 B Of course they will. It'll be massive.
 A Oh, well. Good luck to them.
 B Absolutely. By the way, did you hear that Sara and Jeff had a car accident?
 A Oh no! What happened?
 B It wasn't serious. They skidded into a tree, but fortunately they weren't going fast. The car's a write-off, but at least no one was injured.
 A Thank goodness for that. I should get in touch with them, but I don't have their address.
 B As a matter of fact, it's in my diary. I'll give it to you.
 A Great. Thanks a lot. Anyway, I must be going. I'm meeting Jan for lunch.
 B Right. Nice to talk to you. Bye.

T 4.5 I = Interviewer, LM = Liza Minnelli

Part one

- I Now you know they wanted to keep it personal. It was the fourth marriage, after all. Just a few close friends. Elizabeth Taylor, Michael Jackson, Joan Collins, Martine McCutcheon. Coverage of the wedding of Liza Minnelli to David Gest has certainly been mesmerizing reading. While she honeymooned in London, Liza's returning to the London stage next Tuesday. After years of fighting alcohol and drug addiction, the problems which plagued her mother, Judy Garland, the appearance at the Royal Albert Hall marks something of a new chapter in her life. When I spoke to Liza as she was preparing for her concert, she told me how much she was looking forward to performing for a British audience.

[Song extract from Cabaret]

LM Oh, darling, this is truly my second home, and I'm crazy about so many people here. And the audiences in London are the very best in the world. You know, it's like a great tennis match to sing to people in London. They ... they know how to react.

I Why do you think of London as your second home?

LM Because I lived here so long when I was a kid, and er ... with my Mom, and my sister. And I went to school here. And my best friend was Katie Manning. I went to Miss Dixon and Miss Wolves' School for Young Ladies.

I Did you learn how to be a young lady?

LM Well, sort of. I mean ... I did my best.

I Now, you're on your honeymoon at the moment. How are you finding married life?

LM Oh, I'm loving it. I just ... I'm so happy. The world looks so beautiful to me right now. I've always found it beautiful, but it just ... now it's like the inside of a diamond. You know it, it sparkles and glitters, and I notice everything. It's just miraculous.

[Song extracts]

T 4.6 Part two

I We've certainly seen an awful lot of coverage about your wedding, all the people that were invited.

LM I'll say.

I Absolutely. Did it manage to still feel like a personal affair to you?

LM Yes, it did, because ... it's so funny but ... the people that were invited are the people that are our friends. And the fact that they just happen to be famous ... it's like if ... if somebody in shipping, you know, got married, they'd have a lot of people who had to do with boats, there. Right?

I Yeah, I think yours was a bit more glamorous, though, wasn't it? Than a shipping wedding?

LM Well, I don't know. We had a good time.

I There was also a bit of negative publicity around, that you had to deal with. Speculation about David's sexuality because of some reported remarks by ... by Elton John. How did you cope with all of that?

LM Well, you know Elton. I mean, you know, he was just kidding around. And Elton always talks on stage about the most newsworthy thing to say. And I guess we were the news that day, and er ... He did an Elton, that's all. It didn't bother us. I mean, he's hilarious.

I It was just an Elton. So you haven't fallen out with him over it?

LM Oh, no! I ... no! For goodness' sake! I know his sense of humour. He says that about everybody.

T 4.7 Part three

I Was it always expected, growing up in the way that you did, that you would follow in your mother's footsteps?

LM No. She was in the movies. I went directly to Broadway and made my mark. So while I ... you know, I went off to New York on my own at sixteen. Never took another cent from my family.

I Did your mother recognize your talent?

LM Oh, she was hilarious about it. She said 'Oh, for God's sake, just go and do what you want to do. I know there's no way I can stop you, so just be good at what you do.'

I And she must have been proud of you.

LM She was very proud of me. And so was my father. And they were so supportive, and funny, and, and loving. You know I ... sometimes I read this stuff that people write, and it's like ... they want it to have been hard. Sure it was hard, but I don't think it was any harder probably than yours.

I You clearly relish the performance in front of a live audience, but I have to say to you what I will always feel a sort of special recognition of is your film *Cabaret*, which ... er ... came out when I was a teenager. And you got us into a lot of trouble at school, because we went round saying 'Divinely decadent, darling!' and wearing green nail varnish. You got me expelled from gym class for wearing green nail varnish.

LM Oh, I'm sorry! But I hope you enjoyed it!

I Do you still look back at that film with fond memories?

LM Oh, my God yes, because ... you know ... Marisa Berenson is my dear, dear friend. She was one of my maids of honour with Elizabeth Taylor, who's ... I've also known since I was born, you know ... and erm ... There's so many people in that film that when ... we still stay in

touch. We were banished to, to ... er ... Berlin, and kind of left on our own. They didn't know what we were doing. I don't think anybody was ever so surprised as the studio when this came out and was a big hit.

I Can you still remember the songs? You couldn't give us a burst now!

LM Oh, darling! Which ones do you like?

I I like *Cabaret*.

LM Oh, you do, do you?

[Song extracts]

I The divinely decadent Liza Minnelli.

T 4.8

A Liza Minnelli is just fantastic! Her concert was amazing!

B It was, wasn't it? And she puts so much energy into her songs, doesn't she?

A Yes, she does. Who wrote that song about marriage, and the way it changes the world?

B She did. It's one of the few songs she ever wrote, actually.

A So she can write as well as sing, can she? What a talent! Did you like her costumes?

B Yes, I did. I thought they were fantastic. I've seen most of them before.

A Have you? I haven't. She's playing again tomorrow, isn't she?

B Yes, I think so. Let's go again, shall we?

A All right. She's one of the all time greats, Liza Minnelli is.

T 4.9

1 A You haven't seen my car keys, have you?

B No, I haven't. You had them this morning, didn't you?

A Yes, I did. If I can't find them, I'll be late for work, won't I?

B Panic over. Here they are!

A Well done. You're a star, you are!

2 A You didn't like that meal, did you? You were pushing it around the plate.

B No, I didn't. Well, it hadn't been cooked properly, had it? Your steak was all right, was it?

A Yes. It was fine. Let's get the bill and go home, shall we?

B OK. We won't be coming back here in a hurry, will we?

3 A You've forgotten the map, haven't you?

B Oh, dear. Yes, I have.

A But I put it next to the car keys.

B Well, I didn't see it, did I?

A You're blind, you are.

B Oh and you're perfect, are you?

T 4.10

1 Jeremy earns an absolute fortune!

He does, doesn't he?

Does he? I had no idea. How much?

So he's rich, is he? Well, well, well.

He's a rich man, Jeremy is.

2 Peter's new German girlfriend, Anna, is very beautiful.

Yes, she is.

Is she? She's not my type, actually.

So she's German, is she?

He's a lucky man, Peter is.

3 Jane and John are going to Florida on holiday.

They're so lucky.

They are, aren't they?

Are they? I wish I was going.

So they're going to Florida, are they?

They're lucky, Jane and John are.

4 Zidane played really well in the match on Sunday, didn't he?

He did, didn't he?

Did he? I didn't think so.

He's a great player, Zidane is.

5 Harrods is a great shop. You can buy everything there.

You can, can't you?

- Can you? I bet you can't buy a camel.
It's a wonderful shop, Harrods is.
I think our teacher is the best.
She is, isn't she?
Is she? I don't think she's as good as the one we had last year.
So you like her, do you?
She's a great teacher, Sylvia is.
Simon's a very experienced traveller. He's been everywhere.
He has, hasn't he?
Has he? I didn't realize.
He has, has he? I must ask him about it some time.
He's certainly been around, Simon has.

Unit 5

T 5.1 J = Jaap, M = Martine

- J Well, it was nearly twenty-five years ago now ...
M No, it was twenty-two.
J Oh, yes, twenty-two. And I was on holiday in Provence. A walking holiday. I'm from Holland - it's so flat - so the mountains here, here in Provence were irresistible, especially Mont Ventoux just here. It has wonderful walking trails.
M Yes, you see, I've lived in this village all my life. I was born here. Every day I've woken to the sight of the mountain rising up in front of the village. Every day it's the same, but a little bit different. It's so beautiful. The way the snowline ebbs and flows in the winter, or how the flowers cover the mountainside in spring. It's, it's entrancing.
J So, I was on holiday with a friend of mine, Rémi, and we'd walked to the summit of Mont Ventoux. It's a long climb, nearly five hours. We could see a village below us, a beautiful medieval perched village cascading down the hillside. It took us hours to reach it ... and by the time we did we were exhausted and very thirsty. So, the first house we came to I knocked on the door to ask for a glass of water, and ...
M Oh, I remember!
J ... and the most beautiful girl opened the door!
M Oh, Jaap!
J And I fell in love. On the spot. That was it! My friend returned to Holland on his own.
M It's true! Poor Rémi.
J But lucky me.
M It was so unexpected. See, I am an artist, a potter, so my friends always believed I would marry a creative man, another artist or a poet. And in a way I have. You see Jaap was a physics teacher when I met him. But I have taught him how to work with the potter's wheel, to throw the clay, work with the kiln. He learned so quickly and became an expert - perhaps his science background helped. Friends say my pottery improved the very day I met Jaap, and now we've worked together for over twenty years. He throws the pieces, and I hand paint them.
J The studio where we work is attached to the house, and we have a small shop next to that. Whether we're working or not, we always have the view of Mont Ventoux to inspire us. We never grow bored of that, or each other.

T 5.2

- I do do my homework immediately after class.
- What it was, was love at first sight.
- The thing most couples don't realize is how difficult married life can be.
- It's the parents I blame for badly-behaved kids.
- Not only are the values of society at risk but also the very survival of our nation is threatened.
- Only then did I understand what she meant.
- It was Sam that broke the blue vase!
- I won't marry anybody.

T 5.3

- A What's your favourite holiday?
B We like walking in Scotland.
1 A We like going skiing in Austria.
B What we like is walking in Scotland.
2 A What do you like doing on holiday?
B One thing we like is walking in Scotland.
3 A You like walking in Wales, don't you?
B Scotland is where we like walking.
4 A You like driving in Scotland, don't you?
B It's walking in Scotland we like.
5 A Don't you just hate walking in Scotland?
B Walking in Scotland is something we like.
6 A What do you like more than walking in Scotland?
B There's nothing we like more than walking in Scotland.

T 5.4

- What I can't stand about the Royal Family is that they're like a soap opera.
- What surprises me every time the Queen speaks is the way she pronounces her vowels.
- The thing that annoys me most about politicians is that they don't keep their promises.
- What we did after class yesterday was race home to watch the football match on TV.
- It's our teacher who knows all the answers.
- Something I've never told you is that I've been married before.
- What the government should do is come up with a better transport policy.
- Never in my life have I heard such a ridiculous story!

T 5.5

- A D'you know, when he left her, she threw all of his belongings out onto the street!
B You know what they say - hell hath no fury like a woman scorned.
- A They're back together again but their relationship's had a bumpy ride.
B You know what they say - the course of true love never did run smooth.
- A Go on then. I'll have one more. But that's the last one.
B You know what they say - a little of what you fancy does you good.
- A Good heavens! You? Going to cookery classes? You must be in love!
B You know what they say - the way to a man's heart is through his stomach.
- A But I don't want you to go off to Borneo for six months. How'll I survive?
B You know what they say - absence makes the heart grow fonder.
- A Ooh! Take your hands off my back! They're freezing!
B You know what they say - cold hands, warm heart.

T 5.6

Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?
Thou art more lovely and more temperate:
Rough winds do shake the darling buds of May,
And summer's lease hath all too short a date:
Sometime too hot the eye of heaven shines,
And often is his gold complexion dimmed,
And every fair from fair sometime declines,
By chance, or nature's changing course untrimmed;
But thy eternal summer shall not fade,
Nor lose possession of that fair thou ow'st,
Nor shall death brag thou wander'st in his shade,
When in eternal lines to time thou grow'st;
So long as men can breathe, or eyes can see,
So long lives this, and this gives life to thee.

T 5.7

P1 = Presenter 1, P2 = Presenter 2,
O = Olive, B = Bob

- P1 But as a matter of fact it'll be a rather sad St Valentine's Day for Olive Hodges. She's reached the remarkable age of 102 and she had been looking forward to her 77th wedding anniversary this year. Sadly her husband Fred died at the weekend but she told our reporter Bob Walker about their long relationship. Their first meeting was a brief one during the First World War. Their courtship began later after a chance meeting in a park.
O He was seventeen and a half at that time and six months later he was called up into the army. Er ... There were many people who died, were killed by his side, he came through without a scratch. It was a miracle really.
Then just after the armistice when we were in the park and there was a band on a, on Sunday afternoon. This young man walked by and raised his hat then he went back and raised his hat, and he did this about six times. And I was very amused but I said to my friend, well, if he goes by again, I'll put him out of his misery. So the next time he went by I made some small remark to him and he came along and talked to us. He used to come round and call for me to go for a walk so we were going for a walk one evening and he said 'I should like to marry you but I don't have any money.' And I said, 'Well we can wait.' I didn't see any need for a hurry and that was it.
B What was the secret of such a long and happy marriage?
O Well, we loved one another so intently and our, our attitude was that we wanted to make the other one happy.
B Now you were married almost 77 years. That's right? Was your love for each other as strong right up to the end?
O I think it was stronger. He didn't want to leave me and I didn't want to leave him. He wanted me with him all the time. I was pleased to be with him for that matter and he was always asking me if I still loved him as much as I used to and I had a job to reassure him that I did love him, but [laughs] he really loved me so much.
P2 Oh - what can you say? That was Olive Hodges.

T 5.8 See p54

T 5.9 See p54

Unit 6

T 6.1

- I must confess I don't buy a newspaper every day. When I do buy one, it tends to be *The Guardian*. It's well written, and it doesn't have a predictable political bias. It also has a crossword that is exactly the right level of difficulty for me.
- I get *The Independent* every day, and *The Observer* on Sundays. They're the only newspapers I trust. They don't have the obvious political affiliations of some of the other dailies, they seem relatively impartial. They have interesting sections. I listen to the news all day long, so I tend to like the feature sections of newspapers rather than the news reporting. *The Independent* has good coverage of the arts - exhibitions, shows, concerts, reviews.
- I get *The Mail*. It's pretty light-weight and readable. I find the broadsheets a bit too wordy for me. *The Mail* has articles on health, fashion, film stars, diets. I don't like its politics, however. It's a real right-wing rag. Anti-Europe, xenophobic, homophobic. I sometimes wonder why I buy it.

- 4 I'm a bit of a newspaper junkie. I read *The Sun*, *The Mirror*, *The Times*, and *The Financial Times*. I like to get a broad spectrum. *The Sun* tells me what's happening to celebs. *The Mirror* presents the left-wing conscience. *The Times* has some good features. And *The Financial Times* helps me with my investment portfolio.
- 5 I get *The International Herald Tribune*. It provides a good viewpoint of foreign affairs around the world. And it keeps me in touch with the States. I also get to find out what's happening in Major League Baseball, and see how my team the Yankees are faring.

T 6.2

Here is the news at eight o'clock.

News is coming in of an earthquake in southern China. Five hundred people are believed to have died, with over two thousand injured. International rescue teams have arrived in the area, and a huge humanitarian operation is underway. The earthquake is reported to have been 6.4 on the Richter scale. A Monet painting has been stolen from the Louvre museum in Paris. Thieves are thought to have hidden themselves while the museum was closing, then escaped through a skylight. The painting is said to be worth \$50 million. The crisis over rising house prices seems to be settling down. Interest rates fell a further half a per cent last month. Government sources said that it is hoped that prices will level out to an overall rise of five per cent over the last twelve months.

T 6.3 I = Interviewer, SW = Simon Winchester

Part one

- I You've been described as a foreign correspondent of the more adventurous sort. Do you think that does you justice?
- SW I ... it's a very flattering thing to say. I think what probably was meant by that is that I really don't like pack journalism. I'm ... I'm not in the slightest bit interested in television, or waving a microphone in somebody's face. I ... very much, you know, the man standing under the shadows of the bridge with the notebook in his hand and trying to be inconspicuous, and listening and observing. But going alone to unusual places. I think I find the off-beat more interesting. And although I was a White House correspondent for quite a long time, and so very much was in the thick of things during for instance the Watergate affair, with Nixon's resignation, generally speaking I have a happier time, I think, a more fulfilling time personally when I was based in India, with a patch to cover from Tehran to Bangkok, so wandering really in some of the most exotic countries in the world.
- I Is that something that you relish, that kind of exotic, slightly unknown, almost dangerous side to it?
- SW I've never made a particular virtue out of danger. I mean, I've covered a reasonable number of wars and skirmishes and things. But remote interests me. Remote islands and islands' people are fascinating. So I do ... I tend to have been to nearly all the really strange, off-beat places.

Part two

- I Could you talk to me a little bit about how you think the foreign correspondent's role has changed during your career ... whether they operate differently now to perhaps how they did when you began?
- SW Well, a lot of things have changed ... the most notable is the general public's lack of interest in things foreign. It used to be, I think, as ... because of the residual, the sort of echoes of Empire ... Britain particularly ... in British newspapers, always had a very keen interest in the far away. That's not true any more, I think. And you look at foreign pages in newspapers

and they've shrunk savagely. *The New York Times* is more or less alone in maintaining a really strong collection of foreign correspondents. But even their editors acknowledge that foreign is an expensive luxury. Most readers aren't particularly interested. So it's changed in that degree in that the budgets are smaller, and foreign correspondents are much more constrained by not being able to spend the way they could. Secondly I think television has taken over to my way of thinking in far too ... far too obvious a way, and that er ... the man or woman looking for the ... exotic, the faraway, the small story, the little essay which actually does illuminate brilliantly the inner workings of some distant place. There's no time for that because television leads the charge, television makes the story ... We've lost the ability, the willingness, the interest to paint the subtleties of foreign ... We go in ... the blazing TV lights ... for a short time, and then we go on to the next story. So the subtlety of abroad has disappeared, in terms of newspapers.

- I How did you use to approach that sort of situation?
- SW Well, I worked for *The Guardian* ... in those days the foreign editor was keen to ... it almost encouraged you to ... to look behind the story, to leave the main story to the agencies. So I used to like doing that sort of thing. Nowadays you can't.
- I So is it the journalists' fault, or is it some sort of editorial control? Is it editors trying to satisfy budgets and political erm ... ?
- SW Yes, I mean it's not the journalists' fault, I don't think. I mean, newspapers have become much more market-driven, and less of a public service. Erm ... *The Guardian* seeks to make money, to increase its circulation, to outdo *The Independent*. And to do that it's got to spend its money, such as it has, in a more focused way. And that might mean more fashion coverage, or more social issues in England. And my friends who remain foreign correspondents now are not the sort of happy bunch that we were then.
- I Do they feel their hands are tied?
- SW Well, yes I think so. Newspapers particularly in their coverage of foreign have changed mightily, and in my view not for the better.
- I Do you think tabloid journalism has had anything to do with that? That sort of seeking out of sensationalism, and the ephemeral nature of the stories? Has that tarred all journalists with the same brush?
- SW No, I don't think that tabloid journalism has got much to do with it. I think the dominant reason for the change is television and budgets.
- I What have you personally got out of your career as a journalist?
- SW Enormous excitement, thousands of experiences, the years rushing past. It all does add up to a fascinating life.

T 6.4

- 1 A Guess what! I won £5 million on the lottery!
- B You're kidding! Really? That's amazing!
- 2 A My grandfather died last week.
- B Oh, no! I'm so sorry to hear that. You were very close, weren't you?
- 3 A One of my students told me I was a lousy teacher.
- B What a cheek! I hope you told him where to get off.
- 4 A Here we are! Home at last.
- B Thank goodness for that. I thought we'd never make it.
- 5 A I'm broke since I bought all those designer clothes.
- B Tough. It's your own fault. Serves you right.
- 6 A Have you heard that Jim's leaving to go to another job?
- B Good riddance. He was always useless.

- 7 A I missed the last bus and had to walk home. I didn't get home till midnight.
- B What a drag! You must have been really fed up.
- 8 A When I get a job, I'm going to be a millionaire. I'll have three houses and ten cars.
- B In your dreams. Fat chance you have of being able to afford a caravan and a bike.
- 9 A I'm going on holiday to Barbados for two weeks with my girlfriend.
- B Nice one! Can I come too?
- 10 A My six-year-old daughter painted me a picture for Father's Day.
- B Bless her! Isn't that sweet?
- 11 A I'm fed up with revising. Let's go out for a beer.
- B Now you're talking! A cold beer'd go down a treat.
- 12 A Susan says she never wants to see you again.
- B So what? I don't care. I wouldn't go out with her if she were the last person on earth.
- 13 A My team lost again last weekend.
- B Where's the surprise? They lose every weekend. They're rubbish.
- 14 A Dad, I'm going to an all-night party. Is that OK?
- B Over my dead body. You've only just turned twelve. No way!

T 6.5

- 1 My sister's been married seven times.
- 2 My dog died last night.
- 3 My teenage daughter told me she thought I was boring, stupid, and old-fashioned.
- 4 When I told little Katie that her grandma had gone to heaven, she asked when we could visit!
- 5 One day I'm going to be a famous film star, just you watch.
- 6 I can't come out tonight. My dad says I have to do my homework and tidy my room.
- 7 My girlfriend has dumped me! All because I said girls were stupid.
- 8 Dad, I know you don't like Malcolm, but I love him and I'm going to marry him.
- 9 I failed the exam because I overslept and missed half of it.
- 10 After last week's argument, my flatmate's decided to leave.
- 11 We've been given an extra week to hand in our essays.
- 12 My parents bought me a new car for my birthday.
- 13 How would you feel about going to the cinema this evening, then out for a pizza?
- 14 I'm going to tell the teacher what you said.

T 6.6

- 1 A Pete. I crashed your car. Sorry.
- B Great. That's all I needed. Thank you very much.
- 2 A When you come on Saturday, we're going to have an ice-cream.
- B Ooh! How exciting. I can't wait.
- 3 A You know that guy Parkinson, the millionaire? Apparently he's been sent to prison for tax evasion.
- B Well, ain't that a shame! My heart bleeds for him.
- 4 A I have finally understood how this machine works.
- B You're so clever, you are. I don't know how you kept it secret for so long.

Unit 7

T 7.1 See p64

T 7.2

We have called you Daniel Patrick, but I've been told by my Chinese friends that you should have a Chinese name as well and this glorious dawn sky makes me think we'll call you Son of the Eastern Star. Your coming has turned me upside down and inside out. So much that seemed essential to me has, in the past few days, taken on a different colour. Like many foreign correspondents I know, I have lived a life that, on occasion, has veered close to the edge: war zones, natural disasters, darkness in all its shapes and forms. In a world of insecurity and ambition and ego, it's easy to be drawn in, to take chances with our lives, to gamble with death. Now, looking at your sleeping face, listening to your occasional sigh, I wonder how I could have ever thought glory and prizes were sweeter than life.

And it's also true that I am pained, perhaps haunted is a better word, by the memory, suddenly so vivid now, of each suffering child I have come across on my journeys. To tell you the truth, it's nearly too much to bear at this moment to even think of children being hurt and abused. And yet, looking at you, the images come flooding back. Ten-year-old Andi Mikail on a hillside in Eritrea, how his voice cried out, when the wind blew dust on to his wounds. The two brothers, Domingo and Juste, in Menongue, southern Angola. Juste, two years old and dying from malnutrition, being carried on seven-year-old Domingo's back. And Domingo's words to me, 'He was nice before, but now he has the hunger.'

Last October, in Afghanistan, when you were growing inside your mother, I met Sharja, aged twelve. Motherless, fatherless, guiding me through the grey ruins of her home, everything was gone, she told me. And I knew that, for all her tender years, she had learned more about loss than I would understand in a lifetime. There is one last memory, of Rwanda, where, in a ransacked classroom, I found a mother and her three young children huddled together. The children had died holding on to their mother, that instinct we all learn from birth and in one way or another cling on to until we die.

T 7.3 See p65

T 7.4

1 Elaine

This is something my father said to me the night before I got married and I always keep coming back to it. Dad said 'You know there are only three things in life of real importance - there's love, there's home, and there's work ... and as long as two out of the three are OK you can deal with the third one. But lately I've been thinking that love and home are so intertwined it's a bit tricky, isn't it?'

2 Lizzie

Actually this is something my ex-husband always said - he was quite a nice guy really ... er ... whenever we had a friend who irritated or annoyed us in some way, ... er ... someone who maybe was mean or who never listened and was always full of themselves and their own goings-on etcetera he, my ex, always said that before you cast people off and out of your lives you should allow them three faults. That way you get to keep most of your friends. Errm - I don't know what that says about our relationship - obviously there were a lot more than three faults on both sides!

3 Justin

This is an everyday piece of advice from me to me - something I've learnt from bitter experience - never go shopping in the supermarket when you're hungry! Always go shopping on a full stomach. It's absolutely fatal if you don't - you spend a fortune,

get fat, and end up with loads of stuff in your fridge and cupboards that goes past its sell-by date!

4 Claire

Before I left Canada to work and travel in Europe, my grandmother told me that travel is the best education next to books and, well, that was something her mother told her when she was young. She also loved to travel and, you know, she was actually in England during the Second World War.

5 Henry

Oh my granpa is a real misery guts. And if ... er ... if me and my brothers ever get excited or happy about anything, like we're really looking forward to going on holiday or watching a football match, every time he says the same thing: 'Watch it boys - just remember it's better to travel hopefully than arrive.' Just how miserable is that? And we say 'Well, actually granpa when our team wins, it's better to have arrived!' D'you know I think the only thing that makes him happy is being miserable. How sad is that? I'm not going to be like that when I'm old.

6 Simon

Well, I think the words of wisdom I remember most are from my mother who was a hippy in the 1960s and she said 'always follow your heart especially with freedom and love.' And there we are.

7 Fiona

I remember my grandmother saying to me - I can't remember what exactly it was about, I was depressed about something, I was just a kid, and she said to me 'This too will pass.' I dunno something had happened at school, whatever, and she was just saying 'don't worry too much about it, it'll be over soon, it'll be a memory and this too will pass.' And I thought that was a really good way of looking at things - you know bad things - they do pass, but I think it's also true of good things. It's important to make the most of good things 'cos they too will pass. It's a good piece of wisdom, don't you think?

8 Chris

Well, these are not really words of wisdom, these are letters of wisdom, I suppose. The letters are WP, which stand for ... er ... willpower, which is something my grandmother repeats at regular intervals, mainly, it has to be said, to my grandfather. Basically she means that with willpower you can pretty much achieve anything, so if at first you don't succeed, keep persisting and eventually you'll get there. WP, WP!

9 Sue

Well something my mum used to say a lot is when I was younger - it's a little proverb I think and it's ... er ... 'Love many, trust a few, always paddle your own canoe.' And that's something I've remembered all my life and I suppose in a way I stick to it without really realizing that I am.

10 Martyr

It comes from an American actor friend of mine. He said this to me, I guess about 15 years ago, he just said 'Martyr, dust it off!' And 'dust it off' essentially just means 'don't dilly-dally, just DO it.'

T 7.5

'You are old, Father William,' the young man said,
'And your hair has become very white;
And yet you incessantly stand on your head.
Do you think, at your age, it is right?'

'In my youth,' Father William replied to his son,
'I feared it might injure the brain;
But, now that I'm perfectly sure I have none,
Why, I do it again and again.'

'You are old,' said the youth, 'as I mentioned before,
And have grown most uncommonly fat;
Yet you turned a back somersault in at the door -
Pray what is the reason of that?'

'In my youth,' said the sage, as he shook his grey locks,
'I kept all my limbs very supple
By the use of this ointment - one shilling the box -
Allow me to sell you a couple!'

'You are old,' said the youth, 'and your jaws are too weak
For anything tougher than suet;
Yet you finished the goose, with the bones and the beak
Pray, how did you manage to do it?'

'In my youth,' said his father, 'I took to the law,
And argued each case with my wife;
And the muscular strength which it gave to my jaw,
Has lasted the rest of my life.'

'You are old,' said the youth, 'one would hardly suppose
That your eye was as steady as ever;
Yet you balanced an eel on the end of your nose -
What made you so awfully clever?'

'I have answered three questions, and that is enough,'
Said his father, 'Don't give yourself airs!
Do you think I can listen all day to such stuff?
Be off, or I'll kick you downstairs!'

T 7.6 See p68

Unit 8

T 8.1

1 I suppose it's the eyes, really that first drew my attention. Not only are they the most extraordinary shade of deep, dark green, they also show how frightened she is. The photo was taken in 1985 by a guy called Steve McCurry, and it was the beginning of yet another war in Afghanistan. This girl had lost her parents and grandparents, she was living in a refugee camp, and the photographer just caught her as she was coming out of her tent. You can see the dust on her face and the torn clothes, and her face is slightly at an angle. It made a real impact on me, that photograph.

2 It was one of the first examples I came across of modern sculpture and I didn't really expect to like it. I think it's the combination of strength and gentleness which struck me most. All the lines of the mother's body are flowing, curved and soft. Yet the shoulders and arms surrounding the baby look big and strong, like a protective shield. I think it is a very accurate portrayal of motherhood, especially now that I have children of my own. I know what that fierce protectiveness towards your baby feels like.

3 From a distance it looks like a huge, white upturned fishing boat and when you get closer that's exactly what it is like - the sides curve upwards and seem to be made of white wooden slats. And, at regular intervals, along the sides, are long rectangular portholes, the windows, like long curved, glassed-in ladders. Inside, despite all the usual departure boards, shops, restaurants and the like, it still feels like a boat - long escalators transport you up to the ridge at the top and you walk out onto the platforms. It's visually stunning, and it all seems brilliantly suited to high-speed travel.

4 When I heard about all the fuss surrounding this art work I was curious to see it and when I did, my first thought was, 'God, she's messy!' The bed was unmade, the sheets dirty, there was all sorts of rubbish - cups, plates, magazines strewn everywhere. It was pretty revolting, really - particularly in a nice, clean, white gallery. Then my second thought was, 'Well, it's interesting, but I mean, what if someone sneaked in and made the bed while nobody was looking?' Would it still be art?

5 The first thing that strikes is the serenity. There is a feeling that this scene has lasted forever and will continue to last forever. It's very peaceful - Parisians out enjoying themselves on a Sunday afternoon. The people appear to be frozen in

time. There is very little movement in the picture. The other thing that greatly interests me is the dappling of light through the leaves. When I first saw this picture, it was a moment of profound delight.

T 8.2 1 = Interviewer,
JD = Joe Dudley Downing

Part one The early years

- I Joe, have you always known that you wanted to paint?
- JD No, no not by any means. I had no knowledge of art until I was twenty-two ... er ... twenty-three years old. I grew up in ... er ... very rural area, in Kentucky, a village of only a thousand people. The village of Horse Cave ... er ...
- I Sorry?
- JD Yeah, Horse Cave, Kentucky ... and there were no paintings of any kind in Horse Cave. No good paintings, no bad paintings ... er ... just no paintings, but what there was, was an immense amount of beauty. We had a farm and there were seven children but it was beautiful, there was nothing ugly in the house. We slept under the most beautiful patterned quilts, made by my mother and aunts and ... er ... cousins ... er ...
- I So ... so, was your family quite artistic then?
- JD No, no that word couldn't apply to them - but they knew beautiful things, not just the quilts. I remember my mother calling me when she was shelling the beans that come in the fall, they were veined like marble, ... er ... blue, pale purple, you know, very, very beautiful and I remember her calling me and turning the beans in her hands in the sunlight and saying: 'Look, look at the colours!'
- I So, is it ... erm ... an idyllic childhood then?
- JD Well, except that at eighteen years old I was yanked out of my lovely country bumpkin life and thrown into the war - the Second World War and ... er ... I landed in France ... er ... had my nineteenth birthday in France, in Normandy, then we were sent to the front and I was engaged in the last year of the war in Germany and of course war ... er ... that really changes you.
- I Yes, yes, I can imagine, and did you stay in France after the war?
- JD ... er ... no, no I went back to America, to Chicago to study to be an optometrist.
- I An optometrist? How ... er ... ?
- JD Well, I had no real desire to be anything and I had to study something, but I loved Chicago. It's an enormously vital city. It was like a second birth for me to be plunged into city life - big city life and I met people, - writers, painters, interesting people, and early on, one of them took me to the museum in Chicago, which is just extraordinarily rich and beautiful and there ... er ... I was twenty-three - and having never seen a painting in my life, I stood in front of *La Grande Jatte*, by Georges Seurat and ... er ...
- I Oh, yes, isn't that Sunday afternoon on the banks of the Seine in Paris?
- JD Yeah, yeah - and to stand in front of *La Grande Jatte*, one of the most extraordinary paintings that ever existed, having never seen a painting before, was for me a remarkable experience. It reshaped my whole life.
- I So without that ... er ... you might never have become an artist?
- JD No - I don't think so really because I would eventually have gone to some museum and seen some painting. ... I think.
- T 8.3** Part two On being a painter
- I But your painting is in an abstract style - not like Seurat - have you always painted like that?
- JD Oh, no, no in the beginning I didn't ... er ... er

... I didn't want to be an abstract painter but you must follow your bent or you're in trouble. You must forever follow where the painting leads you ... er ... more than you lead the painting. But ... erm ... in the beginning I did ... erm ... landscapes and still life, I love still life, I still love still life - and I did some portraits, perhaps two or three were worth saving! And then it started to become abstract.

- I And your studies? The, erm, optometry?
- JD No, no ... er ... oh no ... I went back to France, to Paris and for seven years, in order to keep the pot boiling, I worked as a secretary for an American law firm and I was careful to be a good secretary so that they gave me some free time and I started doing collages and these were abstract. I did collages occasionally for four or five years and I think they became the foundation ... er ... for my whole painter's life.
- I So when you look back you can identify different stages in your painting?
- JD I've had, I guess, three, in retrospect. I've had three major exhibitions at different stages, the first in 1968 - and when you look back you can see a very strong thread, what the French call a *fil conducteur*, and that remains the same, but the style changes slowly and constantly and if it doesn't, a painter should be worried, because if it doesn't change, you'll wither.
- I And when you look back have you any regrets about the way your work has evolved?
- JD Oh no, no - you must do what your nature tells you to otherwise and ... er ... I've been enormously fortunate. Anyone who writes, who paints, who composes, any kind of artist knows how fragile it is - at any moment desire, the desire to do it can go.
- I I've noticed that one of the materials you work with, paint on, is leather, erm, small, small strips of leather. How did this come about?
- JD It's almost too ridiculous to tell. Erm ... I was having dinner with friends and ... er ... an Italian friend from Milan had brought as a gift, a pasta-making machine and in order to show how the machine worked, she made green lasagne for dinner. And ... it was so beautiful coming out of the machine - it was pale green and the ... the flour made little valleys and mountains. It was just beautiful, velvety-looking and I said 'I'm sorry it's going to look like I'm showing off, but I really must paint on this'. So I made a tiny little landscape, a little rectangular painting on the lasagne, one for everybody at the table, including me, and at the end of dinner we all carefully took them home. And ... er ... the next day the phone rang and it was my friend and she was crying and I said 'Why are you crying?' and she said 'Well, haven't you seen your lasagne this morning?' So I ran to the kitchen and of course it had yellowed and cracked ...
- I Ugh!
- JD ... it looked awful, sick. So I said to my friend 'Look, quit crying. I'll find something that looks like green lasagne and I'll make you another painting'. So I spent two years looking and finally I came across that pale green leather that they use for making gardeners' gloves and I made her a little painting. And it was just wonderful!
- I It's a wonderful tale - it's a wonderful technique.
- JD Yes, and so the leather work began another stage in my painting. A new door opened.
- T 8.4** Part three On living in the South of France
- I I know you now live most of the time here in the village of Ménerbes, way south of Paris. How long have you lived here?
- JD I've been here thirty-three years.
- I It must have changed a lot in that time.

JD Erm ... yes and for the worse unfortunately ... but that's true anywhere there's sunshine and olives and Roman tiles!

JD This was, still is really, an agricultural village - they grow extraordinary asparagus, beautiful asparagus. It starts now, in March - after that there are cherries, peaches, peppers, and melons ... they're famous for the melons so they really didn't need tourism. Of course, ... er ... I know that's ridiculous and selfish and mean to want to enjoy the extraordinary beauty of this place and want others not to come ... but it would be terrible to destroy the perfume of this place, a place I've loved.

I And how did you discover it all those years ago?

JD Well, every summer when I was living in Paris, and ... er ... I can't drive ...

I Really? How do you get about?

JD Oh, I just don't go anywhere. Anyways ... every year, in summer, a friend, she would drive us down south, to the sea to swim ... and one time we got down not far from here and she said 'I'm tired of lugging you two around. I do all the driving. This is a beautiful little place, let's stop and spend the night!'. So there was a charming little hotel, gone now unfortunately, er ... very pleasant. Next morning I got up much earlier than the others and ... er ... went out into the village and ... er ... there was a little dog, a young hunting dog and he started up a hill and I followed him and he brought me by, what is now, a house, and a farmer was sitting there and he'd written in the top of a shoe box, with a piece of chalk, he'd written 'RUINS FOR SALE' and so ... er ... I asked him how much he was asking and it was the only thing that I'd ever come across that we could afford to buy in the sun. So, ... er ... on the spot, I asked to buy it and it was very inexpensive 'cos it was total ruins, open to the sky, it'd been empty for thirty years. It took us four years before we could sleep here. So, anyway I went back to breakfast at the hotel and told them we all had a house! So that's the way it happened.

I So you're back in a rural setting again?

JD Yes, in a way it's odd that I should end up in a place that resembles so much where I grew up. Another farming community. Ménerbes has the same number of people as Horse Cave and the people even look the same.

I A home from home then. And just finally, and this, this is a big question. If you could live your life again would you do anything differently?

JD No, no - oh well ... I think I might skip a war ... but otherwise - no.

T 8.5 Conversation B

A Hi, Annie! I haven't seen you for ages.

B I know. Time flies, doesn't it?

A It's true. Work as busy as ever, is it?

B Yes, I'm slaving away as usual, but we're a bit snowed under at the moment. We're just about keeping our heads above water, but it isn't easy. How about you?

A OK. Business was bad this time last year, and we really had to tighten our belts, but things have picked up since then. You've moved, haven't you? Where are you living now?

B We've bought an old house in a sleepy little village. You must come and visit us.

A I'd love to, but we're a bit tied up at the moment. Does it need much doing to it?

B Everything. I hope we haven't bitten off more than we can chew.

A You'll be fine. Anyway, I must dash. Lovely to see you again.

B And you. Bye.

T 8.6

- A I hear Pete's aunt left him everything.
 B Absolutely right, he inherited a fortune out of the blue.
 A He knew nothing about it then? How exciting!
 B You bet! When he heard about it, he was over the moon.
 A So what's his problem now?
 B Well, he's in deep water because he spent the whole lot in a month and then his girlfriend walked out on him.
 A You're kidding. I thought he'd asked her to marry him?
 B He was going to ask her, and then he got cold feet.
 A So what next?
 B Looks like he'll have to pull his socks up and get a job.
 A And a new girlfriend. What about that girl he used to work with? Mm... Miranda, Marilyn – no, that's not it, erm, her name's on the tip of my tongue.
 B You mean Melissa. Whatever you do, don't mention Melissa! She told him he was a waste of space, money or no money.
 A Oh dear, I'm glad you told me, otherwise I might have put my foot in it.

T 8.7 A = Amy, S = Seth

- A Ugh! This hotel is horrible. I wish we hadn't come here. I've never seen such a dirty hotel in my life! It wouldn't be so bad if the bathroom was clean, but it's filthy. I wouldn't even wash my socks in it.
 S I know, but it was getting late, and we'd been driving all day, and I wanted to stop. If we hadn't, we might not have found a hotel and we'd still be driving. That would have been awful. At least this is better than nothing.
 A Well, I wish we'd set off earlier. Then we could have arrived in London today, and we'd have had a whole day to go round the galleries and museums. As it is, we won't get there till tomorrow lunchtime, and we'll only have a few hours.
 S I'd have liked to spend more time in London, too, but I had to go to work this morning. If I hadn't, we'd be staying in a top London hotel now instead of this dump.
 A I'd love to have seen a show, but we can't, so that's all there is to it. Anyway, it's time we thought about getting something to eat. If it weren't so late, I'd suggest going into town, but if we did, we might not find anywhere. It's quite late already.
 S I wish you wouldn't moan about everything. I wouldn't mind, but you're so indecisive. If it were left up to you, we'd never do anything or go anywhere.
 A OK, OK. I'm sorry. Let's go.

T 8.8

- a 1 Can you help me?
 2 Could you help me?
 3 I wonder if you could help me?
 4 I was wondering if you could possibly help me! I'd be very grateful.
 b 1 Do you mind if I open the window?
 2 Would you mind if I opened the window? It's so stuffy in here.
 c 1 I want to speak to you.
 2 I wanted to have a word with you, if that's all right.
 d 1 Dye it black.
 2 You could dye it black.
 3 If I were you, I'd dye it black.
 4 I'd have thought the best idea would have been to dye it black, but it's up to you.

T 8.9

- 1 A I'd like to book a table, please.
 B Certainly. What name was it?
 2 A How old's Peter?

- B I would think he's about 60.
 C I'd say he's about 65.
 D I'd have thought he was nearer 70.
 3 A I was wondering if you'd like to go out tonight?
 B Mmm! What were you thinking of?
 A I thought we could try that new pasta place.
 4 A What time will we be setting off on Monday?
 B I was thinking of leaving about 8.30.
 A Don't you think we should leave a bit earlier to avoid the rush hour?
 B That'd be fine.

T 8.10

- 1 Would you mind if I used your phone?
 2 If I were you, I wouldn't paint the wall red.
 3 Wouldn't it be better if we went in my car?
 4 Would it be possible for you to ring back later? Could you possibly ring back later?
 5 Don't you think we should phone to say we'll be late?
 6 I was hoping you might give me a lift to the station.
 7 I would think she's French.
 8 I'd have thought she was French.
 9 I was wondering if you'd like to come to the cinema with me?
 10 Would you mind filling in this form?
 11 I wouldn't be surprised if it rained this afternoon.
 12 I was thinking of going for a walk. Anyone interested?
 13 I just thought I'd pop in to see if you needed anything.
 14 I'd say it's a bad idea.
 15 I'd have said it was a bad idea.
 16 I'd have said that apologizing to her would be the best idea.
 17 I gave her a present. You'd have thought she could have said thank you.

T 8.11

- 1 A Hi, Jenny. You all right?
 J Uh huh. You?
 A Er ... yeah. OK. Listen, Jenny. Are you doing anything tonight?
 J Gosh! Er ... I don't know. Why?
 A Well, I was wondering if you'd maybe ... you know ... if we could go out somewhere ... if you ... if you'd like to.
 J Well, er ... What did you have in mind?
 A Oh, I don't know. We could have a bite to eat, or we could take in a film. What do you fancy?
 J Well, that would be really nice. We could meet at the new bar on the High Street and take it from there. What do you think?
 A OK. Nice idea. What time ...?
 2 A Hello. The Bedford Hotel. Karen speaking.
 B How can I help you?
 A I'd like to book a room, please.
 A Certainly, sir. I'll just put you through to reservations. It's ringing for you.
 B Thank you.
 R Reservations. Robert speaking. I understand you'd like to book a room.
 B That's right. For three nights starting Wednesday the fifteenth of this month.
 R For how many people?
 B Just me. I wonder if it would be possible to have a room at the back of the hotel. I'm afraid I can never get to sleep if I hear the traffic.
 R I'll just see what I can do, sir. Yes ... that's certainly possible. Your name was?
 B Brown. Jonathan.
 R Thank you sir. Would you mind giving me a credit card number ...?
 3 A So what do you think of it?
 B It's fantastic!
 A It needs a lot doing to it, though. What do you think of the colour scheme?
 B It's too dark. Browns and blues and reds. You could do with something brighter. If I were

you, I'd go for cream or white. You can't beat cream, it goes with everything.

- A Mm ... maybe. What about the kitchen?
 B Well, this is a bit of a disaster area, isn't it? I'd have thought the best idea would be to rip it all out and start again. I know it would be expensive, but at least you'd end up with a kitchen that suited you. No?
 A Don't you think I should wait a bit before I do that?
 B Well, you could, but I wouldn't. I was thinking you could go to Ikea and get a whole new kitchen.
 A Wow! Would you come with me?
 4 A Hello.
 B Hi. Can I speak to Amanda, please?
 A She's out at the moment. Sorry.
 B Ah, OK. Would you have any idea when she might be back?
 A I'd have thought she'd be back by 8.00. She usually is on a Tuesday.
 B Would you mind giving her a message? Could you say that Andy phoned, and I'll try her again after 8.00?
 A Fine.
 B Would that be OK?
 A Sure.
 B Thanks a lot. Bye.
 A Bye.

Unit 9

T 9.1

... The day started -erm much like any other day I got on the subway. We came across the bridge and I remember noticing what a lovely day it was -er with the bright blue sky. I remember coming out of the subway as I normally did, and I saw a -erm saw a cloud, or what looked like a small cloud, white cloud and I remember thinking 'Gosh that's unusual because this sky is so totally clear' - but I didn't think much more of it and I set off walking to my office -er I didn't get far. I got to the -er first block, and on the corner there were a couple of people -erm looking up, staring up at the tower, -erm so I looked down on what they were looking at and -erm noticed that there, what seemed to be, to me, at the time, anyway, a small hole, and you could actually see a few bits of flame round the edge and I asked these two people what happened and -er one of them said that a plane had flown into it and I remember thinking -er ah no can't be true. As I walked there was more and more smoke coming out, but I made it to my office and -erm went up to the 16th floor. So I went into the office, and there were lots of my colleagues there. Obviously there was a lot of sort of confusion, so I went to one of these offices with the clearest view and I looked out and I remember thinking 'Gosh! I don't remember that, there's a hole in the other side'. Quite a few people who'd been in the office earlier than me that morning, they'd -erm they'd seen both of them, they started telling me about this second one that went down the river -erm and sort of exploded towards them -erm because it came from the south. Erm, soon you could start to see - they obviously started to evacuate -er and there were just thousands of people walking straight up towards us, just pouring, pouring up towards us. Erm, I tried to phone family and friends but none of the phones seemed to work -er so I sent out an email, that seemed to be the one thing that was still working. I couldn't speak to any of my family in England. I did speak to my wife once when I first got in and told her to wake up and turn on the television and see what was happening. I was unable to get through to her. After that, these -er sort of surreal goings on, sending these emails backwards and forwards about what was happening -erm outside my very window. And it was while I

was writing an email I heard some screams, and I ran round -er just to see sort of this huge, huge cloud of smoke and people just shouting and screaming 'It collapsed! It collapsed!' This huge cloud of dust came, you could see it pouring up the avenues, and it sort of burst out -erm through Battery Park, right out into the Hudson River -erm because I remember seeing lots of the ferries were all doing evacuations, taking people from every point they could, and they just got enveloped in this huge cloud of dust. There was so much dust you didn't know, you know whether - how much it had fallen, whether it was just the top. I suppose we were all expecting to see something still there. We could still see the other one standing because it had the big antenna, the big aerial on top of it. So as we stood there watching it, no idea how long for, and then of course, the -er other one collapsed. You could clearly see, there's a very particular design, these long, long sort of slightly ornate metal work. I remember seeing that sort of explode out and then you just saw the great big top with this giant aerial on, just drop straight down and you'd see all this other stuff just peeling away from the sides -erm you could see just each corner of it peeling back and this giant top just smashing down through it and obviously there was all the dust and everything and -erm more screaming. We all thought 'cos we'd seen so many, so many thousands of people walking north that maybe everyone had got out -erm because there was this you know non-stop procession of people. In fact I think our brains didn't even think about the fact that there were people inside it, you just sort of looked at it as a building, and you just assumed there was no one in it, you just don't actually want to think about that. It was, you know, unlike any feeling you've ever thought, there wasn't really - there was no panic in the office, and also a very clear acknowledgement that -erm something had changed had -er something had changed in the world today and we were sitting staring at it. It was quite the most incredible thing, and from what was just a normal lovely New-York autumn day, it's just incredible how much changed in that morning.

T 9.2

- We're sitting at the back, in row 102. We've had another row about our finances.
- That was never him singing live. He was miming. 'Live and let live' is my philosophy.
- Close that window! There's one helluva draught. You're not close to getting the answer.
- I soon got used to working the late night shift. I don't trust used car-dealers. I'd never buy a car from one.
- It's impossible to tear open this packet. Give me a knife. A single tear ran silently down her cheek as she waved goodbye.
- He always looks so content with his lot. The content of your essay was excellent but there were rather a lot of spelling mistakes.
- The headteacher complained to the parents about their son's conduct in class. General MacIntyre has been appointed to conduct the next stage of the war.
- Could you record the next episode for me? I'm out that night. He's broken the Olympic world record for the 100 metres.

T 9.3 A, B, C, D, F = British soldiers, E = German soldier

- Hey, listen!
- Yeah, they're coppin' it down Railway Wood tonight.
- Nah, not that. Listen. What is it?
- Singin' inait?
- It's those Welsh bastards in the next trench.
- That's Jerry, that is.
- Yeah, it is Jerry. It's comin' from over there.

- Sing up, Jerry! Let's 'ear yer!
- Oh nice, weren't it?
- Tommy? Hello Tommy!
- Eh! 'E 'eard us!
- 'Ello?
- Fröhliche Weihnachten!
- Eh?
- What?
- Happy Christmas!
- Oh! 'Appy Christmas!
- Hey, yeah, it's Christmas!

T 9.4 I = Interviewer, GW = Graham Williams, HS = Harold Startin

Part one

- That scene from the West End musical of the 1960s *Oh What a Lovely War!* is a pretty accurate illustration of the kind of thing that happened in several places on the Western Front on that Christmas Eve of 1914. Listen to the account of someone who was actually there. Graham Williams, a rifleman with the London Rifle Brigade, was on sentry duty that night.
- GW On the stroke of 11 o'clock, which by German time was midnight, 'cos they were an hour ahead of us, lights began to appear all along the German trenches, and er ... then people started singing. They started singing *Heilige Nacht, Silent Night*. So I thought, 'Well, this is extraordinary!' And I woke up all the other chaps, and all the other sentries must have done the same thing, to come and see what was going on. They sang this carol right through, and we responded with English Christmas carols, and they replied with German again, and when we came to *Come All Ye Faithful*, they joined in singing, with us singing it in Latin, *Adesde Fideles*.
- I So by the time you got to that carol, both sides were singing the same carol together?
- GW Both singing the same carol together. Then after that, one of the Germans called out, 'Come over and see us. Tommy. Come over and see us!' So I could speak German pretty fluently in those days, so I called back ... I said, 'No, you come over and see us!', I said, 'Nein, kommen ... zuerst kommen Sie hier, Fritz!' And nobody did come that time, and eventually the lights all burned out, and quietened down and went on with the usual routine for the night. Next morning I was asleep, when I woke up I found everyone was walking out into no-man's land, meeting the Germans, talking to them, and ... wonderful scene ... couldn't believe it!
- I Further along the line in the perfect weather, Private Harold Startin of the Old Contemptibles was enjoying that morning too. He couldn't speak any German, but that didn't stop him making friends.
- HS We were 'Tommy' to them, and they were all 'Fritz' to us. They couldn't have been more cordial towards you, all sharing their goodies with you. They were giving us cigars about as big as your arm, and tobacco.
- I Were you frightened at first? Were you suspicious at all? Because these were people ...
- HS No!
- I ... that you'd been trained to hate, weren't they?
- HS No! There was no hatred, we'd got no grudge against them, they'd got no grudge against us. We were ... we were the best of pals, although we were there to kill one another, there were no two ways about that at all. They helped us bury our dead, and we buried our dead with their dead. I've seen many a cross with a German name and number on and a British name and number on. 'In death not divided.'
- I Did you do other work during the truce as well? Was it just burying the dead, or were there other things ...

- HS Oh, there was strengthening the trenches, borrowing their tools ...
- I You actually borrowed German tools to strengthen your trenches?
- HS We borrowed German tools. They ... then ... they'd come and help you strengthen your defences against them.

Part two

- Not only was the truce more extensive than anyone has realized before, it also lasted much longer than has been believed until now. In some areas, the war started up again on New Year's Day, but in the part of the line where Harold Startin was, the truce lasted a lot longer than that.
 - HS Ours went on for six weeks. You can read in the history books about Sir John French, when he heard of it, he was all against it. But our truce went on for six weeks. And the Württemberg Regiment, they got relieved before we did, and they told us they thought it were the Prussian Guards goin' to relieve them, and if it was, we should hear three rifle shots at intervals, and if we only heard three rifle shots we should know that the Prussian Guards, that were opposite us then, and we'd got to keep down.
 - I Because they would be fiercer than ...
 - HS Yes!
 - I ... than the Württembergers?
 - HS Yes!
 - I Can you remember particular Germans that you spoke to? Over six weeks you must have made friends?
 - HS I spoke to one, Otto, comes from Stuttgart, 'as ... 'as been over to England to see me.
 - I So you made friends during the truce and kept in touch after the war?
 - HS Made friends during the truce, and friends after.
- Goodbye! (Soldiers' song from the 1914-1918 war.)**
 Goodbye! Goodbye!
 Wipe the tear, baby dear, from your eye!
 Though it's hard to part, I know,
 I'll be tickled to death to go.
 Don't cry! Don't sigh!
 There's a silver lining in the sky.
 Bonsoir, old thing! Cheerio! Chin-chin!
 Au revoir! Toodle-oo! Goodbye!

T 9.5

- 'Oh great! I got the job!'
'Well done! I knew you would.'
- 'My car's making this strange rattling sound.'
'It sounds bad. You should really get it serviced.'
- 'Oh no! I've missed the last bus!'
'Don't worry. We'll give you a lift.'
- 'Will you lot stop making so much noise!'
'We're not. We're just talking quietly.'
- 'Don't worry, dad. I'll be home by midnight.'
'You'd better be, because if you're not, you're grounded for a week!'
- 'Did you make all this mess?'
'I'm sorry, really I am.'
- 'I get so nervous when I have to speak in public.'
'Take deep breaths before you start.'
- 'We climbed right to the top in record time.'
'Where's the proof?'

T 9.6 See p90

T 9.7 See p90

T 9.8 See p90

Unit 10

T 10.1

- 1 And they're coming into the straight, Cornichon leads from Pegasus who is being closely challenged by River Island. River Island has moved into second place. Cornichon's still going well. They're approaching the winning post. It's going to be a photo finish... Cornichon has beaten River Island, with Pegasus in third place. What a thrilling finish to this race!
- 2 Johnson receives the ball in his own half, passes to Mimosa. Mimosa dribbles past two defenders and shoots. Oh! The goalkeeper knocks it behind for a corner kick. The ball comes into the centre. The striker, Hughes, is in position and heads the ball into the back of the net! What a goal! Ambleside are now two-nil up!
- 3 It's deuce. Mintoff serves, Everett returns, but Mintoff's at the net, and volleys the ball deep. Everett runs and hits the ball cross-court, but Mintoff's got it covered and punches it down the line. Advantage Mintoff, and match point. She serves to her opponent's back-hand, Everett struggles to get the ball back, but it goes into the net. Game, set, and match to Mintoff, 6-4, 6-2.
- 4 There's the bell for round six and Manson's straight back into the centre of the ring. Buckley moves in slowly from his corner. Manson gets in a good punch, he's caught him on the chin and the Scot crumples to the canvas. The count starts, Buckley's trying to get up, 8, 9, 10 - he's not up! It's a knockout in Round 6. Manson takes World Heavyweight title back to the States!
- 5 The Giants are two runs down in the ninth inning. They have men on first and second base, a home-run now would win it. Jackson swings and misses the first and second pitches. He hits the third pitch cleanly. It looks good. It flies across the field and lands in the stands. A 3-run homer to Jackson and the Giants win the game 7-6.
- 6 The eighteenth hole is a par-three. Mallestro's first shot put him on the green, just two yards from the hole. Spink put his first in the lake, and has taken two shots to get to the green. If Mallestro putts from here he'll win. He strikes it well, the ball trickles to the edge of the hole, and yes, it's in. Mallestro wins the match and the tournament.

T 10.2

- 1 Annabel is very clever, but Sonia is absolutely brilliant.
- 2 I thought the book was really stupid, but the film was quite ridiculous.
- 3 The meal was very pleasant, and the company absolutely delightful.
- 4 My mother was quite upset, but my father was really devastated.
- 5 Their house was really unusual, but the garden was quite extraordinary.
- 6 Her shoes were quite expensive, but the dress was really exorbitant.

T 10.3

- 1 The holiday was quite good, but I wouldn't go back.
- 2 James is quite clever. Cleverer than me, anyway.
- 3 The answer is quite obvious. I'm surprised you can't see it.

T 10.4

- 1 Kate thinks maths is hard, and she's absolutely right.
Kate thinks maths is hard, and she's quite right.
- 2 Personally I find maths totally impossible.
Personally I find maths quite impossible.
- 3 She's absolutely terrified of dogs.
She's completely terrified of dogs.

- 4 I was very pleased to hear you're getting married.
I was terribly pleased to hear you're getting married.
- 5 I'm sure you'll be extremely happy together.
I'm sure you'll be really happy together.

T 10.5

- 1 This wine is rather pleasant. You must try it.
- 2 I'm absolutely determined to lose weight.
- 3 The film was quite interesting. You should see it.
- 4 The restaurant was quite nice, but I wouldn't recommend it.
- 5 If you ask her, I'm pretty sure she'll say yes.

T 10.6 M = Mick, J = Jess

- M D'you see all those medals?! You know he's a 'Sir' now?
- J Sorry, ... who's a what?
- M Y'know Steve Redgrave ... Sir Steve Redgrave the Olympic rower. There's an article here on him. He's the only guy to have won five consecutive gold medals at the Olympic games.
- J Yeah 'course I know him, he's one of my sporting heroes, isn't he? Ever since I tried rowing in my first term at university and ...
- M I didn't know that you - er ... rowing I mean.
- J Yeah, yeah, gave it up, totally, absolutely, completely knackerizing - too whacked to make it down the pub afterwards ... [laughter]. So, how does Steve Redgrave manage it?
- M He says here it's all in the training - he's been training eight hours a day, seven days a week for 25 years - er started when he was 16, he says he pushes his body to the absolute limit, beyond the pain barrier - just like he does in every race. His body goes numb and his mind goes blank - he doesn't even hear the crowds cheering him on.
- J Oh, boy, do I remember the pain barrier?! - Jeez, I was stiff the next day ... had joints like an old man.
- M Yeah - day in, day out Steve's down at the gym working out - working on leg, arm, back, shoulder muscles. Is that man focussed?! Doesn't sound like the kind of lifestyle you'd go for!
- J [laughs]
- J Hey, hang on ... he doesn't have my health problems ...
- M Oh yeah?! And what may those be?
- J Well, there's my bad back ...
- M Oh yeah ... only if you're asked to get off it to do something like ... -er
- J Like what?
- M Do the washing up! Tidy the flat! [laughter] Well, actually in fact Steve Redgrave does have health problems - real ones - not imaginary ones ...
- J No?
- M He's diabetic ... says here he was diagnosed with diabetes at 35. Has to use insulin every time he eats, -er that's six jabs a day.
- J You're kidding. I had no idea.
- M Yeah, he drinks gallons of blackcurrant juice to quench his thirst when he's training. Doesn't sound much like your kind of drink. Hey, take a look at Steve's diet, he's the carbohydrate kid - porridge, pasta and potatoes, loadsa red meat and eggs ... oh and he loves chocolate.
- J Obviously doesn't have to watch his weight then ...
- M No, lucky so-and-so, and he has to keep up his strength, has to consume over 6,000 calories a day, all seventeen stone of him.
- J Well, he's a helluva big guy, so dedicated to his sport he has to keep eating!
- M Hey ... but it says here all that dedication - er nearly cost him his marriage - too much time rowing, no time for his family - er and he's got three kids. His wife'd had enough of it all - do you know, she's an osteopath! How handy is that? Anyway, she felt that he was sacrificing his family to his obsession - so that's why ...
- J ... he's not going for a sixth ... no, no ... I knew he was giving it all up.

M He sounds a really decent guy, actually - modest - he says being knighted was the ultimate accolade, he never expected it - and it was his greatest moment, after winning the fifth medal of course - and now he plans to make use of his fame by raising money for children's charities. He's running the London Marathon this year, he wants to raise £5 million eventually.

J Hey, I was thinking of doing that!

M What? Raising 5 million?

J Idiot ... no, I thought I might try the Marathon.

M With your bad back!

J OK maybe next year.

T 10.7 A = Adelhaide, K = Kate

- A C'mon Kate type in 'Darcey Bussell' and see what we get.
- K OK, -er she must have her own website don't you think?
- A Hey, yeah, just look there's loads of stuff here, some great pics, and an interview ...
- K Oh yeah - oh, goodness, she's just stunning looking, isn't she?
- A I just think she's the most fantastic dancer. You know, she only started dancing 'cos her mum wanted her to improve her posture.
- K Yeah, she says that here. Addey do you remember when we started?
- A Do!! - I cried all the way through the first lesson - nearly didn't go back ... Hey, but we were only three.
- K Darcey says she didn't start 'til she was five and she only did it at first 'cos she liked all the pretty costumes - but by the time she was 11 she was passionate about it.
- A Well, I'm passionate about it, you're passionate about it, but it doesn't make us dancers like Darcey!
- K Don't I know it! D'you think we're the wrong shape? I mean, look at her - she's just so slender and lithe and we're ...
- A Come on, scroll down some more - she's talking about her diet. Oh, it's just not fair - look at what she eats - loads of carbohydrates - er pasta, baked potatoes, cereal ... If I ate all that I'd look like ...
- K Well, you wouldn't look like Darcey Bussell! You know it takes real guts to be a ballet dancer - I mean, you have to give over your whole life to it - there's no way it's all pretty costumes and feathers.
- A Feathers?
- K Swan Lake - you idiot - there's loadsa feathers in Swan Lake - look she says she loves doing the classical ballets - Romeo and Juliet and Sleeping Beauty -
- A Yeah, but I bet they're hugely strenuous to do. You just think how exhausted we are after a two hour lesson ...
- K That's true - do you know, she rehearses nearly ten hours a day and if she's not rehearsing, she still has to exercise for hours and have loads of massage and physio just to keep her limbs supple.
- A It's crazy - I suppose she'd just seize up without all that. Er - you know I don't think I could be that dedicated about anything. How on earth does she do it?
- K I dunno, I just think dancers get used to exhaustion and pain - she says every morning she wakes up to find some part of her body in agony, could be her back, could be her calves, bottom, and she's got tendonitis in her ankles at the moment ...
- A Tender ... what?
- K Tendonitis - 'got something to do with tendons I reckon, and her feet are all bloodied 'cos she's lost all her toenails.
- A Ugh! I lost a toenail once, it turned black and in the end I pulled ...
- K OK, OK so you're a dedicated dancer too ...
- A No, actually Tanya's horse stood on it ...
- K Ouch! Why do you think she does it?
- A Who, Tanya?
- K No, silly, Darcey ...

about fifty years ago, when treasure hunters were out looking for it ... erm ... it was consumed by the jungle ... kind of like an Incan thing but that was a different tribe but it had all these beautiful rock terraces and ... er ... it was an amazing trip ... it was good, it was very kind of Indiana Jones.

T 11.4

Right – the weirdest place that I've ever visited has to be underwater in Sardinia, because I'd never actually snorkelled before, so I put on the mask looked below and realized that we only really live on half of the planet, and I just could not believe what I saw, I just felt really small. I was completely out of my depth in every sense, and ... erm ... it kinda put me in my place in a way, because it wasn't man's world and ... er ... I was shocked, I was terrified actually.

T 11.4

Yes, that was a wonderful story. I was ... there was a new railway line constructed across far western China, from a place called Urunchi, through a pass called the Zungarian Gate ... into what is now Kazakhstan ... and I thought it would be nifty to ride on one of the first trains, of course it's an extremely remote part of the world. So I go with a friend of mine called George Robertson, and the two of us go out from Urunchi, crossing the desert and now we're about 150 miles west of Urunchi and it's just sand dunes and nothing. And then suddenly the train stops and I look out and there's this 'halt'. I mean it's not a station, there's no town there's just a sort of watering tower, and so I say to the conductor 'Why have we stopped?' and he said 'Oh, we're taking on water' or something like that and we'll be stopped for half an hour. So I get out and stretch my legs in the blazing sun, sand dunes, camels until I go and talk to the engine driver and while I'm doing so, I hear a voice from the si. behind me, saying in pretty impeccable English: 'Excuse me, do you speak English?' And I turn round and there is this vision of loveliness, this beautiful Chinese woman and I said 'Yes, I do actually,' and she said 'Good!' in a very sort of matter of fact slightly unsmiling way.

T 11.5

She looked at her watch and she said 'This train is stopping here for another 27 minutes. Have you ever read the works of Anthony Trollope?' And I'm thinking, wait a minute this is really strange, but 'Yes, I like Trollope a lot,' 'Good,' she said. 'Would you be willing to discuss with me *The Eustace Diamonds*, particularly the character of Lady Glencora?' I'm thinking 'this is not happening, but I do my best, struggling, I mean I must have read *The Eustace Diamonds* twenty years before. I could just about remember odds and ends, so I struggle through a conversation with her and then the guard waved his green flag and blew a whistle and she said 'Quick, quick go back otherwise you'll miss your train.' So I ... but I said 'You're beautiful. I love you, I want to live with you for the rest of my life' and she said 'Don't be so silly! Get in the train. Give me your business card.' So I didn't have one, but George had one so I scribbled my name and the train was moving. And the last vision I have of her was her scrabbling on her hands and knees to pick up my card while we went round the corner and I went back into the compartment and I said 'George, I've just had the most really strange experience ... so we then went travelling all the over Siberia for the next couple of months and I arrived back in Hong Kong and there was a letter ...

T 11.6

... there was a letter and she said: 'Dear Mr Winchester, I just want you to know that meeting you that day was just one of the most extraordinary events of my life. I ... am married to a cadre in the Chinese communist party and we were

... he committed some infraction and we were sent to this ghastly little town ... it was called Kwi-Tun. Nothing happens here. It's 30 miles away from the road and from the railway line. There's no one here that speaks English. I'm the only person, but I'm desperate not to lose my language, so the international train goes through every Tuesday and Thursday and I cycle all the way across the desert, down to the train station, wait for it to come in, knock on every compartment to see if there's anyone there that speaks English. Occasionally there's some sort of migrant worker ... but one day I meet this man who not only can speak English, but is English and, my passion is Trollope. He knew all about Trollope. I was able to speak for 25 minutes about Trollope and it was like ... you were like an angel from heaven. It was wonderful.' Anyway we're the very best of friends. We have been for years.

T 11.7

- 1 I don't like children who always have to be the centre of attention.
- 2 The journey from work to home, which usually takes half an hour, took over two hours yesterday.
- 3 Politicians who make extravagant promises aren't worth listening to.
- 4 The Taj Mahal, which took twenty-two years to complete, is built from exquisitely carved white marble.
- 5 These are the photographs I was telling you about.
- 6 We docked at the small port on the coast of East Africa where my parents lived twenty years ago.
- 7 My cousin, who's a real thrill-seeker, went hang-gliding at the weekend.
- 8 We went on a cycling holiday in Wales, where there are some really steep hills.

T 11.8

- 1 A I'm cleaned out! This new jacket cost the earth.
B Come on! It's good to spoil yourself every now and then.
- 2 A Believe me, that guy's really going places.
B Don't I know it! He landed that consultancy job that we all applied for.
- 3 A The holiday's over. It's back to the real world.
B You can say that again. Back to earth with a bump!
- 4 A What? You're not coming out on Saturday night!
B I can't. My dad caught me smoking and I've been grounded for two weeks.
- 5 A Hey! Great to see you! I thought you weren't going to be able to make it.
B I nearly wasn't. I had to move heaven and earth to get here.
- 6 A We're throwing caution to the wind and emigrating to Oz.
B Don't your folks already live down under?
- 7 A Come on, you know you want to go out with me really.
B In your dreams. Not if you were the last man on earth!
- 8 A Can you follow these instructions? Where on earth do all these screws go?
B Don't ask me. I was totally floored by the last lot I read.
- 9 A I don't want to drink, so I'll do the driving tonight.
B Great! That suits me down to the ground.

Unit 12

T 12.1

We are immediately struck by the softness of the sunshine and the activities of the countryside. The everyday pursuits of the three common men pictured – the ploughman, the shepherd, and the fisherman – are being carried out with apparent pleasure.

It takes the viewer some time to realize the central event of the painting, the splash of a pair of legs as the fallen Icarus plunges into the sea. They are caught at the precise moment that this symbol of human pride is about to disappear forever. It is ironic that no one is paying attention. All of the movement in the picture is away from the main event. The ploughman and shepherd, oblivious, go about their business, as does the fully-rigged boat, also sailing away from the fallen figure.

Landscape with the Fall of Icarus can be interpreted as a warning against pride and ambition. The ploughman who labours on, ignoring the hapless Icarus, exemplifies the ideal of the common man, who remains content with his modest lot in life. We should not search for personal gain, nor have ambitions above our station in life. Bruegel will have known the Flemish proverb 'No plough stops for the sake of a dying man'.

In the painting we also see life as a process of continuation. No matter what momentous events are happening in the world, near to you or far away, despite wars, death, natural disasters, famine, plagues or earthquakes, life goes on.

T 12.2 See p111

T 12.3

Salvador Dalí was born in 1904 in a small town, Figueras, in Catalunya, north-east Spain, where his father was a prestigious notary. Wanting to study art, Dalí went to the Royal Academy of Art in Madrid, but he was expelled from the Academy twice, as a result of which he never took his final examinations.

In 1928 he went to Paris, where he met the Spanish painters Pablo Picasso and Joan Miró, and established himself as the principal figure of a group of surrealist artists, whose leader was André Breton. By 1929 Dalí found the style, consisting of the world of the unconscious recalled during our dreams, that would make him famous.

In 1927 he met Gala, a Russian immigrant ten years older than Dalí.

Although she was married to a French poet at the time, she decided to leave her husband as she wanted to stay with Dalí.

In 1940 Dalí went to the United States, where he stayed for eight years until 1948, when he and Gala returned to Europe, spending most of their time in Spain or Paris.

When Gala died in 1982, Dalí became deeply depressed, and moved to Púbol, a castle he had bought for Gala.

He lived in his castle for the rest of his life, dying there in 1989 of heart failure.

T 12.4 Part One

RP We're in the central square of Lourdes, and there's literally thousands of people, most of them fairly elderly, -er congregating here. A lot of them have brought their own chairs to sit on. It's very quiet, given what a large crowd there is here. And people don't seem to be talking to each other. They seem to be er ... almost reverential. A lot of them have heads bowed. Very introspective atmosphere. And you feel that when you're talking, you should really be whispering.

Lourdes must be the strangest tourist destination in the world. A hundred thousand

seriously ill people come every year, many in wheelchairs or borne on stretchers, to mingle with millions of able-bodied pilgrims, and camera-carrying tourists. There are 30,000 hotel beds in a town of just 15,000 permanent residents. But in the midst of it all lies the sanctuary, several square kilometres of ring-fenced holy ground, containing three churches, and the famous grotto, where Bernadette Soubirous saw visions of the Virgin Mary, over 140 years ago.

Any pilgrims looking for spiritual guidance amidst a maze of garish souvenir shops can turn to Father Liam Griffin, who's sort of the official tout rep for English speaking visitors ... Father Griffin, -er we're walking in the sanctuary here at the moment. There're thousands of people here today. How important is Lourdes -er within the Catholic Church?

FG Lourdes is a place of pilgrimage. It is a place where the Blessed Virgin Mary appeared to Bernadette Soubirous back in 1858, and in that way it is an important place of prayer. According to our statistics about six million people come here every year.

Part Two

RP What is it about this place, this experience, that attracts so many people? Lourdes has long been associated with the miraculous. The spring which Bernadette discovered in 1858 is said to have healing properties, and the place has been linked with sudden dramatic cures of the seriously ill. But in the twenty-first century, I'm puzzled as to why more and more people are coming to Lourdes each year. Are they looking for something that modern science can't offer?

AW We've gone through a much more intellectual, rational age, where science is perhaps the dominant discourse in academic life these days. And it seems to preclude miracles. And modern Christians are divided as to whether they still occur, or whether they only existed in the past.

RP Andrew Walker is Professor of Theology, Religion and Culture at King's College, London.

AW The whole of Christianity, rightly or wrongly, is based on an idea that a man was also God raised from the dead. You can't get anything more miraculous than that. But it doesn't alter the fact that even if there were no miracles, I think from a sociological point of view, we do need to believe in the impossible, and you find it in Hinduism, and Christianity, and Judaism. There's a certain theatrical joy about the possibility that God can intervene in the world and change things.

Part Three

RP In 1999 Jean-Pierre Bely became the most recent person officially confirmed to have been cured at Lourdes.

JP The illness began in 1971-72, at first very discretely. There were very minor symptoms, slight manifestations of disease, such as fatigue, a lack of suppleness and mobility in my hands, pins and needles in my fingertips. I work as a nurse in a hospital, so I just put it all down to stress. Over the years things got worse, but the actual diagnosis wasn't made until 1984, after a particularly violent attack that left me partly paralysed. It was after this that I went into hospital, and the doctors carried out a thorough examination. Afterwards the doctor, who I knew from my work as a nurse, said to me 'Jean-Pierre. Prepare yourself for the worst. I think you have multiple sclerosis.'

RP By 1987 Jean-Pierre was bedridden, receiving a one hundred percent state invalidity benefit, and he even had his house modified structurally to accommodate his extreme disability. Later that year he was persuaded to go on a pilgrimage to Lourdes, but whilst taking part in morning

mass, he was overcome by a strange experience.

JP At that moment, everything was turned upside down, and I was sucked into a whirlwind of emotion, of joy, of peace, and an extraordinary feeling of serenity that came over me, which remains with me still to this day. The second part of the cure took place later that same day. I was back in the sick room, lying on the bed, and felt terribly cold, like an intense chill in my bones. But slowly it got warmer and warmer, until it felt like a fire burning through the whole of my body. I was overwhelmed by it. I heard this voice, like an order, 'Get up and walk!' And then, all of a sudden, I don't know how, I found myself sitting up on the bed, my legs dangling over the edge, and I started to touch the back of my hands. I realised I'd regained mobility and sensitivity in my spine and shoulders, which had been blocked for years. They were normal. In fact you could say I'd found normality again.

RP By the time Jean-Pierre, now able to walk again, returned home, all signs of his crippling illness had vanished. And remain so today.

Part Four

RP It's perhaps no surprise that scientific research has confirmed what millions of pilgrims have always known, that visiting Lourdes profoundly improves your mental state. But this raises troubling questions for a doctor like myself. After all, I prescribe anti-depressants to my patients. Why not visits to Lourdes? What's stopping me? Well, personally I'm unhappy with the idea that just because something may seem inexplicable at the moment, that it means the only account left is a spiritual solution. Perhaps the key point about a miracle is that it is a mechanism for providing hope when in many circumstances, there is no hope. For me the danger of modern medicine is that when it runs out of technological answers, as it does for millions of the seriously ill, it turns its back and offers nothing else. Into this chasm of despair steps religion, miracles and hope. And Lourdes as a concrete place you can visit, provides an opportunity to renew your belief that something good can still come of catastrophe.

Grammar Reference

UNIT 1

Avoiding repetition

To avoid repetition in many languages it is common for words to be missed out. This is called ellipsis. In English it is common for the main verb to be missed out, leaving just the auxiliary, and this can cause problems.

► 1.1 Using auxiliaries to avoid repetition

In short answers

When a Yes/No question is asked, we use the auxiliary on its own when answering rather than repeating the whole verb form.

'Will it rain this afternoon?' 'Yes, I think it will (rain this afternoon).'
'Should I revise for this test?' 'Yes, I think you should (revise for the test).'

Notes

There is a difference in the short answers between *have* and *have got*.
'Does she have to go?' 'Yes, she does.'
'Has she got to go?' 'Yes, she has.'

Commenting on given information

When we make comments in conversation, we usually avoid repeating information that has just been given.

'Mary's coming.' 'I know she is.'
'Angela can speak Russian and Hungarian.' 'She can't, can she?'

Note

Where there is no auxiliary verb in Present and Past Simple positive statements, *do/does/did* is used to reply. This is to avoid repeating the full verb.

'I adore Italy.' 'I do too, and so does James.'
'I thought the film was wonderful.' 'I didn't. I hated it.'

Responding with a different auxiliary

To know which auxiliary verb to use, it is necessary to reconstruct the part of the sentence that is missing, and to consider carefully the meaning and the time of the events in the sentence.

'I didn't see the film.' 'Oh, you should have (seen the film). It was great.'
'You must see the Renoir exhibition. It's superb!' 'I have (seen it).'
'I wish you'd lock the door when you leave.' 'But I did (I locked it).'

Using more than one auxiliary

When there is more than one auxiliary, we can use one or more when responding.

'He could have been lying.' 'Yes, he could/could have/could have been.'
'Would I have enjoyed it?' 'No, I don't think you would/would have.'

We always use more than one if there is a change in auxiliary.

'You should be given a rise.' 'Well, I haven't been.'
'She can't have told him yet.' 'She must have.'

► 1.2 Reduced infinitives

We can use *to* instead of the full infinitive in replies.

'Haven't you done the washing-up yet?' 'No, I'm just going to.'
'Are you coming for a walk?' 'No, I don't want to.'

The verb *to be* is not usually reduced to *to*.

She's less moody than she used to be.

I wasn't as impressed as I'd expected to be.

UNIT 2

Phrasal verbs

► 2.1 Multiple meanings

Phrasal verbs can have multiple meanings.

- a She worked out the plot of her book. (= devise, plan)
- b Work out how much I owe you. (= calculate)
- c I can't work out her handwriting. (= understand)
- d Their marriage didn't work out. (= wasn't successful)
- e I'm sure you'll work out your differences. (= resolve)
- f She works out at the gym every day. (= do exercises, train)

► 2.2 Degrees of metaphorical use

There can be different degrees of metaphorical use.

- a Take off your coat.
 - b The sick sailor was taken off the ship.
 - c They're taking 5p off income tax.
 - d We're taking off a fortnight in the summer.
 - e The plane took off.
 - f His business is taking off.
 - g He's a good mimic. He can take off the teacher perfectly.
- Metaphorical
Sentence f is an example of transference, in that it derives from the meaning of *take off* in sentence e. This is typical of the way in which the meaning and use of phrasal verbs grow and change.

► 2.3 Transferred or metaphorical meanings

The transferred (or metaphorical) meanings of phrasal verbs are often derived from the literal meaning.

- The court stood up when the judge came in. (literal)
- You should stand up for what you believe in. (transferred)
- Come round to my house. (literal)
- She's coming round to my point of view. (transferred)
- She gave away her money. (literal)
- Don't give away my secret. (transferred)

► 2.4 The grammar of phrasal verbs

There are four types of phrasal verbs.

Type 1: verb + adverb (no object)

- a He went out. (literal)
- b I didn't put enough wood on the fire, so it went out. (metaphorical)

Type 2: verb + adverb + object (separable)

- a I put up the picture on the wall. (literal)
- b I put up my sister for the night. (metaphorical)

Type 2 phrasal verbs are separable. The object (noun or person) can come between the verb and the adverb.

I put the picture up. I put my sister up.

But if the object is a pronoun, it always comes between the verb and the adverb.

I put it up. (NOT ~~I put up it.~~) I put her up. (NOT ~~I put up her.~~)

If the object is a long noun phrase, a noun with a qualifying clause, or a noun clause, the adverb comes immediately after the verb. This avoids the adverb being too far separated from the verb.

They turned down the majority of the applicants for the job.

She told off the children who had stolen her apples.

You should think over what I've been talking to you about.

Type 3: verb + preposition + object (inseparable)

- a *She came across the street.* (literal)
- b *She came across an old letter while she was tidying her drawers.* (metaphorical)

Type 3 phrasal verbs are inseparable. The object (noun or pronoun) always comes after the preposition.

She came across a letter.

She came across it. NOT *She came it across.*

Type 4: verb + adverb + preposition + object

Don't just sit there! Get on with your work. (Continue with it.)

I've got to cut down on my spending. (reduce)

Type 4 phrasal verbs are nearly all metaphorical. The object cannot change position.

It cannot come before the adverb or the preposition.

I'm looking forward to it. NOT *I'm looking forward to to.*

Tense review

English tenses have two elements of meaning: time and aspect.

Time

Is the action present, past or future? Does it refer to all time?

It is important to remember that *time* and *tense* are not always the same in English. Present tenses often refer to the present time, but not always; similarly past tenses do not always refer to past time.

Your plane leaves at 10.00 tomorrow morning. (present tense form referring to the future)

In the book, the heroine goes back to her youth. (present tense form referring to the past)

I wish I knew the answer, but I don't. (past tense form referring to the present)

I could come tomorrow, if you like. (past tense form referring to the future)

Aspect

The three aspects add another layer of meaning to the action of the verb.

Simple The action is seen as a complete whole.

Continuous The action is seen as having duration.

Perfect The action is seen as completed before another time.

Choosing the correct tense

The choice of verb form depends on many factors, and not on a set of rigid grammatical rules.

1 The nature of the action or event

Because English can employ its various aspects, events can be viewed with a multiplicity of implications. Look at this sentence:

I have been asking my husband to mend this door for two years.

In some languages this verb form is in the present – *I ask my husband ...* – which indeed conveys the same basic message. But English has added on two aspects. The perfect aspect emphasizes both past and present, so that the enormity of this lack of DIY can be appreciated. The continuous aspect expresses the repetitive nature of the wife's requests. She hasn't asked once but a hundred times, every week for two years. Neither of these ideas are expressed by the present tense.

2 How the speaker sees the event

Look at these sentences:

a *He always buys her flowers.*

b *He's always buying her flowers.*

c *I'll talk to Peter about it this afternoon.*

d *I'll be talking to Peter about it this afternoon.*

In each pair of sentences, the actions are the same, but the speaker looks at them differently.

In sentence a, the Present Simple expresses a simple fact. The Present Continuous in sentence b conveys the speaker's attitude, one of mild surprise or irritation.

In sentence c, *will* expresses a promise or a decision made at the moment of speaking. In sentence d, the Future Continuous is interesting for what it *doesn't* express. There is no element of intention, volition or plan. The speaker is saying that in the natural course of events, as life unfolds, he and Peter will cross paths and talk, independently of the will or intention of anyone concerned. It is a casual way of looking at the future, which is why we can find it in questions such as *Will you be using the computer for long?*, which is much less confrontational than *Are you going to be using the computer for long?*

3 The meaning of the verb

In some cases, the choice of verb form might be suggested by the meaning of the verb. A verb such as *belong* expresses a state or condition that remains unchanged over a period of time. Other such verbs are *mean*, *understand*, *believe*, *adore*, *remember*, etc. It would therefore be more likely to find them in simple verb forms.

This house belonged to my grandfather. Now it belongs to me.

Similarly, verbs such as *wait* and *rain* express the idea of an activity over a period of time, and so are often found in continuous verb forms.

I've been waiting for you for hours!

It's raining again.

2.5 The simple aspect

The simple aspect describes an action that is seen to be complete.

The action is viewed as a whole unit.

The sun rises in the east. (= all time)

I've read the book and seen the film. (complete)

My father always wore a suit to work. (habit)

He died in 1992. (action completed in the past)

This shop will close at 5.30. (simple fact)

Because the simple aspect expresses a completed action, we must use it if the sentence contains a number that refers to 'things done'.

She's written three letters today. *I drink five cups of tea a day.*

2.6 The continuous aspect

Continuous verb forms express activities, or a series of activities, viewed at some point between their beginning and end. The continuous aspect focuses on the duration of an activity: we are aware of the passing of time. The activity is *not* permanent, and its duration is limited.

I'm staying with friends until I find a place of my own. (temporary)

Why are you wearing that silly hat? (in progress)

I've been learning English for years. (duration)

The activity may not be complete.

I've been painting the kitchen. (We don't know if it's finished.)

He was dying, but the doctors saved him.

Who's been drinking my beer? (There's some left.)

Compare: *Who's drunk my beer?* (It's all gone.)

The action of some verbs, by definition, lasts a long time, for example, *live* and *work*. The continuous aspect gives these actions limited duration and makes them temporary.

Hans is living in London while he's learning English.

I'm working as a waiter until I go to university.

The action of some other verbs lasts a short time. These are often found in the simple aspect.

She's cut her finger. *He hit me.*

In the continuous aspect, the action of these verbs becomes longer or repeated.

I've been cutting wood. (for a long time)

He was hitting me. (again and again)

► 2.7 The perfect aspect

The perfect aspect expresses two ideas:

- 1 **An action completed before another time**
I've read his latest book. (some time before now)
When I arrived, Mary had cooked the meal. (some time before I arrived)
I will have learned my lines before the play starts. (some time before then)
- 2 **An action producing a result or a state of affairs relevant to a later situation**
I've read his latest book. (I know the story now.)
When I arrived, Mary had cooked the meal. (It was on the table then.)
I will have learned my lines before the play starts. (I'll know them in time for the play.)

An important characteristic of perfect verb forms, therefore, is that they explicitly link an earlier action or event with a later situation. If we want to direct attention specifically to the result or state produced by the earlier action without drawing attention to the activity that has produced that state, we don't use a perfect form.

I know the book. It's good. (present)

The meal was ready. I ate it. (past)

I will know my lines. I'll give a good performance. (future)

Another characteristic of perfect verb forms is that the exact time of the action or event is either irrelevant or disregarded. The important elements are not *time when*, but the occurrence of the action itself and the results or state of affairs produced by it.

► 2.8 Active and passive

The passive is frequently used in English to express ideas that require a reflexive or impersonal construction in other languages, and in many cases is also used where other languages use the active.

English is spoken all over the world.

His books are sold in Europe.

Passive sentences move the focus of attention from the subject of an active sentence to the object.

Shakespeare wrote Hamlet in 1599.

Hamlet, one of the great tragedies of all time, was written in 1599.

In most cases, by and the agent are omitted in passive sentences. This is because the agent isn't known, isn't important, or is understood.

This house was built in the seventeenth century.

The escaped prisoner has been recaptured.

Sometimes we prefer to end a sentence with what is new.

'What a lovely painting!' 'Yes, it was painted by Canaletto.'

In informal language, we often use *you* or *they* to refer to people in general or to no person in particular. In this way we can avoid using the passive.

You can buy anything in Harrods.

They're building a new airport soon.

► 2.9 Future forms

English has several forms which express future events, and which one the user selects depends on how he or she sees the event as much as its certainty or nearness to the present. The main forms are given here in order of frequency of use.

will

Will can function as an auxiliary of the future in simply predicting a future event.

The Queen will open the new hospital next Thursday.

Tomorrow will be warm and sunny everywhere.

Will can also function as a modal auxiliary to express ideas of willingness and spontaneous intention.

Will you help me for a minute? What a lovely shirt! I'll buy it.

going to

Going to expresses a premeditated intention.

I'm going to decorate the bathroom this weekend.

The Government is going to reorganize the entire Civil Service.

Going to is also used to predict a future event for which there is some evidence now.

Great news! I'm going to have a baby!

They're looking very angry. I think they're going to start throwing stones.

The Present Continuous

The Present Continuous is used to express an arrangement, usually for the near future.

'What are you doing tonight?' 'I'm going out for a meal.'

It is wrong to use the Present Simple in this sense. We cannot say *What do you do tonight?* or *Do you go to the party on Saturday?*

The Present Continuous cannot be used to express an event that has not been arranged by human beings. We cannot say *It is raining tomorrow*, or *The sun is rising at 5.00 tomorrow morning*.

The Present Simple

The Present Simple is used to express a future event which is seen as being certain because of a timetable or calendar.

What time does the film start?

My train gets in at 11.00.

The Cup Final takes place on April 13.

The Future Continuous

The Future Continuous expresses an activity that will be in progress around a specific time in the future.

Don't phone at 8.00 – I'll be having supper.

This time tomorrow I'll be flying to Hong Kong.

The Future Continuous also expresses an action that will occur in the natural course of events, independently of the will or intention of anyone directly concerned.

In a few minutes we will be landing at Heathrow Airport. (Of course the pilot has not just decided this!)

Hurry up! The bus will be leaving any minute!

The Future Continuous is often used to express a casual or polite question about someone's future plans. The speaker is trying not to impose his/her will in any way. This is related to the use of the Future Continuous described above, i.e. that it can express an action that will occur independently of the will or intention of the people concerned.

Compare:

Will you bring Kate to the party? (Perhaps a request.)

Will you be bringing Kate to the party? (I'm just asking.)

The Future Perfect

The Future Perfect expresses an action that will have finished before a definite time in the future.

I'll have finished my work by the time you get back.

Most of the leaves will have fallen by the end of November.

► 2.10 The future in the past

Sometimes when we are talking about the past, we want to refer to something that was in the future at that time. This is called the 'future in the past', and it is expressed by *was going to*, the Past Continuous, or *would*. *Would* is very common in reported speech and thought.

The last time I saw you, you were going to start a new job. Did you?

I was in a hurry because I was catching a plane that afternoon.

He said he'd give me a lift.

The uses of these three forms are exactly parallel to *going to*, the Present Continuous, and *will* to refer to the real future.

I'm going to start a new job. (intention)

I'm catching a plane this afternoon. (arrangement)

I'll give you a lift. (offer)

The future in the past is often found in narratives.

Alice smiled as she thought of the evening to come. She was meeting Peter, and together they were going to see a play at the Adelphi Theatre. She was sure the evening would be enjoyable.

UNIT 3

Position of adverbs

► 3.1 Adverb + adjective

When an adverb qualifies an adjective or past participle, it comes immediately before it.

The hotel is completely full.

We were deeply disappointed with his performance.

► 3.2 Adverb + verb

When an adverb qualifies a verb + object, we do not usually put the adverb between the verb and its object.

I like Mozart very much. (NOT I like very much Mozart.)

I usually have lunch at 1.00. (NOT I have usually lunch at 1.00.)

► 3.3 Front, mid, or end position?

There are three normal positions within a sentence for adverbs.

- 1 Front (at the beginning of the clause)

Today we're studying adverbs. Obviously it's difficult. However, we're having fun.

- 2 Mid (before the main verb, but after the verb to be)

I sincerely hope you can come to the party. Pat and Peter are always late.

- 3 End (at the end of the clause)

They told me the news yesterday. She speaks three languages fluently.

Different kinds of adverbs go in different positions, and many can go in all three. The rules about this are complicated, and you should consult a good grammar book for details. However, here are their common positions.

Manner (quickly, sincerely, gently)	end or mid	<i>She quickly tidied the room.</i> <i>She tidied the room quickly.</i>
Place (here, outside, upstairs)	end	<i>They're playing outside.</i>
Point in time (tomorrow, yesterday, tonight)	end or front	<i>We're going to Paris tomorrow.</i> <i>Tomorrow we're going to Paris.</i>
Indefinite time (already, still, just)	mid	<i>I've already seen the film.</i> <i>I still don't understand.</i>
Some indefinite time adverbs can go in the end position.		<i>I've seen the film already.</i> <i>I haven't seen it yet.</i>
Frequency (always, never, seldom)	mid	<i>I always drink tea in the morning.</i>
Comment (clearly, obviously, naturally)	front or mid	<i>Obviously I got it wrong.</i> <i>I obviously got it wrong.</i>
Linking (however, so, although)	front	<i>It was raining, so we went home.</i>
Degree/intensifier (very, nearly, really)	before the word they qualify	<i>I really like you. (before a verb)</i> <i>I'm really hot. (before an adjective)</i> <i>You very nearly killed me! (before another adverb)</i>

Notes

- 1 Some adverbs can be both comment and manner. The position depends on which use it is.

I can see the boat clearly. (manner)

Clearly you need to curb your spending. (comment)

Many herbs grow naturally in hot climates. (manner)

Naturally, I'll pay you back the money I owe you. (comment)

- 2 Some adverbs express how complete something is. They come in mid-position.

I have completely forgotten her name.

We have almost finished our work.

- 3 If there is more than one adverbial in the end position, the normal order is manner, place, time.

He played well yesterday.

I watched the sun rise slowly above the horizon.

I was at home yesterday.

► 3.4 Adverb collocation

Adverbs can go with certain verbs or adjectives because there is a link in meaning between the two. For example, emotions can be deep, so we often find the adverb *deeply* with words that express feelings.

deeply regret deeply embarrassing deeply hurt
Here are some more examples.

freely admit	desperately anxious
highly recommended	feel strongly
severely damaged	fully insured
walk briskly	easily confused
sadly missed	

► 3.5 Adverbs with two forms

Some adverbs have two forms, one with and one without *-ly*. Sometimes the two meanings are connected:

We were flying high over the ocean.

I think very highly of Joe and his work.

Hold tight! The train's going to move.

We control our expenditure tightly.

Sometimes the two meanings are not connected:

We work hard. (a lot)

I hardly recognized her. (= almost not)

Turn right round. (= completely)

If I remember rightly, they live here. (correctly)

► 3.6 just

Just has several meanings.

exactly	This house is just right for us.
only	He isn't a man. He's just a boy.
a short time before	I've just tried phoning you.
right now	I'm just getting dressed.
simply, only	I just want you to go.
equally, no less	I'd just like an egg for breakfast.
	You're just as bad as David.

Just about means *almost*.

'Are you ready to go?' 'Just about.'

It can express something that is nearly not possible.

I can just reach the top shelf.

Sometimes it doesn't mean very much. It just emphasizes what you're saying!

Just what do you think you're doing?!

It's just incredible!

UNIT 4

4.1 Discourse markers

Discourse markers are words and expressions that show how a piece of discourse is constructed. They can:

- show the connection between what is being said now to what was said before.
- show the connection between what is being said now to what is about to be said.
- show the speaker's attitude to what has been said.
- show the speaker's attitude to what he/she is saying.
- clarify, direct, correct, persuade, etc.

This list is not exhaustive.

Basically, you're spending too much money.
(This is the most important point.)
You think I'm wrong, but **actually** I'm right.
(I'm correcting you as gently as possible.)
Quite honestly, you need a better job.
(I'm going to speak to you sincerely.)
Apparently, there are good jobs in the City.
(I've heard this, but I don't know if it's true.)
Admittedly, you'd have to move.
(I know this point weakens what I'm saying.)
Surely you can understand what I'm saying?
(I don't know why you don't agree with me.)
After all, I gave you good advice before.
(Don't forget this. It explains why I'm right.)
As a matter of fact, I saved your company.
(This is a fact which might surprise you.)
Mind you/Still, that was a long time ago.
(It occurs to me that this contrasts with what I just said.)
Actually, you didn't thank me then, either.
(I'm adding some new information to what I just said.)
I mean, why should I bother about you?
(I'm trying to make things clear to you.)
Obviously, you aren't going to take my advice.
(This fact cannot be doubted.)
At least, I doubt if you will.
(I'm correcting or changing what I just said.)
Naturally, you'll do what you think is best.
(Of course this is what I would expect.)
Anyway, it's up to you.
(I'm concluding, and not talking about that any more.)
All in all, finding an interesting job isn't easy.
(I'm considering every part of the situation.)
The ball's in your court, **so to speak**.
(I'm using words that don't have their usual meaning.)
By the way, can you lend me some money?
(This isn't connected to what we've been talking about.)

Tags and replies

It has been said that a solid grasp of the systems of auxiliaries is essential to mastery of spoken English.

4.2 Question tags

Falling intonation

With a falling intonation on the tag, this is not a real question. It means 'Agree with me, talk to me.'

It's a lovely day, *isn't it?*

The film was great, *wasn't it?*

Note

We can reply to a statement with a question tag.

'Lovely day today!' 'Yes, it is, *isn't it?*'

'You're filthy!' 'Yes, I am, *aren't I?*'

'Their kids have got good appetites.' 'Yes, they have, *haven't they?*'

Rising intonation

With a rising intonation on the tag, we really want to know something because we aren't sure of the answer.

You didn't say that to him, *did you?*

They wouldn't take my car away, *would they?*

Notes

Notice the auxiliaries in these questions tags.

Let's go, *shall we?*

Give me a hand, *will you?*

Don't forget to post my letter, *will you?*

Nobody phoned, *did they?*

These question tags can be used in requests.

You couldn't lend me a tenner, *could you?*

You haven't seen Peter anywhere, *have you?*

Same way tags

These occur after affirmative sentences. The tag is positive and the intonation rises. The speaker repeats what he/she has just heard and uses the tag to express interest, surprise, concern, or some other reaction.

So you're Kevin's sister, *are you?* I've heard a lot about you.

So you like rap music, *do you?* Well, just listen to this.

Reinforcement tag

There is no inversion in the tag and the intonation rises. The tag emphasizes the idea in the main clause by repeating it, and these tags are used to express that the speaker knows exactly what he/she is talking about.

She's a clever girl, *she is.* You're blind, *you are.*

It's possible to introduce the subject of the sentence in the tag. In this case, there can be inversion.

She's a lovely dancer, *Jane is.*

Likes his food, *does Malcolm.*

4.3 Replies

Short answers

Short answers are used in reply to Yes/No questions.

'Did you have a good time?' 'Yes, I did. *It was great.*'

'Have you been to Russia?' 'No, I haven't, *but I'd like to.*'

Reply questions

We use reply questions to show interest, and to show we're listening.

'I had a terrible day today.' 'Did you, *dear?*'

'The boss was in a foul mood.' 'Was he?'

Avoiding repetition

This was dealt with in Unit 1.

'Who wants an ice-cream?' 'I do.' (I want an ice-cream.)

'Who came to the party?' 'Everybody *did.*'

UNIT 5

Adding emphasis

► 5.1 Structures which add emphasis

Sentences can be emphasized by adding certain structures. They are called cleft or divided sentences. Look at this base sentence.

Lucy moved to London.

We can emphasize different parts of the sentence according to which element is the most important:

What Lucy did was move to London. (What = the thing which/that)

Where Lucy moved to was London. (Where = the place which/that)

Why Lucy moved to London was because ... (Why = the reason why)

It was Lucy who/that moved to London. (who = the person who/that)

Or we can emphasize the whole sentence:

What happened was that

What surprised me was the fact that | *Lucy moved to London.*

What interests me is why

► 5.2 Negative inversion

Sentences can be given emphasis by negative inversion, which can take place ...

- 1 after negative adverbials such as *never, nowhere, not for one minute, not since, not until, never again, rarely*. It is mainly used in written English but can also be used to emphasize points in more formal spoken English such as when making speeches.

Never had he eaten such a huge meal.

Nowhere will you come across a more hospitable nation.

Nothing do they appreciate more than a trip to the country.

Not until 1918 did British women get the vote.

Rarely do you meet a man of such integrity.

- 2 in certain established sentence patterns.

Hardly had he begun to speak when the majority of the guests departed.

No sooner had we sat down to dinner than the doorbell rang.

Little did anyone realize the seriousness of the situation.

- 3 after expressions with *only* and *no*.

Only when I myself became a parent did I realize the value of my parents' advice.

Not only did she write short stories, but she was also a painter of talent.

At no time was I ever informed.

In no way can this government deny its guilt.

On no account will I compromise my ideals.

► 5.3 Pronunciation

Of course a major way of adding emphasis in spoken English is by stressing individual words. In English a change of word stress changes the meaning of a sentence. Look at this base sentence:

John likes the brown shoes.

John likes the brown shoes. (Tom doesn't.)

John likes the brown shoes. (He doesn't hate them.)

John likes the brown shoes. (Not the black ones.)

John likes the brown shoes. (Not the brown sandals.)

Note

It is possible to stress the word *the* (pronounced /ði:/) when it means that something is so superior to the alternatives, it can be considered the only real choice.

If John wants brown shoes, Jimmy Choo shoes are the brown shoes to buy.

► 5.4 Emphatic *do, does, did*

Do, does, and did can be used to give emphasis in positive statements in the Present and Past Simple, and also in the imperative.

John does like the brown shoes. (You were wrong!)

Do come with us on holiday. We'd love you to.

I do love you, really I do.

He does seem rather upset.

They did question him very thoroughly, didn't they?

UNIT 6

Reporting with passive verbs

We can report words and actions using the passive in various ways.

► 6.1 *It + passive verb + that clause*

It is said that Bet Molam, the writer, earns \$1m a year.

It is reported that she is living in a rented house in Malibu.

It has been alleged that she married her third husband last week.

It is known that she has been working on a new book.

It is said that the book is based on her experiences in the Far East.

It is understood that she has been given an advance of \$500,000.

Other verbs that follow this pattern are:

agree	calculate	discover	hope	show
allege	claim	estimate	know	suggest
announce	consider	expect	presume	suppose
assume	decide	fear	propose	think
believe	declare	feel	recommend	

With some verbs we can use an infinitive instead of a *that* clause.

It was agreed to buy the company for €500 million.

It is hoped to find a solution to the problem soon.

It has been decided to relocate.

It is planned to move our premises to Scotland.

► 6.2 Subject + passive verb + *to* infinitive

Bet Molam is said to earn \$1m a year. (Present Simple infinitive)

She is reported to be living in Malibu. (Present Continuous infinitive)

She is alleged to have married her third husband. (perfect infinitive)

She is known to have been working on a new book. (perfect continuous infinitive)

The book is said to be based on her experiences. (present passive infinitive)

She is understood to have been given an advance. (perfect passive infinitive)

Other verbs that follow this pattern are:

allege	consider	know	say	think
assume	estimate	presume	suggest	understand
believe	expect	report	suppose	

Notice this transformation with *there*:

It is thought that there has been a plane crash this afternoon.

There is thought to have been a plane crash this afternoon.

It is estimated that there are one million unemployed.

There are estimated to be one million unemployed.

► 6.3 seem and appear

We can use *seem* and *appear* to give information without stating categorically that we know it to be true.

They can be used in two patterns.

- 1 *It + seem/appear + that clause*
It seems that she's upset.
It appears that she's crying.
It seems that I made a mistake.
It appeared that his car had been stolen.
- 2 *Subject + seem/appear + to infinitive*
She seems to be upset.
She appears to be crying.
I seem to have made a mistake.
His car appears to have been stolen.

We can make the statement more tentative with the use of *would*.

It would seem the problem has been nipped in the bud.

I would appear to have mislaid my wallet.

UNIT 7

Modal auxiliary verbs

Modal verbs are a very rich and subtle area of the English language. They can all refer to the certainty, possibility, or probability of an event, and they can all refer to future time. Certain modals can also express other areas of meaning (see below).

► 7.1 Modals of probability in the present and future

The main modal verbs that express present and future probability are given here in order of degrees of certainty, *will* being the most certain and *might/could* being the least certain.

1 *will*

Will and *won't* are used to predict a future event which is seen as certain, a future fact.

I'll be on holiday next week. I won't do any work at all.

Term will end on June 29th.

Will and *won't* are also used to express what we strongly believe to be true about the present. They indicate an assumption based on our knowledge of people and things: their routine, character, and qualities.

Is that the phone? It'll be John. He said he'd ring around now.

'I wonder what Meg's doing now?' 'It's 7.00. I suppose she'll be getting ready to go out.'

Don't take the meat out of the oven. It won't be ready yet.

2 *must* and *can't*

Must is used to assert what we infer or conclude to be the most logical or rational interpretation of a situation or events. We have a lot of evidence but it is less certain than *will*.

Wow, look over there! That must be John's new car.

You must be joking! I simply don't believe you.

The negative of this use of *must* is *can't*.

She can't have a ten-year-old daughter! She's only twenty-five herself!

3 *should*

Should expresses what may reasonably be expected to happen. It also carries the meaning that we want whatever is predicted to happen, and is therefore not used to express negative or unpleasant ideas. It can also suggest a conditional: if everything has gone/goes according to plan, then (x) should happen.

Our guests should be here soon. (if they haven't got lost)

This homework shouldn't take you too long. (if you've understood what you have to do)

We should be moving into our new house soon. (as long as all the arrangements go smoothly)

4 *may*

May expresses the possibility that something will happen or is already happening.

We may go to Greece for our holidays. We haven't decided yet.

We may not have enough money to go abroad this year.

5 *might*

Might, like *may*, expresses possibility, but in a more tentative way.

It might rain. Take your umbrella.

I might not be back in time for supper, so don't wait for me.

6 *could*

Could is used in a similar way to *might*.

It could rain, but I doubt it.

That French film could be worth seeing, but it didn't get very good reviews.

The negative, *could not*, is NOT used to express future possibility. *Might not* is the negative of *could* in this use.

It looks like it could rain, but it might not.

He might not come.

The negative *couldn't* has a similar meaning to *can't* in 2 above, only slightly weaker.

She couldn't have a 10-year-old daughter! She's only 25 herself!

7 *can*

We use *can* to express what is generally and all-time true, and logically possible.

Cycling in town can be dangerous.

Can cannot be used to predict future possibility. We must use *will be possible* or *will be able to*.

In years to come it'll be possible to have holidays on the moon.

We'll be able to travel by space ship.

► 7.2 Modal auxiliaries in the past

All the modal verbs given above are also used with *have + past participle* (the perfect infinitive) to express varying degrees of certainty about the past. Again, *will/would* is the most certain and *might/could* the least certain. *Can* is a special case (see below).

You met a man with a big, black moustache? That would have been my Uncle Tom.

It won't have been Peter you met at the party. He wasn't invited.

It must have been Simon. He looks very like Peter.

It can't have been a very interesting party. No one seems to have enjoyed it.

Where's Henry? He should have been here ages ago! He may have got lost.

He might have decided not to come. He could have had an accident.

He can hardly have forgotten to come.

Can have is only used in questions or with *hardly*, *only*, or *never*.

Where can he have got to?

They can only have known each other for a few weeks.

► 7.3 Other uses of modal auxiliary verbs, present and past

Obligation

Must is used to express strong obligation. The past is expressed by *had to*.

You must try harder! I had to work hard to pass my exams.

Should is used to express milder obligation. The past is expressed by *should have (+ past participle)*.

You should rest. You should have taken it more seriously.

Permission

Can and *may* are used to ask for permission. *May* sounds more formal than *can*.

Can I ask you a question?

May I ask what the purpose of this visit is?

The past of *may* and *can* is expressed by *was allowed to*. *Could* can only be used to report permission.

I was allowed to do whatever I wanted when I was young.
My parents said I could stay out until after midnight.

Ability

Can is used to express general ability; the form in the past is *could*.
I can swim. I could swim when I was 6.

To express a particular ability on one occasion in the past, *could* is not used. Instead, *was able to* or *managed to* is used.

The prisoner managed to escape by climbing onto the roof.
I was able to give the police a full description.

Willingness

Won't expresses a refusal, by either people or things. The past is *wouldn't*.

The car won't start.

He was angry because she wouldn't lend him any money.

Characteristic behaviour/habit

Will is used to express characteristic behaviour. The past is expressed by *would*.

He'll sit for hours staring into the fire.

My grandma would always bring me a little present when she came to visit.

If *will* is stressed, it suggests criticism and irritation.

David will leave his homework until the last minute. It's infuriating.

Past forms of need

Need has two past forms.

Needn't have (+ past participle) expresses an action that was completed but that wasn't necessary.

You needn't have bought any butter. We've got lots.

Didn't need to (+ infinitive) expresses an action that was not necessary, but we do not know if it was in fact completed or not. The context usually makes this clear.

I didn't need to do any shopping because I was eating out that night.

UNIT 8

► 8.1 would

Would can express past habits.

When I was a kid, we'd go looking for mushrooms.

My grandfather would sit in his armchair and nod off.

If *would* is stressed, it suggests criticism and irritation.

My sister would borrow my clothes without asking. It really annoyed me.

Stressed *would* can also be used to criticize a single past action. The meaning is 'that's typical of you/him/her'.

Did she say I hit her? She would say that. I hate her.

Would is used to express the future in the past (see p78). It reports speech and thoughts.

You promised you'd help me.

I knew you wouldn't like it.

Would can express a refusal on a particular past occasion.

I asked him if he was going out with anyone, but he wouldn't tell me.

The printer wouldn't stop printing, so I turned it off at the mains.

Real and unreal tense usage

Introduction

English tense usage can be divided into two categories: tenses used to refer to fact, and those used to refer to non-fact. Fact is what is considered to be real or quite possible; non-fact is what is supposed or wished for, which is either unreal or improbable.

Fact | *I work in a restaurant, but I don't earn much.*

| *If I find a better job, I'll take it.*

Non-fact | *I wish I had a lot of money.*

| *If I had a lot of money, I would open my own restaurant.*

Tenses used to refer to fact are related to real time. For example, a past verb form refers to the past.

I had a lovely holiday in Spain last year.

Tenses used to refer to non-fact are not related to real time. Generally speaking, this unreality is expressed by shifting the verb form 'backwards', for example, from present to past.

If I had a car, I could visit my friends.

Here the past verb form does not refer to the real past, but to the 'wished for' present and future. It has the effect of distancing the meaning from reality.

► 8.2 Type 1 conditional sentences (real)

It is important to understand this difference between fact and non-fact when discussing conditional sentences.

- Type 1 conditional sentences are based on fact in real time. They express a possible condition and its probable result.

If it rains, I'll get wet.

If he doesn't come soon, we'll miss the bus.

- *Will* is not usually used in the condition clause. However, it can appear when *will* expresses willingness (or in the negative, refusal), or insistence.

If you'll wash the dishes, I'll put them away. (if you are willing to)

If Peter won't give you a lift, I will. (if Peter isn't willing to)

If you will smoke, of course you'll get a cough. (if you insist on smoking)

When *will* expresses insistence, it is stressed and never contracted.

- *Should* and *happen to* can be used in the condition clause to suggest that something may happen by chance, but is unlikely.

If you should come across Pearl, tell her to give me a ring.

If you happen to find my book, pop it in the post to me.

- There are several other links with meanings similar to *if* that can introduce Type 1 conditional sentences.

Provided/Providing I have the time, I'll give you a hand to fix it.

Supposing you miss the plane, what will you do?

I'll come tomorrow unless I hear from you before. (if I don't hear from you)

► 8.3 Type 2 conditional sentences (unreal)

Type 2 conditional sentences are not based on fact. They express a situation which is contrary to reality in the present and future; a hypothetical condition and its probable result. This unreality is shown by a tense shift 'backwards':

Present → Past, *will* → *would*

If I were taller, I'd join the police force. (In reality I am not, and never will be, tall enough to join the police force.)

If you saw a ghost, what would you do? (I don't believe in ghosts, so I don't think you will ever see one.)

The difference between Type 1 and Type 2 conditional sentences is not related to time. Both can refer to the present or the future. By using a past verb form in Type 2, the speaker suggests that the situation is less probable, or impossible, or imaginary.

Compare the following.

If it rains this weekend, I'll ... (Said in England, where rain is common.)
If it rained in the Sahara, the desert would ... (This would be most unusual.)

If there is a nuclear war, we will ... (I am a pessimist. Nuclear war is a real possibility.)

If there was a nuclear war, we would ... (I am an optimist and I think nuclear war is very unlikely to happen.)

If you come to my country, you'll have a good time. (Possible.)

If you came from my country, you'd understand us better. (Impossible -- you don't come from my country.)

Notes

Were is often used instead of *was*, especially when the style is formal. It is also commonly used in the expression *If I were you ...* when giving advice.

If he were more honest, he would be a better person.

If I were you, I'd cook it for a little longer.

The Type 2 conditional can make a suggestion sound less direct and hence more polite.

Would it be convenient if I called this evening around 8.00?

Would you mind if I opened the window slightly?

Would is not usually used in the condition clause. However, as with *will* in Type 1, it can appear when it expresses willingness. Again, it makes a suggestion sound more polite.

I would be grateful if you would give this matter your serious attention.

Were to can be used in the condition clause to suggest that something is unlikely to happen.

If you were to find that your neighbours were drug smugglers, what would you do?

► 8.4 Type 3 conditional sentences (unreal)

Type 3 conditional sentences, like Type 2, are not based on fact. They express a situation which is contrary to reality in the past. This unreality is shown by a tense shift 'backwards':

Past → Past Perfect, *would* → *would have*

If I had known his background, I would never have employed him. (I didn't know his background and I did employ him.)

If I hadn't seen it with my own eyes, I wouldn't have thought it possible. (I did see it with my own eyes, so it must be possible.)

► 8.5 Type 2 and Type 3 mixed

It is possible for each of the two clauses in a conditional sentence to have a different time reference, and the result is a mixed conditional.

If we had brought a map with us, we would know where we are.

If we had brought ... is contrary to past fact (we didn't bring a map).

... we would know ... is contrary to present fact (we don't know).

If I didn't love her, I wouldn't have married her.

If I didn't love her ... is contrary to present fact (I do love her).

I wouldn't have married her ... is contrary to past fact (I did marry her).

Care needs to be taken when the Type 2 conditional refers to the future. *I'd come to the party next Saturday if I hadn't arranged to go to the theatre.*

This conditional is sometimes 'unmixed' to regularize the tense sequence.

I would have come to the party next Saturday if I hadn't arranged to go to the theatre.

Hypothesizing

There are certain other constructions that have a hypothetical meaning and, as in conditional sentences, the unreality that they express is again shown by shifting the verb form 'backwards'.

I wish I knew the answer. (But I don't know.)

If only I hadn't behaved so badly. (But I did behave badly.)

► 8.6 Hypothesizing about the present and future

The Past Simple tense form is used for present and future time reference. Notice that *were* is used instead of *was*, especially in formal style.

I wish I were taller! *If only he were here now!*

Supposing/suppose you had a million pounds? What would you do?

Present state v. present action or event

When we hypothesize about a present state, the Past Simple tense form is used.

I wish you lived nearer. *If only I had a car!*

When we hypothesize about a present action or event, *would* is used.

I wish you'd help more in the house.

If only she wouldn't wash her socks in the bath!

Would here expresses willingness in the first sentence, and annoying habit in the second.

I wish/If only

Notice that it is unusual to say *I wish/If only I wouldn't ...* because we can control what we want to do. However, we can say *I wish/If only I could ...*

I wish I could remember where I put my glasses.

If only I could give up smoking.

We can say *I wish/If only ... would* to refer to a definite time in the future, but only if we think that the action will probably not happen.

I wish she'd come with me tomorrow.

If only you'd fix the car this weekend, we could go for a drive.

If it is possible that our wish will be realized, then a different structure such as *I hope* is needed.

I hope it doesn't rain tomorrow.

Fact v. non-fact

Notice the difference between fact and non-fact in the following pair of sentences.

He looks as if he is French. (Fact -- it is possible that he is.)

He looks as if he were French. (Non-fact -- we know he isn't.)

The same distinction is found with other *as if/as though* structures.

Why is that girl smiling at me as though she knew me?

He behaves as if he owned the place.

It's time

It's time can be followed by an infinitive.

It's time to go to bed. *It's time for us to go.*

It is also possible to use a past tense.

It's time we went home. *It's time I was going.*

When we want to say that it is time for someone else to do something, the past tense is often used.

It's time you got your hair cut.

would rather

Would rather can be followed by an infinitive (without to).

I'd rather have red wine, please.

When *would rather* is followed by another person, the construction *would rather* + person + past tense form is used.

I'd rather you kept this a secret.

She would rather you paid by cheque.

► 8.7 Hypothesizing about the past

The Past Perfect tense form is used for past time reference.

I wish she hadn't been so unkind.

If only the police had looked in the attic, they would have found him!

Supposing/Suppose we had missed the plane? What would we have done?

would rather

Would rather + the Past Perfect is possible, but it is more usual to express the same idea using *wish*.

I'd rather you'd left. I wish you'd left.

Fact v. non-fact

Notice the difference between fact and non-fact in the following sentences.

He looked as if he was tired. (Fact – this is probably how he felt.)

He looked as if he had seen a ghost. (Non-fact – very improbable.)

would like

Would like can be used with a perfect infinitive to talk about things we wish we had done.

I would like to have lived in the eighteenth century.

This can also be expressed by *would have liked* followed by either an ordinary infinitive or a perfect infinitive.

I would have liked to live I would have liked to have lived	in the eighteenth century.
--	----------------------------

The same forms can be used to refer to the present and the future if it is contrary to fact.

I would like to have stayed in I would have liked to stay in I would have liked to have stayed in	tonight, instead of going out.
---	--------------------------------

► 8.8 Softening the message

We can make our message less direct by using certain constructions.

A past tense

I wondered if you were free tonight? I thought we could go to the cinema.

The continuous

I was hoping you could tell me the answer. When will you be arriving?

would

Would it be possible for you to come back tomorrow?

Wouldn't it be better if you did it my way?

I would say/think she's in her seventies.

I would have said/thought she was about 65.

I wouldn't be surprised if Jack didn't come soon.

I just thought I'd give you a ring to see if you were all right.

You'd have thought she could have remembered my birthday.

UNIT 9

Verb patterns

► 9.1 Verb patterns with the gerund

The gerund or -ing form is used:

- 1 After certain verbs

admit	deny	regret	suggest
-------	------	--------	---------

He admitted stealing the money.

- 2 After prepositions, prepositional verbs, and phrasal verbs

After leaving school he joined the army.

She apologized for arriving late.

I've given up smoking at last.

Note

The preposition *to* (not *to* as part of the infinitive) can cause problems. This is because *to* + -ing seems a strange combination.

I'm looking forward to seeing you.

I'm not used to driving on the left.

Do you feel up to going out this evening?

► 9.2 Verb patterns with the infinitive

Verb + infinitive + to

The pattern of verb + infinitive + *to* is used:

- 1 After certain verbs

ask	agree	offer	promise	refuse	want
-----	-------	-------	---------	--------	------

He asked to do it.

- 2 After certain verbs + object

ask	beg	encourage	order	persuade	tell	want
-----	-----	-----------	-------	----------	------	------

They asked him to do it.

Note

Some verbs can take both of the above patterns.

ask	beg	want	help
-----	-----	------	------

She wanted to do it.

She wanted him to do it.

Verb + infinitive without to

make	let	help
------	-----	------

They made me do it.

Notes

- 1 All infinitive patterns are possible with *help*.
- 2 The passive of *make* takes *to*.
I was made to do it.
- 3 The passive of *let* is *allowed to*.
I was allowed to do it.

► 9.3 Verb + that + clause

In some (not all) of the above examples, a *that* clause can be used after the main verb in place of a gerund or infinitive. There is no change in meaning. *That* itself can be omitted.

She admitted (that) she had made a mistake.

He promised (that) he would do it.

They suggested (that) we should have a long break.

Notes

- 1 *Suggest* has special problems. These constructions are also possible.
They suggested (that) we have a long break.
They suggested (that) we had a long break.
- 2 He wanted that I do it is a common mistake.

► 9.4 Verb + -ing or to with little or no change of meaning

The verbs *begin*, *start*, and *continue* can take either -ing or *to* and mean the same.

It	started began continued	to rain. raining.
----	-------------------------------	----------------------

Note

The choice may be governed by style or the nature of the following verb.

It's just starting to rain. (NOT ~~starting-raining~~)

He slowly began to understand the situation. (NOT ~~began-understanding~~)

Many verbs that express feelings and attitudes (*like, love, prefer, can't stand, etc.*) can be followed by either *-ing* or *to*, and the distinction in meaning is small.

I like travelling by train. (general truth)

I like to travel by train when I go to my grandmother's. (a little more particular)

Like + -ing can mean *enjoy*. *Like + infinitive* can express what you think is the right thing to do.

I like cooking. *I like to pay my bills on time.*

Note

The infinitive is always used with *would like/prefer, etc.*

I'd like to travel by train when I next visit her. (one particular occasion)

► 9.5 Verbs + *-ing* or *to* with a change of meaning

- After the verbs *remember, forget, and regret*, the gerund refers to an action earlier in time than the main verb; the infinitive refers to an action at the same time or later.

I remember giving her the message when I saw her.

Please remember to give her the message when you see her.

I regret saying that because I upset her.

I regret to say we can't offer you the job.

- After the verb *stop* and the phrasal verb *go on*, the gerund refers to an existing action; the infinitive refers to a following action.

He went on repeating the question.

He went on to say that he wanted my advice.

- After verbs of the senses *see, hear, etc.* + object the gerund signifies an action in progress; the infinitive a completed action.

We saw him cutting the hedge. (He was in the middle of doing it.)

We saw him cut the hedge. (We saw the whole event from start to finish.)

► 9.6 Perfect and passive forms

The gerund and infinitive also have perfect and passive forms.

I don't remember having said that.

She suffered from having had a difficult childhood.

He doesn't like being told what to do.

Unit 10

► 10.1 Intensifying adverbs and verbs

As we saw in Unit 3, certain verbs and intensifying adverbs go together because there is a link in meaning.

deeply regret *sincerely hope* *desperately need*

However, in most cases of verb + intensifying adverb, there is no reason at all why some combinations are possible and some are not.

Possible combinations		Impossible combinations
totally absolutely quite	agree	sincerely agree quite disagree totally remember
totally	disagree	fully think
completely fully perfectly	understand	completely adore fully destroy strongly like
seriously sincerely	believe	
completely strongly entirely really thoroughly greatly	forget disapprove depend like enjoy appreciate	

► 10.2 Intensifying adverbs and adjectives

It is important to understand the difference between gradable and extreme (or limit) adjectives. Gradable adjectives express qualities that can exist in different strengths. For example, a person can be more or less intelligent, a room more or less dirty, a film more or less interesting. Limit adjectives express extreme qualities.

a brilliant person *a filthy room* *a fascinating film*

Look at these pairs of gradable and limit adjectives.

angry / furious *big / enormous* *important / essential*
tired / exhausted *long / endless* *tasty / delicious*
happy / delighted *upset / devastated* *surprised / amazed*

Different intensifying adverbs go with gradable and limit adjectives.

Intensifying adverbs + gradable adjective	Intensifying adverbs + limit adjective
very extremely really awfully terribly pretty rather fairly quite	absolutely totally really completely entirely simply utterly pretty quite

As with verbs, not all combinations are possible. There is no real reason why we can't say ~~totally essential, entirely determined, completely furious~~ – we just can't!

The only combinations that are always possible are *very* + gradable adjective and *absolutely* + limit adjective. *Really* can go with most adjectives, both gradable and limit.

very happy/tired/big

absolutely enormous/delicious/delighted

really angry/surprised/amazed

► 10.3 *quite*

Quite has three meanings.

- With gradable adjectives, when the stress is on *quite*, it means 'down a bit'. It says 'OK, but not as good as I expected'. It is negative.

The restaurant was quite good, but I wouldn't go back.

- With gradable adjectives, when the stress is on the adjective, it means 'up a bit'. It says 'It was better than I expected'. It is positive.

The film was quite good. You'd really like it.

- With a limit adjective, it means 'up to the top'. There is stress on *quite* as well as the adjective, and the rising intonation is exaggerated.

He's being quite ridiculous! *You're quite right.*

Are you quite sure?

UNIT 11

► 11.1 Adjective order

Generally speaking, value adjectives (which indicate personal opinion) come first, followed by size, age, shape, colour, origin, and material.

Compound nouns (e.g. *washing machine, coffee pot*) are never separated.

There are several examples below of noun phrases with adjectives in this order.

two lovely black leather riding boots

a priceless nineteenth-century Impressionist painting

their huge circular swimming pool

my Swedish wooden salad bowl

the dirty old metal garden seat

one tiny L-shaped utility room

Jane's pretty Victorian writing desk

his charming whitewashed country cottage

Relative clauses

Introduction

It is important to distinguish between defining and non-defining relative clauses. Defining relative clauses are an essential part of the meaning of a sentence and therefore they cannot be left out. They define exactly who or what we are talking about.

There's the woman you were telling me about.

Non-defining relative clauses add extra information of secondary importance, and can be left out of a sentence.

Mrs Bottomley, who was an extremely mean person while she was alive, has left all her money to a cats' home.

Non-defining relative clauses are mainly found in written English, where sentences are carefully constructed. In spoken English, they sound rather formal, and can easily be expressed by simpler sentences.

Did you know Mrs Bottomley has left all her money to a cats' home? It's incredible, really. She was such a mean person.

▶ 11.2 Defining relative clauses

These are the main forms used. The forms in brackets are possible, but not as common.

	Person	Thing
Subject	who (that)	that (which)
Object	— (that)	— (that)

Notice that English likes to drop the relative pronoun when it defines the object of the clause.

The doctor who helped me most was Dr Clark. (subject)

The doctor I found most helpful was Dr Clark. (object)

The treatment that helped me most was acupuncture. (subject)

The treatment I liked best was acupuncture. (object)

Notice that there are no commas before and after defining relative clauses when written, and no pauses when spoken.

that

That is usually used as subject after the following: superlatives, *all*, *every(thing)*, *some(thing)*, *any(thing)*, *no(thing)*, and *only*.

He wrote some of the best poetry that's ever been written.

All that's needed is a little more time.

Don't take anything that's valuable.

The only thing that matters is that you're safe.

We often omit *that* when it is the object.

She's one of the nicest people I know.

Is there anything I can do to help?

Prepositions

Prepositions can come either before relative pronouns or at the end of the relative clause. In spoken English, it is much more common to put the preposition at the end (and to drop the pronoun).

This is the book I was talking to you about.

The people I work with are very kind.

Second relative clause

A second relative, introduced by *and* or *but*, usually takes a *wh*-pronoun, not *that*.

Someone that I greatly admire, but who I've never met, is Professor Keats.

▶ 11.3 Non-defining relative clauses

These are the main forms used. The form in brackets is possible, but not as common.

	Person	Thing
Subject	... , who ... ,	... , which ... ,
Object	... , who ... (, whom ...)	... , which ...

Mr Jenkins, who has written several books, spoke at the meeting last night. (subject)

Peter Clark, who the Prime Minister sacked from the Cabinet, has become the chairman of Redland Bank. (object)

My favourite drink is whisky, which is one of Britain's most profitable exports. (subject)

I gave him a sandwich, which he ate greedily. (object)

Notice that there are commas around non-defining relative clauses when written, and pauses before and after them when spoken.

Prepositions

Prepositions can come at the end of non-defining relative clauses, but in a formal style they are usually put before the relative pronoun.

The lecturer spoke for two hours on the subject of Weingarten's Theory of Market Forces, which none of us had ever heard of.

The privatization of all industry, to which this government is deeply committed, is not universally popular.

which

Which can be used in non-defining clauses to refer to the whole of the preceding clause.

He passed the exam, which surprised everyone.

The lift isn't working, which means we'll have to use the stairs.

whose

Whose can be used in both defining and non-defining relative clauses to refer to possession.

There's the woman whose son was killed recently. (defining)

ABC Airways, whose fares across the Atlantic were lower than anybody else's, has just declared itself bankrupt. (non-defining)

what

What is used as a relative pronoun instead of *the thing that* in some sentences.

Has she told you what's worrying her?

I have to do what I believe is right.

when and where

When and *where* can be used to introduce both defining and non-defining relative clauses. In defining relative clauses, *when* can be left out.

Can you tell me the exact time (when) you hope to arrive?

Where cannot be left out unless we add a preposition.

That's the hotel where we're staying.

That's the hotel we're staying at.

In non-defining relative clauses, *when* and *where* cannot be left out.

We go swimming after 5.00, when everyone else has gone home.

He shops in Oxford, where his sister lives.

why

Why can be used to introduce defining relative clauses after the word *reason*. It can be left out.

Do you remember the reason why we are arguing?

We can also say *Do you remember why we are arguing?* where the clause beginning with *why* is the object of the verb.

Participles

► 11.4 Participles as adjectives

Present participles describe an action which is still happening.

He dived into the sea to save the drowning child.

They watched the burning forest.

Past participles describe the result of an action that has happened.

She looked at the broken chair.

The completed statue looked very lifelike.

► 11.5 Participles as reduced relative clauses

When participles come after a noun, they are like reduced relative clauses.

I met a woman riding a donkey. (who was riding)

The cash stolen in the raid was never recovered. (that was stolen)

The man being interviewed by the police is suspected of arson. (who is being interviewed)

► 11.6 Participles in adverb clauses

- 1 Participle clauses can describe actions that are going on simultaneously.

She sat by the fire reading a book and sipping a mug of coffee.

He went to the party dressed as a monkey.

- 2 Participle clauses can describe actions that happen consecutively.

Opening his suitcase, he took out a revolver.

Released from its cage, the lion prowled around.

- 3 If it is important to show that the first action has finished before the second begins, the perfect participle is used.

Having finished lunch, we set off.

- 4 Participle clauses can express the idea of *because*.

Being a mean person, he never spent more than he had to. (Because he was a mean person ...)

Not knowing what to do, I waited patiently. (Because I didn't know ...)

Weakened by years of bad health, she could hardly sit up in bed.

(Because she had been weakened ...)

- 5 Participle clauses can express the idea of *result*.

It rained every day for two weeks, completely ruining our holiday.

- 6 Participle clauses can express the idea of *if*.

Taken regularly, aspirin can reduce the risk of a stroke.

- Participle clauses can be introduced by *while*, *when*, *after*, *by*, *on*, and *since*.

While studying at Oxford, he met the woman he was to marry.

When leaving the plane, remember to take your belongings with you.

After saying goodbye, he ran to catch the train.

I paid my debts by taking on another job.

On entering the room, I noticed that everyone was looking at me.

Since arriving in London, I've made a lot of friends.

Note

In all participle clauses, the subject of the clause and the subject of the main verb must be the same.

► 11.7 Participles after certain verbs

Many verbs can be followed by an *-ing* form.

I spent the evening decorating.

He spends his money gambling.

Don't waste time thinking about what might have been.

Let's go swimming.

UNIT 12

Linking devices

► 12.1 Result

so and *such*

It was raining, so we went home.

The play was so boring that I fell asleep.

It was such a boring film that I fell asleep.

as a result, *therefore*, and *consequently*

As a result, therefore, and consequently can also express the result of something.

He worked hard all his life. As a result, he amassed a fortune.

The dollar has gone down against the yen. Therefore/Consequently,

Japanese goods are more expensive for Americans. (more formal)

Participles

As we saw in Unit 11, participles can also express result.

He fell off his motorbike, breaking his leg and injuring his arm.

too and *enough*

When result involves degree (*heavy*, *hot*) or quantity (*little*, *much*), we can express the result with *too* or *enough*.

This table is too heavy for me to lift.

There are too many people to fit into this room.

I'm not strong enough to lift the table.

The room isn't big enough to fit everyone in.

► 12.2 Reason

as and *since*

As and *since* are used when the reason is already known to the listener/reader, or when it is not the most important part of the sentence.

As it was getting late, we decided it was time to leave.

Since he had very little money, James decided he should look for work.

Both these clauses are quite formal. In an informal style, we would be more likely to use *so*.

It was getting late, so we decided it was time to leave.

because

Because puts more emphasis on the reason, and most often introduces new information.

Because she was getting frail in her old age, she went to live with her daughter.

When the reason is the most important part of the sentence, the *because* clause usually comes at the end.

I went to live in London because I wanted to learn English.

for

For introduces new information, but suggests that the reason is given as an afterthought. A *for* clause could almost be in brackets.

We should plan ahead carefully, for the future is almost upon us.

because of, *due to*, and *owing to*

Because of, *due to*, and *owing to* can also express the cause of something.

We had to stop playing tennis because of the weather.

Due to the economic situation, fewer people are taking holidays this year.

Owing to a lack of funds, the project will discontinue next year.

Participles

As we saw in Unit 11, participles can also express reason.

Being an inquisitive person, I love to start conversations with strangers.

Deprived of oxygen, the animal soon died.

► 12.3 Purpose

The infinitive

The infinitive on its own is the most common pattern in informal English.

I went to Spain	to learn	Spanish.
	in order to learn	
	so as to learn	

We cannot use the infinitive in the negative.

I tiptoed upstairs	so as not to	wake anyone up.
	in order not to	

so that

We can use *so that* + *can/could* or *will/would* to express purpose.

I left for work early so that I could avoid the rush hour.

We also use *so that* when there is a change in subject.

Henry booked a taxi so that his daughter would arrive on time.

in case

When we want to prevent what might happen, we can use *in case*.

I phoned her in case she thought I was still angry with her.

This is more common than *so that* she wouldn't think I was ...

► 12.4 Contrast

But is the most common way of expressing contrast. *Even though* is more emphatic than *although*. *Though* is more formal than *although*.

There was a general strike, **but** most people managed to get to work.

Although there was a general strike,

Even though there weren't any trains, I was only an hour late.

The journey back home was all right, *though* it wasn't easy.

Though can be used as a comment adverb.

'That meal was expensive.' 'It was good, *though*.'

All the same and *even so* express contrast informally, while *however* and *nevertheless* are more formal.

I know he's a difficult person.	All the same,	I'm very fond of him.
	Even so,	

Our task became more and more demanding.	However,	we persevered.
	Nevertheless,	

In spite of and *despite* can also express contrast.

We enjoyed our picnic	despite the rain.
	in spite of the rain.

Despite being over eighty, my grandmother enjoyed the party.

► 12.5 Time

Linkers

The following linkers are conjunctions of time.

When I saw the time, I realized I was late.

As soon as I got up, I had a shower.

After I had a shower, I got dressed.

As	While	I was getting dressed, I thought about the day to come.

Before I went to work, I read the mail.

Once I'd seen the bills to pay, I left the house.

I worked	until	I had finished my project.
	till	

I've been working on this project since I joined the company.

Participles

As we saw in Unit 11, participles can also express links of time.

Grabbing my briefcase, I left to catch my train.

Having bought a ticket, I went onto the platform.

► 12.6 Condition

The following linkers are used to express a condition.

If you want a holiday, let me know.

Providing	you look after it, you can stay in my flat.
Provided	
As long as	
So long as	

Even if I'm there, I don't mind.

I'll presume you're coming *unless* I hear from you.

Whether you come or not, it would be nice to see you soon.

I'll go wherever you want.

Come whenever you want.

Bring whoever you want.

However late it is, just phone me.

No matter how late it is, (no matter who/what/when ...)

Supposing you ever ran out of cash, I could help.

New Headway

Advanced Workbook
with key

Liz and John Soars
Tim Falla

Phonetic symbols

Consonants

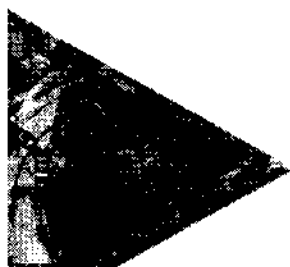
1	/p/	as in	pen /pen/
2	/b/	as in	big /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	tea /ti:/
4	/d/	as in	do /du:/
5	/k/	as in	cat /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	go /gəʊ/
7	/f/	as in	four /fɔ:/
8	/v/	as in	very /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	son /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	zoo /zu:/
11	/l/	as in	live /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	my /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	near /nɪə/
14	/h/	as in	happy /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	red /red/
16	/j/	as in	yes /jes/
17	/w/	as in	want /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	thanks /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	the /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	she /ʃi:/
21	/ʒ/	as in	television /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	child /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	German /'dʒɜ:mən/
24	/ŋ/	as in	English /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/

Vowels

25	/i:/	as in	see /si:/
26	/ɪ/	as in	his /hɪz/
27	/ɪ/	as in	twenty /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	ten /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	stamp /stæmp/
30	/ɑ:/	as in	father /'fɑ:ðə/
31	/ɒ/	as in	hot /hɒt/
32	/ɔ:/	as in	morning /'mɔ:nɪŋ/
33	/ʊ/	as in	football /'fʊtbɔ:l/
34	/u:/	as in	you /ju:/
35	/ʌ/	as in	sun /sʌn/
36	/ɜ:/	as in	learn /lɜ:n/
37	/ə/	as in	letter /'letə/

Diphthongs (two vowels together)

38	/eɪ/	as in	name /neɪm/
39	/əʊ/	as in	no /nəʊ/
40	/aɪ/	as in	my /maɪ/
41	/aʊ/	as in	how /haʊ/
42	/ɔɪ/	as in	boy /bɔɪ/
43	/ɪə/	as in	hear /hɪə/
44	/eə/	as in	where /weə/
45	/ʊə/	as in	tour /tʊə/



CONTENTS

You will need to listen to the cassette/CD for some exercises.
If you don't have the cassette/CD, you can read the tapescripts on p82-87.

UNIT 1

Avoiding repetition

- 1 Using auxiliary and modal verbs 5
- 2 Reduced infinitives 6
- 3 Synonyms or near synonyms 6

Listening

- 4 Home from home? 7

Pronunciation

- 5 Losing a syllable 7

Vocabulary

- 6 Immigration and politics 8

Prepositions

- 7 Verb + preposition 9
- 8 American versus British English 10

UNIT 2

Tense review

- 1 General review 11
- 2 Correcting mistakes 11
- 3 Text completion 12

Listening

- 4 A book I enjoyed 13

Pronunciation

- 5 A poem 13

Vocabulary

- 6 Adjectives to describe people 14
- 7 Adjectives with positive and negative meanings 14
- 8 Common spelling errors 15

Synonyms

- 9 Verbs with a similar meaning to *speak* 15

Phrasal verbs

- 10 The grammar of phrasal verbs 16

UNIT 3

Adverbs

- 1 Adverb collocations 17
- 2 Adverbs with two forms 18
- 3 *just* 19

Listening

- 4 Anita Roddick on the working environment 19

Pronunciation

- 5 Multi-syllable homographs 20

Vocabulary

- 6 Describing trends 20

Prepositions

- 7 Adjective + preposition 22

Idioms

- 8 Idiomatic collocations 22

UNIT 4

Discourse markers

- 1 Choosing the correct discourse marker 23

Tags and replies

- 2 Forming the correct tag 25

Pronunciation

- 3 Intonation in question tags 25

Listening

- 4 Would you like to be famous? 26

Vocabulary

- 5 Fame and the media 27
- 6 Antonyms 28
- 7 Synonyms and antonyms: formal and informal 29

Phrasal verbs

- 8 Phrasal verbs with a particle and preposition 29

UNIT 5

Emphasis

- 1 Structures which add emphasis 30
- 2 Negative inversion 30
- 3 The use of *-ever* for emphasis 31
- 4 Ways of adding emphasis 31

Listening

- 5 Martine and Jaap 32

Pronunciation

- 6 Sentence stress 32

Vocabulary

- 7 Problems, problems ... 33
- 8 Word puzzle 34
- 9 Adjectives and nouns 35
- 10 Nouns from adjectives + preposition 35

Synonyms

- 11 Verbs to describe different sounds 35

Phrasal verbs

- 12 Relationships 36

Endquotes

- Endquotes on love 36

UNIT 6

Passives

- 1 Reporting with passive verbs 37
- 2 Passive revision 37
- 3 *seem* and *appear* 38

Listening

- 4 Can it be true? 39

Pronunciation

- 5 Reading the news 40

Vocabulary

- 6 Nouns formed with a verb and preposition 40
- 7 Nouns with a special meaning in the plural 41

Phrasal verbs

- 8 Phrasal verbs and nouns formed from them 41

Idioms

- 9 Pairs of nouns, adverbs, and verbs 42

UNIT 7

Modal auxiliary verbs

- 1 Expressing probability 43
- 2 Expressing possibility 44
- 3 Expressing obligation 44
- 4 Set expressions with modals 45

Listening

- 5 A father's advice on marriage 46

Pronunciation

- 6 Stress and intonation of modal verbs 47

Vocabulary

- 7 Revision: word puzzle 47
- 8 Compound adjectives 48

Prepositions

- 9 Prepositions in questions 48

Endquotes 48

UNIT 8

Real and unreal tense usage

- 1 Forming the correct tense 49
- 2 *If only ... / I wish ...* for non-fact 50
- 3 *would* or *had*? 50
- 4 Mixed conditionals 50

Listening

- 5 The pictures in my house 51

Pronunciation

- 6 Conditional sentences 52

Vocabulary

- 7 Revision: metaphors and idioms 52
- 8 Metaphors and idioms to with the body 53

Synonyms

- 9 *break* and verbs with a similar meaning 54

Phrasal verbs

- 10 Phrasal verbs and their Latin-based synonyms 54

UNIT 9

Verb patterns

- 1 Using the correct form 55
- 2 Correcting mistakes 56
- 3 Verbs + *ing* or *to* with a change in meaning 56
- 4 Verbs of the senses 57

Listening

- 5 Henry VIII 57

Pronunciation

- 6 Jokes based on homophones and homonyms 58

Vocabulary

- 7 Revision: verbs and nouns 58
- 8 Historical periods 59

Prepositions

- 9 Prepositions in passive sentences 60

Idioms

- 10 Comparisons with *as ... as* 60
- 11 Comparisons with *like* 60

UNIT 10

Intensifying adverbs

- 1 Intensifying adverbs and adjectives 61
- 2 Intensifying adverbs and verbs 62

Adverbs

- 3 The position of adverbs 63

Listening

- 4 Sports – love them or loathe them? 64

Vocabulary

- 5 Revision: words to do with the body 64
- 6 Verbs of movement 65
- 7 Extreme adjectives 66

Pronunciation

- 8 Making the most of extreme adjectives 66

Phrasal verbs

- 9 Particles and meanings 67

UNIT 11

Relative clauses

- 1 Defining and non-defining relative clauses 68
- 2 Correcting mistakes 69
- 3 Spoken versus written style 69

Participles

- 4 Forming the correct participle 70
- 5 Signs and labels 70
- 6 Participle clauses introduced by *while*, *when*, *after*, *by*, *on* and *since* 71

Listening

- 7 Simon Winchester: how I became a journalist 72

Pronunciation

- 8 Word stress 72

Vocabulary

- 9 Adjective order 73
- 10 Geographical features 73

Synonyms

- 11 *shine* and words with a similar meaning 74

Prepositions

- 12 Prepositions in set phrases 74

UNIT 12

Linking devices

- 1 Revision of linkers 75
- 2 Using contrast linkers 76

General revision

- 3 Correcting mistakes 77

Listening

- 4 Estate agents' euphemisms 78

Pronunciation

- 5 Sentence stress 78

Vocabulary

- 6 Pairs of synonyms 79
- 7 Revision: word puzzle 79

Phrasal verbs

- 8 Connections between literal and metaphorical meanings 80

Idioms

- 9 Idioms with the word *time* 81

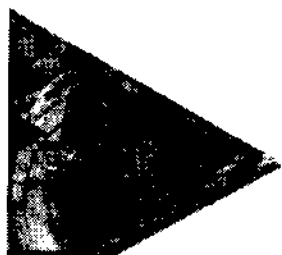
Endquotes

- Endquotes on time 81

Tapescripts 82

Key 88

Phonetic symbols 96



1

Avoiding repetition
Synonyms or near synonyms
Verb + preposition

Our land is your land!

Avoiding repetition

1 Using auxiliary and modal verbs

►► Grammar Reference 1.1 Student's Book p147

Complete the conversation with auxiliary verbs or modal verbs. Sometimes you will need to add *not*.



Ed Hi, I'm Ed. You must be the new teacher.

Sue Yes, I (1) am. My name's Sue.

Ed Welcome to Lisbon.

Sue Thanks. Have you been living here long?

Ed I certainly (2) have. Six years now.

Sue Oh, good. You might be able to explain a few things.

Ed Well, I (3) was if I can. You arrived yesterday, then?

Sue I (4) was, but my suitcases (5) were. The airline seems to have lost them.

Ed Oh, no! Have they explained what happened?

Sue They (6) had, eventually. I had to ask an official from another airline to help, but he (7) wasn't, which was a bit mean. The woman I finally got to speak to said I should have checked in early enough. I thought I (8) should! I suspect they just put my luggage on the wrong plane.

Ed I suppose they (9) will. You'll soon find out, though. Anyway, I hope the rest of your journey went OK?

Sue Yes, it (10) was, but the traffic through Lisbon seemed to be moving very slowly.

Ed I'm sure it (11) wasn't. Yesterday was a public holiday, you see.

Sue Ah, that explains it. What I saw of the city from the taxi looks great. I'm looking forward to exploring it.

Ed I bet you (12) can. Can you speak Portuguese?

Sue No.

Ed Shame. It would help if you (13) could.

Sue I speak Spanish, so I was hoping I'd be able to pick it up quite quickly just by living here.

Ed I'm sure you (14) will.

Sue I might try and join a language class, though.

Ed I (15) would if I were you. I never got my grammar sorted out in the beginning and now I really wish I (16) could.
When are you going to move into your flat?

Sue I already (17) have, but the previous tenant left a lot of stuff that needs throwing out.

Ed I'll help you with it, if you like.

Sue (18) Would you? That would be really kind.

Ed No problem.

2 Reduced infinitives

►► Grammar Reference 1.2 Student's Book p147

Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box. Use a reduced infinitive (where appropriate).

expect	forget	hope	not be able
not mean	offer	persuade	used to

- A He's upset. You shouldn't have offended him.
B I know I shouldn't have. I didn't mean to.
- At first he refused to help her, but eventually she _____ him _____.
- A Why didn't Pete give you a lift to the station?
B He _____, but I told him I'd rather walk.
- A Are you taking a holiday this summer?
B I _____, but things might end up getting very busy.
- There aren't as many refugees leaving the country now as there _____.
- I'm not surprised he was angry, but he was much angrier than I _____ him _____.
- A Why didn't you invite James to your party?
B I _____. It completely slipped my mind when I saw him last week.
- Liverpool tried really hard to score an equalizer in the last few minutes of the match, but unfortunately they _____.



3 Synonyms or near synonyms

Complete the sentences with the synonyms, or near synonyms, in *italics*. (Sometimes you have to change the form.)

friend acquaintance ally companion

- I don't socialize with them – they're more acquaintances than friends, really.
- I met a couple of French girls while I was hitch-hiking round Europe. They made great travelling _____.
- I've made a lot of enemies in this job, so I need all the _____ I can get.

love adore fancy have a crush on

- She's head over heels in love. She absolutely _____ him!
- When I was at primary school I _____ my English teacher.
- It's obvious that you _____ Carol. Why don't you ask her out?

talk chat gossip have a word with

- I love to _____ with my friends. It's fun to talk about other people.
- A What are you two talking about?
B We're just _____ about what was on TV last night.
- John wants to _____ you. I think he wants to discuss your trip to Poland.

hate abhor despise loathe

- I _____ the smell of fish – it makes me feel sick.
- The managing director said he _____ racism in the workplace.
- She _____ him because he's never worked and has always lived off other people.

laugh chuckle giggle snigger

- I wish you wouldn't keep _____ in that unpleasant way when I make suggestions.
- The little girl _____ hysterically when her Dad tickled her.
- She _____ to herself quietly as she read the magazine.

Listening

4 Home from home?

T 1.1 Part 1. Listen to Zoltán (from Hungary) talking about different aspects of living and working in Britain.

- Which aspects has he found problematic?
 - Being accepted as someone who does his job well.
 - Rules and regulations.
 - Being treated as a foreigner.
 - Understanding the cultural background of Britain.

2 Match the phrases that Zoltán uses with the definitions.

1 from the word go	a loyal to my origins
2 the paperwork side of things	b reaching the same level quickly
3 cater for	c the bureaucratic aspects of life
4 faithful to my roots	d provide a service for
5 catching up fast	e from the very beginning

T 1.2 Part 2. Listen to Rosemary talking about her experiences of living in America, Italy, and Britain.

3 Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false ones.

- ☐ Rosemary left America thirty-four years ago.
- ☐ She met her husband in Italy.
- ☐ She didn't find it easy when she arrived in Britain because she always says what she thinks.
- ☐ She says she's learned to adapt to the situation and that she's much happier now.

4 **T 1.2** Listen again. Which nationalities is she referring to when she uses the words or phrases below? Write A for American, B for British, and I for Italian.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> brawls | <input type="checkbox"/> slapstick humour |
| <input type="checkbox"/> belligerent | <input type="checkbox"/> speak their mind |
| <input type="checkbox"/> caustic humour | <input type="checkbox"/> verbal about their emotions |
| <input type="checkbox"/> banter | <input type="checkbox"/> vulgar humour |
| <input type="checkbox"/> repressed | <input type="checkbox"/> yob society |

5 Find a word, expression, or part of an expression in exercise 4 which means:

- unfriendly and aggressive _____
- not showing good taste _____
- friendly remarks and jokes _____
- critical in a very sarcastic way _____
- noisy and violent fights _____
- based on simple, physical actions _____
- say exactly what they think _____
- rude, aggressive young man _____
- having unexpressed emotions _____

Pronunciation

5 Losing a syllable

1 **T 1.3**

Syllables which are apparent in the spelling of a word can sometimes be lost when they are spoken. They often contain the unstressed /ə/. Listen to the examples.

literature ● ● ● comfortable ● ● ● medicine ● ●

2 **T 1.4** Listen to the following sentences. Cross out the one syllable in each which can be lost when the sentence is spoken. Then listen again and repeat.

- I read a really interesting novel recently.
- I can't tell the difference between those identical twins.
- She borrowed seven books from the library.
- In his will, my grandfather left me everything.
- Perhaps you'd like to go for a run before dinner?
- I eat at least two portions of vegetables a day.
- We need a new policy on literacy in schools.
- My secretary handles all incoming calls.
- I do occasionally forget people's birthdays.
- I don't need details, just a general idea of the plan.

3 **T 1.5** Put the words with missing syllables from exercises 1 and 2 into the correct group, according to the stress pattern. Then listen, check, and repeat.

- A ● _____
- B ● ● _____
- C ● ● ● literature _____
- D ● ● ● ● _____

4

With some words the syllable is normally lost in standard speech. With others it depends on the speaker. The pronunciation given in the dictionary shows this:

literature /'litrətʃə(r)/
 comfortable /'kʌmfətbl/ (standard)
 medicine /'medsn/ or /'medisn/ (optional)
 (None of these syllables are lost in spoken American English)

In which of the words in exercise 2 are the syllables normally lost in British English?

Vocabulary

6 Immigration and politics

1 Complete the text with the words in the box.

asylum procedure	border personnel
borders	deterrence
headlines	immigration
imprisonment	policing
the displaced	immigration policies

2 Find words in the text that mean:

- 1 people looking for a more comfortable life in another country
- 2 people seeking official permission to stay in another country in order to avoid persecution in their own country
- 3 people who've lost all their property and belongings
- 4 people who are paid by others to help them to travel secretly and illegally to another country
- 5 people fleeing war or persecution

Tackling the causes of asylum

by **Ruud Lubbers**

The United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees

Worried European Union leaders have every reason to place illegal (1) _____ at the top of the agenda. Their inability to manage the complex mix of economic migrants and asylum seekers converging on their (2) _____ is causing them major political headaches and making daily (3) _____ across Europe.

It is irrational for governments to spend millions of euros on reinforcing borders, and various methods of (4) _____, without simultaneously investing in solutions at the source of the problem. It makes a lot more sense to help (5) _____ and the dispossessed at home, or close to home. Otherwise, desperate people will continue to take desperate measures, including resorting to human smugglers.

Much needs to be done in the EU itself, including the development of common asylum and (6) _____. Many of those reaching Europe's borders are genuine refugees. But many more are not. Strict and workable policies are needed to sort the economic migrants from the refugees.



Better (7) _____ of EU borders is fine, provided that refugees still have access to a fair (8) _____. Highly trained (9) _____ will help ensure that nobody is sent back to face persecution, (10) _____, torture or death.

- 3 Complete the sentences with the nouns in the box to make common collocations.

diplomacy	elections	endorsement	fervour
headache	identity	measures	mix
policies	stability	statement	support

- I find it very difficult to make up my mind about the euro. It's such a complex _____ of political and economic arguments.
- Only the United Nations can bring peace and long-term _____ to the region.
- The Scots and Welsh have a strong sense of national _____ and hate it when they are mistakenly referred to as 'English'.
- Opinion polls show overwhelming public _____ for the government's actions, so they're unlikely to change policy now.
- It's always a danger when a leader stirs the people up into a patriotic _____.
- The Prime Minister's statement didn't meet with the approval of his own party, but it received the personal _____ of the US President.
- The wave of strikes has caused the government a serious political _____.
- Virtually all the attempts to persuade teenagers not to take drugs have proved unrealistic. We need some workable _____ to tackle the problem.
- The government resorted to desperate _____ to avert an economic crisis.
- The minister made an emotional public _____ in an attempt to end media speculation about her family life.
- After twelve years of totalitarian rule, the president unexpectedly called multi-party _____.
- The border dispute can only be resolved by discussion and negotiation, not by gunboat _____.

Prepositions

7 Verb + preposition

Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. (The first ten are from Unit 1 of the Student's Book.)

- The state-funded health service accounts for about 9% of public spending.
- In times of difficulty he always turns _____ his parents.
- His conviction for dangerous driving counted _____ him when he was looking to renew his motor insurance.
- A new survey shows that there is an alarming number of babies born _____ girls under sixteen.
- A How did he react _____ your suggestion?
B He didn't like it.
- My boss insists _____ travelling first class when he goes on business trips.
- The money they've saved over the years amounts _____ a small fortune.
- After qualifying _____ an accountant, he secured a well-paid job with an oil company.
- She takes herself very seriously. She hates being laughed _____.
- The reporter questioned the minister _____ the government's immigration policy.
- You shouldn't interfere _____ business that doesn't concern you.
- The managing director is hinting _____ the possibility of a big pay rise, but he won't make a firm commitment until the sales figures are in.
- The government claims it has been successful in the fight against crime, but says we should guard _____ complacency.
- The USA declared war _____ Germany on 6 April 1917.
- She was seething _____ anger at the cruel way the refugees were treated.

8 American versus British English



Prepositions and adverbs are sometimes used differently in American and British English.

Write the words in *italics* in British English.

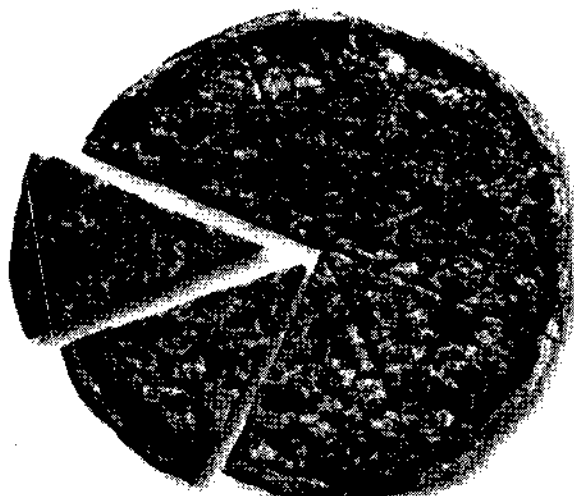
- 1 A What time is it?
B *Ten of nine.*
Ten to nine.
- 2 He should be arriving in London at about a *quarter* after three.

- 3 What are you doing *on the weekend*?

- 4 I'll be away *Monday through Thursday*.

- 5 I'd feel much happier if he'd just *write me* and let me know how he is.

- 6 Los Angeles was *different than* what I expected.

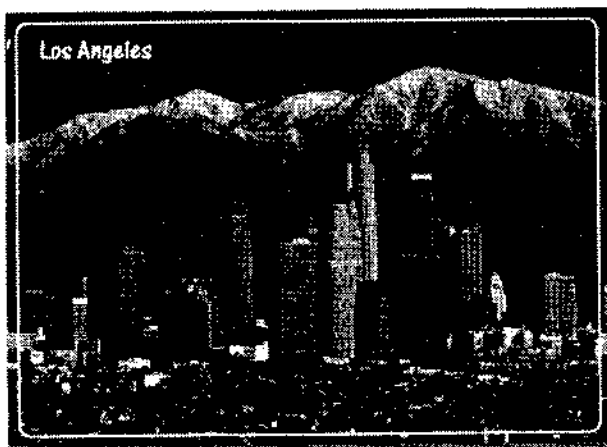


- 10 A Pizza Margherita, please.
B Is that to eat in or *take out*?

- 11 The house has a long drive in front of it and a small *yard in the back*.

- 12 My sister works *at a travel agency*.

- 13 A Can you direct me to the police station?
B Sure. *Go straight* and it's opposite the town hall. You can't miss it.



- 7 The regular goalkeeper hasn't been playing very well recently so he isn't *on the team* this week.

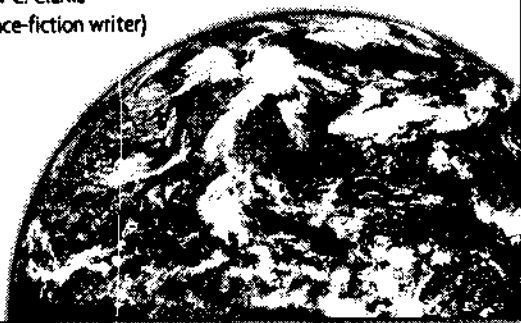
- 8 I can't understand what you're saying. Just calm down and *start over* from the beginning.

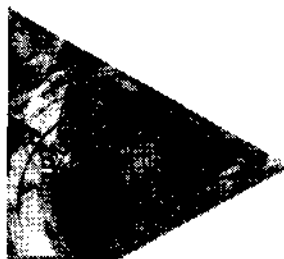
- 9 His parents couldn't decide what to call him, but eventually he was *named for* his grandfather.

ENDQUOTE

"It is not easy to see how the more extreme forms of nationalism can long survive when men have seen the Earth in its true perspective as a single small globe against the stars."

Arthur C. Clarke
(Science-fiction writer)





2

Tense review • Common spelling errors
Verbs with a similar meaning to *speak*
The grammar of phrasal verbs

Never lost for words!

Tense review

►► Grammar Reference 2.5–10 Student's Book p148

1 General review

Complete the anecdotes with an appropriate tense of the verbs in brackets.

One evening in the winter of 1902, the Irish writer, George Bernard Shaw, (1) _____ (talk) to the beautiful American dancer, Isadora Duncan. Duncan, who (2) _____ (know) for her strong belief in eugenics, suggested that she and Shaw (3) _____ (have) a child together. 'Think of it!' she said. 'With your brains and my body, what a wonder it (4) _____ (be).' Shaw (5) _____ (think) for a moment and replied, 'Yes, but what if it (6) _____ (have) my body and your brains?'



The famous film director, Alfred Hitchcock, telephoned the prolific Belgian crime novelist, Georges Simenon. At the time, Simenon (7) _____ already _____ (complete) nearly 400 novels. Hitchcock knew that he (8) _____ (write) his books at incredible speed, sometimes in as little as ten days. Simenon's wife took the call. 'I'm sorry,' she said, 'but Georges (9) _____ (write) and I can't disturb him.' 'That's OK,' replied Hitchcock. 'Let him finish his book. I (10) _____ (hang on).'

An interesting thing happened to me when I was touring the USA recently. I (11) _____ just _____ (read) a spy novel, where the hero (12) _____ (hide) a letter in a particular statue in Washington. Since I was in that city at the time, on a whim I decided to see if the statue really contained the small niche the author (13) _____ (describe). To my great surprise it did – and a letter was inside. After a moment's hesitation I pulled out the letter and opened it. As I (14) _____ (read) it, I burst out laughing. An unidentified reader (15) _____ (write), 'Good book, wasn't it?'

2 Correcting mistakes

Find and correct the seven mistakes in tense usage. There are five in the first paragraph and two in the second.

- 1 Harry came into the room and sat down, exhausted. He had a terrible day at the office and had only just arrived home. Mary had come round later and she almost certainly wanted to go out. Harry wasn't sure he could face that. At least he had his holiday to look forward to. By this time next week he'd sit on a sun-drenched beach and sip cocktails ...
- 2 John expected to get a decent rise because he worked at the publishing company for many years. He knew he sold more books every year than any of his fellow sales representatives. He'd been selling books all his life and had known exactly what approach to adopt with every bookshop he visited.

3 Text completion

Complete the text with an appropriate tense of the verbs in brackets.



Four years' jail for theft of rare books

A FEW YEARS AGO, two copies of Isaac Newton's *Principia* and a work by Galileo, worth more than £300,000, (1) _____ (discover) to be missing from the shelves of the Rare Books Department of Cambridge University. Police interviewed staff but no clues (2) _____ (find) nor arrests (3) _____ (make).

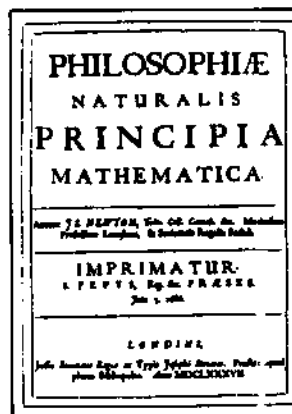
Three years later, Jolyon Hudson, an antiquarian book dealer, (4) _____ (examine) a rare philosophy book in his office. There was a shadow on the front cover where once a label might (5) _____ (be), and the title page (6) _____ (rip out). Hudson was convinced that the book (7) _____ (steal). His investigations revealed that the book's last owner was a man called William Jacques, an accountant working for Shell UK. Hudson telephoned Jacques and asked him if he (8) _____ (stop by) the office to resolve the issue. When they met, Jacques told him he (9) _____ (acquire) the book from Portobello Market and assured Hudson that he (10) _____ (co-operate) with any future police enquiries.

However, shortly afterwards, Jacques (11) _____ (flee) to Cuba. From there he

sent a letter to the police via his solicitors, listing numerous safety deposit boxes in banks in England. Inside the boxes were dozens of hugely valuable titles, including the three by Newton and Galileo from Cambridge.

Why Jacques then (12) _____ (fly) back to Britain, nobody knows. Three weeks later he (13) _____ (find) guilty of theft and (14) _____ (now serve) four years in prison. The total value of the books he (15) _____ (steal) is around £1.1 million, and many (16) _____ (still not recover). Jacques (17) _____ (not say) how he pulled off perhaps the most systematic plundering of Britain's great libraries ever carried out by an individual. Police are worried that he may (18) _____ (have) inside help.

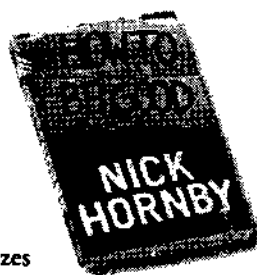
Over the past few months, libraries in Britain (19) _____ (improve) their security systems. In many there are now closed-circuit TV cameras, and passes must (20) _____ (show). The genteel world of letters has had a reality check.



Listening

4 A book I enjoyed

T 21 Listen to Jerry talking about a book he enjoyed reading, the novel *How to be good* by Nick Hornby.



1 Which sentence best summarizes the story in the book?

- It's about a rich man who loses his wealth but discovers the positive aspects of being poor.
- It shows the transformation of a man's attitude to life, from very negative to the opposite extreme.
- It describes how an average family discovers how to be happy by helping other people.

2 **T 21** Listen again. Which of the adjectives in the box describe the man *before* he saw the faith healer, and which describe him *afterwards*? Write **B** or **A**.

bitter B	caring —	critical —
cynical —	funny —	obsessed —
socially aware —	unfunny —	unhappy —

3 Choose the correct answer. Then look at the tapescript on p82 and find the exact words that Jerry uses.

1 How old are the man's children?

quite young / teenage _____

2 How would the man's wife like their life to be?

happy in some way / without any cares _____

3 What would the man's attitude to faith healers normally be?

he would use them with caution / he would reject them as totally stupid _____

4 How does the speaker feel about recognizing that his own character is similar to the man's?

he feels guilty about it / he's happy to recognize this _____

5 How obvious is the book's philosophical message?

it's the main focus of the book / it lies beneath the surface _____

Pronunciation

5 A poem

1 Four lines of the following poem are given in phonetic script. Write the missing lines.

After the lunch ...

Wendy Cope

On Waterloo bridge, where we said our goodbyes

/ðə weðə kændɪʃnz brɪdʒ tɪz tə maɪ aɪz/

(1) _____

I wipe them away with a black woolly glove

/ænd traɪ nɒt tə nəʊts aɪv fɔ:lən ɪn lʌv/

(2) _____

On Waterloo bridge I am trying to think:

This is nothing. You're high on the charm and the drink.

But the jukebox inside me is playing a song

/bʌt seɪz sʌmθɪŋ dɪfrənt/. /ænd wen wəz ɪt rɒŋ/?

(3) _____

On Waterloo bridge with the wind in my hair

I am tempted to skip. *You're a fool. I don't care.*

/ðə hed dʌz ɪts best, bʌt ðə ha:t ɪz ðə bɒs/

(4) _____

I admit it before I'm halfway across.

2 Read the poem and answer the questions.

- She says it's the weather that's making her cry. What do you think the real reason is?
- Why are some words in *italics*?
- What does 'The head does its best, but the heart is the boss' mean?

3 Read the poem aloud, noticing the rhythm. How many main stresses are there in each line: three, four, or five?

4 **T 22** Listen to the poem, paying particular attention to the rhythm and stress.

5 Mark the main stresses in each line, then practise reading the poem again.

Vocabulary

6 Adjectives to describe people

For each example choose the two adjectives that can be used to complete the sentence.

witty patronizing encouraging

- 1 Sam's always making _____ remarks at my expense.

bewildered prejudiced distracted

- 2 After the accident Bob was too _____ to make a statement to the police.

earnest haughty overbearing

- 3 She's a difficult woman to work for -- _____ and unpredictable.

courteous supportive considerate

- 4 It was very _____ of you to let that lorry pull out.

supportive loveable considerate

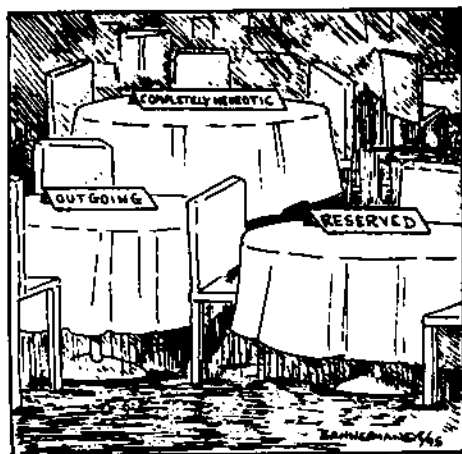
- 5 My boss was really _____ when I first started the job -- always ready to help out or give advice.

overbearing snobbish prejudiced

- 6 Vicky has a very _____ view of working-class people as lazy and ignorant.

timid reserved earnest

- 7 I know he doesn't say much, but he isn't unfriendly. He's just a bit _____.



7 Adjectives with positive and negative meanings

- 1 These eight pairs of adjectives have similar meanings, but one adjective in each pair has positive associations, the other negative. Write them in the correct column. Use your dictionary to help you.

assertive / aggressive	self-assured / arrogant
shrewd / cunning	smarmy / charming
stubborn / resolute	tactless / frank
trusting / naive	unprincipled / open-minded

Positive	Negative
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

- 2 Read the sentences and decide if the speakers are describing people in a positive or negative way. Then complete the sentences using adjectives from exercise 1.

- Dean gets very _____ when he's drunk, always trying to pick fights with people.
- Jane has no sense of right and wrong. She's completely _____.
- Dave can be very _____ sometimes, but he manages to give his true opinion without being hurtful.
- Sara was very _____ to take Ben at his word. It's obvious that the man's a born liar.
- Kate is a very _____ judge of character. She knew immediately that he wasn't being honest.
- He's so _____! He never changes his mind, even if he knows he's wrong!
- Joe never believes for a moment that he might be wrong -- he's unbearably _____.
- Everybody likes Colin when they first meet him -- he's just so utterly _____.

8 Common spelling errors

Correct the spelling mistake in each sentence.

- 1 There's a shortage of cheap tourist accomodation in Oxford. accommodation
- 2 He was tragicy killed in a motorcycle accident. _____
- 3 He was insolent to me on three seperate occasions. _____
- 4 He was found guilty of recieving stolen goods. _____
- 5 He transfered £1,000,000 into an offshore account to avoid paying tax. _____
- 6 The government has already abolished maintainance grants for university students. _____
- 7 The aircraft dissappeared from the radar screen shortly after take-off. _____
- 8 The fluctuations in the stock market had an adverse affect on the value of the euro. _____
- 9 The principle of the college expressed her disappointment at the poor exam results. _____
- 10 I think people who are rushing to sell property before prices fall are panicking unnecessarily. _____

Synonyms

9 Verbs with a similar meaning to *speaking*

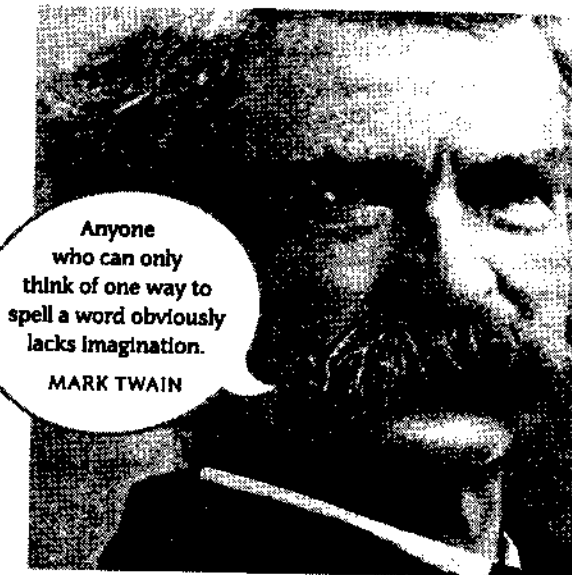


'Oh no! The dog's eaten the Thesaurus!'

- 1 Use your dictionary to help you. Which of the verbs in the box describe the way people speak when they:
 - 1 are angry?
 - 2 are sad or in pain?
 - 3 don't want to be heard?
 - 4 are having difficulty speaking?

bellow	growl	mutter	screech	sigh
snap	stammer	whine	whisper	yelp

- 2 **123** Choose the verb that best describes the way each sentence is spoken.
 - 1 'Mum, it's not fair! I haven't had an ice-cream for ages!' he *whined* / *whispered*.
 - 2 'I'm afraid it's all too late,' she *muttered* / *sighed*.
 - 3 'Stop talking and sit down!' he *bellowed* / *growled*.
 - 4 'I hate you! I never want to see you again!' she *stammered* / *screeched*.
 - 5 'Get out of here and don't come back!' he *growled* / *sighed*.
 - 6 'Can you meet me after work?' she *sighed* / *whispered*.
 - 7 'Could you p- possibly h- help me?' he *stammered* / *growled*.
 - 8 'This is absolutely ridiculous. I've never seen such a farce,' she *muttered* / *snapped* under her breath.
 - 9 'Ow! You're standing on my foot!' he *bellowed* / *yelped*.
 - 10 'Just let me finish, will you?' she *snapped* / *stammered*.



Anyone who can only think of one way to spell a word obviously lacks imagination.

MARK TWAIN

Phrasal verbs

10 The grammar of phrasal verbs

► Grammar Reference 2.4 Student's Book p147

- 1 You can find out whether a phrasal verb is transitive or intransitive, separable or inseparable by looking in a learner's dictionary. Look at these dictionary entries:

take 'off 1 (of an aircraft, etc.) to leave the ground and begin to fly: *The plane took off an hour late.*

Intransitive. There is no **sb** (somebody) or **sth** (something).

take sth ↔ 'off 1 to remove sth, especially a piece of clothing from your/sb's body: *to take off your coat / hat / skirt / glasses*

sth indicates that it's transitive, and the position of **sth** between the verb and particle indicates that it's separable. (This dictionary also shows this with the ↔ symbol between the object and the particle.)

'take to sb/sth [no passive] to start liking sb/sth: *I took to my new boss immediately. ◊ He hasn't taken to his new school.*

sb/sth indicates that it's transitive, and the position of **sb/sth** after the verb and particle indicates that it's inseparable.

'give 'in (to sb/sth) 1 to admit that you have been defeated by sb/sth: *The rebels were forced to give in.*

give in used by itself is intransitive. The **sb/sth** in brackets indicates that as a three-part phrasal verb it's transitive and inseparable.

- 2 Here are nine dictionary entries. Read the sentences below and decide if the phrasal verbs are used correctly. Correct any mistakes.

'break 'in to enter a building by force: *Burglars had broken in while we were away.*

'break 'into sth 1 to enter a building by force; to open a car, etc. by force: *We had our car broken into last week.*

'come 'down with sth [no passive] to get an illness that is not very serious: *I think I'm coming down with flu.*

'draw up if a vehicle **draws up**, it arrives and stops: *The cab drew up outside the house.*

'draw sth ↔ 'up to make or write sth that needs careful thought or planning: *to draw up a contract / list*

'get be 'hind (with sth) to fail to make enough progress or to produce sth at the right time: *I'm getting behind with my work. ◊ He got behind with the payments for his car.*

send sb/sth ↔ 'up (BrE, informal) to make people laugh at sb/sth by copying them/it in a funny way: *a TV programme that sends up politicians*

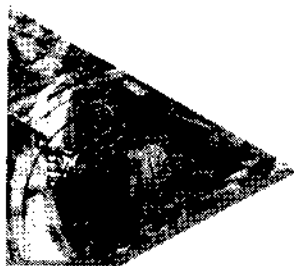
'take 'after sb [no passive] 1 (not used in the progressive tenses) to look or behave like an older member of your family, especially your mother or father: *Your daughter doesn't take after you at all.*

'take sb ↔ 'in 1 to allow sb to stay in your home: *to take in lodgers ◊ He was homeless, so we took him in.* 2 (often passive) to make sb believe sth that is not true [SYN] DECEIVE: *She took me in completely with her story. ◊ Don't be taken in by his charm—he's ruthless.*

- 1 Thieves broke in and stole £5,000.
- 2 Burglars broke in the house while they were on holiday.
- 3 The bus drew at the traffic lights up.
- 4 The committee will draw up a list of objections.
- 5 He got caught in the rain and came with a cold down.
- 6 He's not very nice to his teachers. He's always sending up them.
- 7 She got a loan when she furnished the flat, but she's getting behind with the repayments.
- 8 I've got so much work. I'm really getting behind it with.
- 9 She really takes her father after.
- 10 She took some students in to earn extra money.
- 11 I was taken by his apparent honesty in.

ENDQUOTE

'There's no money in poetry, but then there's no poetry in money, either.'
Robert Graves (Poet)



3

Adverb collocations • Adverbs with two forms
just • Describing trends
 Adjective + preposition

Big business

Adverbs

1 Adverb collocations

►► Grammar Reference 3.4 Student's Book p150

1 Match the adverbs with the adjectives and verbs.

Adverbs	Adjectives
1 bitterly	a unlikely
2 highly	b clear
3 perfectly	c disappointed
4 sorely	d impossible
5 virtually	e tempted

Adverbs	Verbs
6 accurately	f hope
7 distinctly	g predict
8 eagerly	h remember
9 fully	i await
10 sincerely	j understand

2 Complete the two memos with the adverb collocations from exercise 1.

integrated
optical
systems

memo

To: Mike Walters
From: Julie Gough
Date: 17 September
Subject: Letter from Imsyst Inc.

Thanks for forwarding the letter from Imsyst Inc. It's very unfortunate that they can't deliver the imaging machines on time. I (1) fully understand that it's difficult to / guarantee delivery dates in the current economic climate but I (2) _____ their saying that it wouldn't be at all difficult to meet the deadline we set. In fact I have a written record of it.

What should we do now? It will be

(3) _____ for us to meet our customer's deadline if we don't get those machines before the New Year. I (4) _____ that Imsyst can deliver by January and I (5) _____ the outcome of your meeting with Geoff Lee. If Imsyst can't guarantee new delivery dates, I'm (6) _____ to cancel the contract and find another supplier for the machines.

Regards
 Julie

integrated
optical
systems

memo

To: Julie Gough
From: Mike Walters
Date: 18 September
Subject: Letter from Imsyst Inc.

Thanks for your memo of 17th September. Like you, I'm (7) _____ that Imsyst have missed the deadline. To be fair to Imsyst, I know they can't always (8) _____ the consequences of economic developments when they plan their deliveries.

Be that as it may, I met Geoff Lee at Imsyst, and it was (9) _____ from what he said that they can and will guarantee delivery by January. I'm going to draw up a new contract, this time with a stiff penalty clause for late delivery, even though this would appear to be (10) _____.

Best wishes
 Mike

- 3 Each adverb in A collocates with one group of adjectives in B. Match them correctly.

A	
deeply	deliberately
perfectly	sorely
virtually	wildly
	infinitely
	supremely
B	
1 <u>deeply</u>	embarrassed
	distressed
	ashamed
2 _____	confident
	happy
	indifferent
3 _____	impossible
	identical
	indestructible
4 _____	safe
	right
	clear
5 _____	optimistic
	inaccurate
	ambitious
6 _____	missed
	needed
	tempted
7 _____	misleading
	obstructive
	rude
8 _____	better
	superior
	preferable

2 Adverbs with two forms

►► Grammar Reference 1.5 Student's Book p150

Choose the correct adverbs.

- Kate** Are you still at it? You're working too (1) *hard* / *hardly*, you know.
- Peter** Yes, I know.
- Kate** (2) *Sure* / *Surely* you don't need to work on a Friday evening?
- Peter** Sorry, Kate. I've got a lot to do. My boss has been putting a lot of pressure on me (3) *lately* / *late*.
- Kate** That's what I hate (4) *most* / *mostly* about your job – you're always bringing work home.
- Peter** I know. I can't help it.
- Kate** You've (5) *hard* / *hardly* spent any time with the children recently.
- Peter** That's not fair.
- Kate** It is. Last Saturday your boss called you on your mobile (6) *right* / *rightly* in the middle of Jessica's school concert. You completely missed her performance. It never used to be like this. You used to get everything done at the office and never came home (7) *late* / *lately*.
- Peter** Yes, but I've been promoted now and I'm (8) *direct* / *directly* responsible for the success of this project.
- Kate** How long is this going to take you, then?
- Peter** I should (9) *easy* / *easily* be finished by ten o'clock.
- Kate** Ten o'clock! Oh for goodness' sake!
- Peter** Take it (10) *easy* / *easily*, Kate. Look, you've (11) *right* / *rightly* pointed out that it didn't use to be like this and I promise things will change for the better. I just need to get through this busy period.
- Kate** (12) *Sure*, *sure*. / *Surely*, *surely*. Where've I heard that before?



3 just

►► Grammar Reference 3.6 Student's Book p150

1 Add *just* to these sentences.

1 Italian's as difficult as Spanish.

Italian's just as difficult as Spanish.

2 Leave me alone, will you!

3 What's that noise? Oh, it's OK. It's the cat.

4 That picture looks right on that wall.

5 It's starting to rain. Have you got an umbrella?

6 It's as quick to cycle in London as it is to drive.

7 We've got enough time to get to the airport.

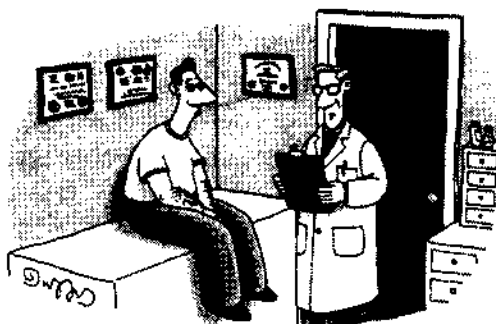
8 I've seen a terrible accident.

9 He wasn't badly hurt. It was a small cut.

10 I'm going to the shops. Is there anything you want?

11 Stop talking and eat up!

12 It's as easy to wash this jumper by hand.



'Either this is the wrong chart or—let's just hope this is the wrong chart.'

2 For each sentence in exercise 1 decide if *just* means only, exactly, equally, right now, a short time before, or is used purely for emphasis. For example, 1 *equally*

3 **T 3.1** Listen and practise repeating the sentences with the correct stress and intonation.

Listening

4 Anita Roddick on the working environment

1 **T 3.2** Listen to an interview with Anita Roddick. What is her main criticism of most workplaces?

- 1 There isn't enough humour in them.
- 2 People spend far too much time in them.
- 3 The aesthetic element is often ignored.

2 **T 3.2** Listen again. Are these sentences true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 ☐ Anita Roddick's office is surprisingly small.
- 2 ☐ Manet's painting *Le déjeuner sur l'herbe* is hung on the walls of the main building.
- 3 ☐ Visitors would get the impression that her company is very unusual.
- 4 ☐ She has no objections to people taking pictures of her headquarters.
- 5 ☐ The interviewer asked one of the workers for his opinion of a work of art.
- 6 ☐ Anita Roddick doesn't think that works of art should always be taken seriously.

3 Look at the tapescript on p83 and find words or phrases with these meanings.

- 1 express simply and clearly _____
- 2 words with a very general meaning _____
- 3 arrived at the building by car _____
- 4 behaviour that doesn't show respect _____
- 5 art that copies another style in order to be amusing _____
- 6 clever humour _____
- 7 a reduction _____
- 8 improved by adding something _____

4 **T 3.3**

Listen to part of the extract again.

Anita Roddick often repeats a phrase at the beginning of successive clauses:

It has to be about laughter, it has to be about cheekiness and parody and wit.

Why does she do this, do you think? Can you hear more examples of this repetition? Find them in the tapescript on p83 and underline them.

Pronunciation

5 Multi-syllable homographs

- 1 **T 3 4** Look at the homographs in the sentences below. How does the pronunciation of the two forms differ? Listen, check, and repeat.
- The *estimate* for the building work arrived today.
I *estimate* that the job will take about three weeks.
 - There were 300 *delegates* at the conference.
No wonder he's stressed. He never *delegates* work.
 - They live together but lead very *separate* lives.
If you work at home, you must *separate* work from family life.
 - She needs to *moderate* her language.
There was a *moderate* increase in prices last year.
 - Would you care to *elaborate* on that point?
They made *elaborate* plans for his 40th birthday.
 - She often *compliments* him on his dress sense.
Wonderful food! Give my *compliments* to the chef.
 - They shredded thousands of incriminating *documents* before the FBI officers arrived.
The film *documents* the rise and fall of communism in the former Soviet Union.
 - I only get the Sunday papers for the *supplements*.
She *supplements* her income by doing part-time bar work.

- 2 **T 3 5** Look at these words ending in *-ate*. Practise saying the sentences with the correct pronunciation. Then listen, check, and repeat.

- That's an *approximate* number.
The total cost will *approximate* £1m.
- It's a difficult sound to *articulate*.
She's a very *articulate* speaker.
- We must *deliberate* on this issue.
The lie was *deliberate*.
- What are you trying to *intimate*?
It was an *intimate* moment.
- She works on *alternate* days.
Rain can *alternate* with sunshine very quickly here.
- He's a business *associate*.
I *associate* fast food with the USA.
- What are the map *co-ordinates*?
Who *co-ordinates* the famine relief?
- He's an Oxford *graduate*.
She's about to *graduate* from Yale.

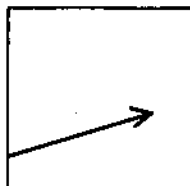
The stress pattern remains the same in all the homograph pairs, except one. Which one?

Vocabulary

6 Describing trends

- 1 Write the phrases in the box under the correct graph lines a to f.

fluctuate	pick up
level off	rise steadily
peak	shoot up



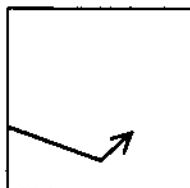
a rise steadily



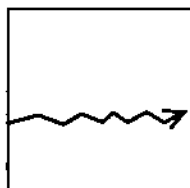
b _____



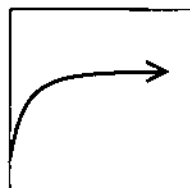
c _____



d _____



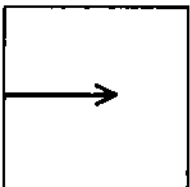
e _____



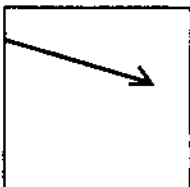
f _____

- 2 Now write these phrases under the correct graph lines g to k.

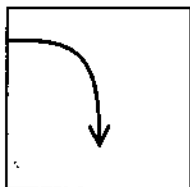
bottom out	plummet
decrease gradually	remain stable
fall slightly	



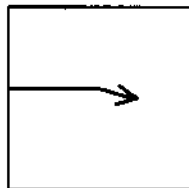
g _____



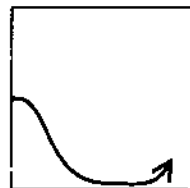
h _____



i _____

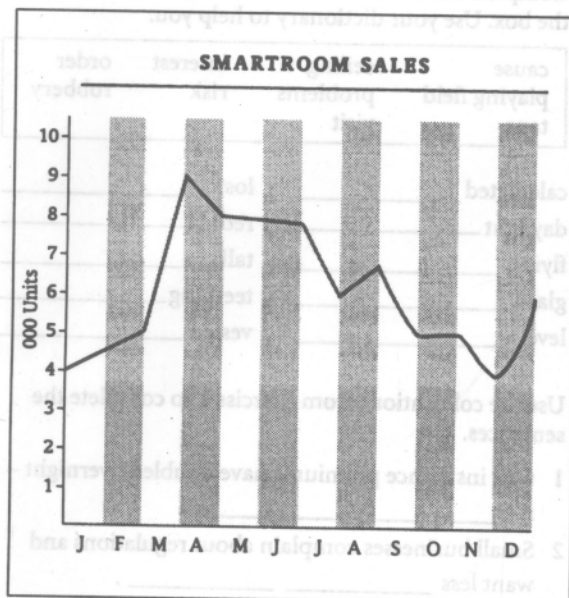


j _____



k _____

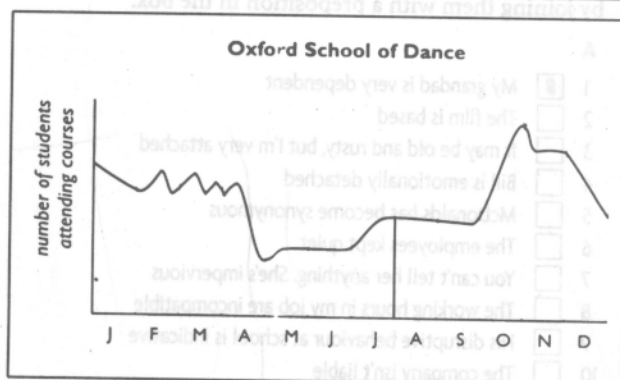
- 3 **T 3.6** Look at the graph below and complete the text with words from the box. (Use the correct form of the verbs.)



downturn	drop
increase	level off
peak	pick up
shoot up	stable
steadily	substantial

Smartcom's sales rose (1) _____ in January and February and then (2) _____ dramatically in March. They (3) _____ at 9,000 units at the beginning of April and then decreased gradually before (4) _____ around the 8,000 mark during May and June. July saw a (5) _____ decrease but sales (6) _____ a little in August. They (7) _____ again in September but remained (8) _____ throughout October. There was another (9) _____ in November but in the run-up to Christmas sales were healthy, with a steady (10) _____ to 6,000 units by the end of the year.

- 4 Look at the graph. Describe the way the number of students attending dance courses changed over the year.



The number of students attending dance courses fell slightly in January and then ...



Prepositions

7 Adjective + preposition

Match the phrases in A and B and then write sentences by joining them with a preposition in the box.

A

- 1 ☒ My grandad is very dependent
- 2 ☐ The film is based
- 3 ☐ It may be old and rusty, but I'm very attached
- 4 ☐ Bill is emotionally detached
- 5 ☐ McDonalds has become synonymous
- 6 ☐ The employees kept quiet
- 7 ☐ You can't tell her anything. She's impervious
- 8 ☐ The working hours in my job are incompatible
- 9 ☐ His disruptive behaviour at school is indicative
- 10 ☐ The company isn't liable
- 11 ☐ The teacher is very concerned
- 12 ☐ Marc is totally obsessed

B

- a my car.
- b family life.
- c the false accounting in the company.
- d my son's lack of progress.
- e fast food.
- f any damage caused to vehicles parked on the premises.
- g my parents.
- h his parents. He hardly ever speaks to them.
- i football. He thinks of nothing else.
- j a novel by Jane Austen.
- k a deeper psychological problem.
- l criticism.

about	about	for	from	of	on
on	to	to	with	with	with

- 1 My grandad is very dependent on my parents.
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____
- 8 _____
- 9 _____
- 10 _____
- 11 _____
- 12 _____

Idioms

8 Idiomatic collocations

- 1 Complete the idiomatic collocations with the words in the box. Use your dictionary to help you.

cause	ceiling	interest	order
playing field	problems	risk	robbery
tape	visit		

calculated _____	lost _____
daylight _____	red _____
flying _____	tall _____
glass _____	teething _____
level _____	vested _____

- 2 Use the collocations from exercise 1 to complete the sentences.

- 1 Our insurance premiums have doubled overnight – it's _____!
- 2 Small businesses complain about regulations and want less _____.
- 3 It's a _____ investing in the stock market, as you can lose as much as you gain.
- 4 We had a few _____ with our new computer system, but it's all fine now.
- 5 Women seeking promotion to the highest positions complain of a _____.
- 6 I can't really comment on the proposal as I have a _____ in the outcome. I stand to make a lot of money if it's accepted.
- 7 Increasing our profits by 50% within a year is rather a _____, but we'll try.
- 8 We don't want special treatment – just a _____ for all companies.
- 9 Trying to get Jim to tidy his room is a _____ . He'll never do it.
- 10 I'm making a _____ to the New York office. I'll be back in Paris tomorrow.

ENDQUOTE

'An economist is an expert who will know tomorrow why the things he predicted yesterday didn't happen today.'

Laurence J. Peter (Educator and writer)

4

Discourse markers • Tags and replies
Antonyms
Phrasal verbs with a particle and preposition
Celebrity

Discourse markers

►► Grammar Reference 4.1 Student's Book p151

1 Choosing the correct discourse marker

1 Complete the conversation with the most appropriate adverb.

Claire Did you hear that Sam Davies had failed his exams? He's a bright boy – (1) _____ he didn't do much revision. That's what his mum said, anyway. (2) _____, he'll get a chance to take them again in September.

Anna Oh, good. (3) _____, he'll pass next time. (4) _____, when does your son finish university?

Claire (5) _____, I'm not sure when term ends. (6) _____, around the end of June.

Anna What's he going to do in the long vacation? Still planning to hitch-hike round Europe?

Claire (7) _____, no! I wasn't at all keen on that idea. (8) _____, he was going to go with a friend, but (9) _____ I would have been worried sick.

Anna (10) _____.

Claire So (11) _____, he's got three months of holiday with nothing planned!

Anna But (12) _____ he'll have some reading to do for next term, won't he?

Claire Yes, but I doubt he'll do it.

1 *apparently / presumably / surely*

2 *Funnily enough / Ideally / Luckily*

3 *Clearly / Hopefully / Ideally*

4 *Incidentally / Seriously though / Strictly speaking*

5 *Actually / Apparently / Frankly*

6 *Obviously / Presumably / Surely*

7 *Funnily enough / Luckily / Thankfully*

8 *Admittedly / Basically / Understandably*

9 *quite honestly / seriously though, / surely,*

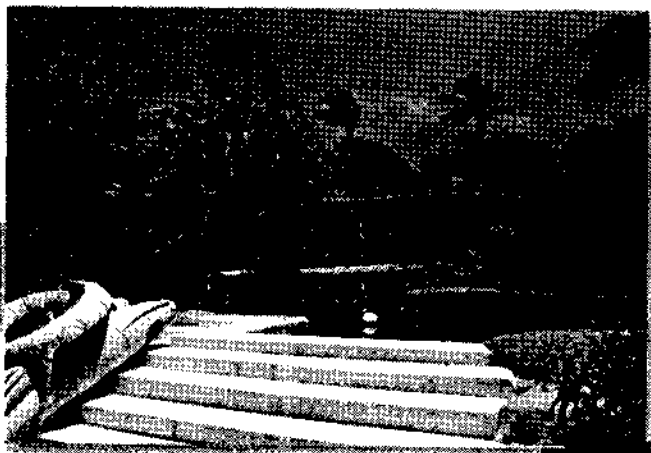
10 *Naturally / Presumably / Surely*

11 *basically / ideally / obviously*

12 *hopefully / surely / understandably*

- 2 Some famous people let their holiday homes when they're not using them. Read this letter from a woman who's staying in a celebrity's house.

Choose the correct discourse markers. Sometimes there is more than one correct answer.



Mick Jagger's House ~ Mustique

Darling Davinia,

Greetings from hot and beautiful Mustique. I'm having the most marvellous holiday here. (1) *Mind you*, / *Admittedly*, / *Guess what*, it would be difficult not to, wouldn't it, staying in Mick's house? Davinia, you really must visit it yourself one of these days. (2) *So to speak*, / *After all*, / *Still*, you deserve a holiday after such a tiring time going to all those charity balls in the winter.

(3) *At least*, / *As I was saying*, / *Anyway*, the place is absolutely gorgeous, all marble and white linen. I'm sitting in my bedroom (or (4) *come to think of it*, / *should I say*, / *mind you*, Mick's bedroom!) beside the ornamental pond, looking out to sea. (5) *However*, / *Of course*, / *No doubt* I didn't expect the house to be so small - there are only six bedrooms. (6) *Still*, / *I mean*, / *After all*, with all Mick's ex-wives and children, you'd think he'd need more space, wouldn't you? (7) *Still*, / *Admittedly*, / *No doubt* he prefers coming here on his own! (8) *All in all*, though, / *By the way*, / *Of course*, it's still very comfortable as we have six people to look after us, including the chauffeur of Mick's jeep, so we're going off on safari round the island today. (9) *As I was saying*, / *Still*, / *At least* we will if the cook manages to get some more champagne and caviar in time for the picnic lunch.

Oh, (10) *by the way*, / *if you ask me*, / *after all*, have you heard about Lord Alex? Terrible, isn't it? (11) *Come to think of it*, / *As a matter of fact*, / *No doubt* I was speaking to his ex-wife only last week and I wonder if she knows anything about it. Do write and tell me all the latest gossip.

(12) *At least*, / *Anyway*, / *So to speak*, I must go and chase up cook about the lunch. Bye for now.

Much love,

Tara

Tags and replies

►► Grammar Reference 4.2 Student's Book p151

2 Forming the correct tag

T 4.1 Write the correct auxiliary to form questions, question tags, reinforcement tags, same way tags or reply questions.



- Edith** I've had a lovely evening, dear. You look tired. You enjoyed it, (1) didn't you?
- Hugh** Yes, it's just been a long day. But the play was marvellous, (2) _____ it? And it had such a surprising ending, (3) _____ it?
- Edith** Mm. And I thought Robert McFarland was very good. He's a great actor, he (4) _____.
- Hugh** Yes, but he's aged so much. He's about to retire soon, (5) _____ he?
- Edith** Yes, he is. He's certainly got a lot of grey hair now, (6) _____ he? I've heard he's been having a few problems recently.
- Hugh** He's been having problems, (7) _____ he? I didn't know.
- Edith** Yes. He has a drink problem.
- Hugh** (8) _____ he?
- Edith** Yes. Didn't you see his hand shaking?
- Hugh** (9) _____ it? Goodness! I didn't notice. You don't miss anything, (10) _____ you?
- Edith** By the way, would you like another drink?
- Hugh** Be careful, dear, (11) _____ you? You're driving, remember?
- Edith** OK. Let's go home, (12) _____ we?
- Hugh** Good idea.

Pronunciation

3 Intonation in question tags

1 **T 4.1** Do the questions in the conversation in the previous exercise rise or fall? Write R or F in the boxes. Then listen and check.

1	<input type="checkbox"/>	7	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	8	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	9	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	10	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	11	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	12	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 **T 4.2** Listen and decide if the intonation is correct in the following questions. Repeat the correct ones and practise saying the others with the correct intonation.

- ☒ Lovely day, isn't it?
- ☐ You're a clever girl, aren't you?
- ☐ Drive carefully, dear, won't you?
- ☐ I'm late, aren't I? Sorry.
- ☐ You haven't seen my pen anywhere, have you?
- ☐ Let's call it a day, shall we?
- ☐ Give me a hand with this, will you?
- ☐ You haven't got change for a fiver, have you?
- ☐ You couldn't lend me ten pounds till tomorrow, could you?
- ☐ You look tired. You've had enough, haven't you?
- ☐ Kirk Douglas never won an Oscar, did he?
- ☐ You're angry with me, aren't you? I can tell.



6 Antonyms

2 Complete the letter with adjectives from exercise 1.

! The same word can have different meanings, and therefore different antonyms. The opposite of a *poor diet* is a *balanced diet*; the opposite of *poor quality* is *high quality*.

- 1 Write the opposite of the following adjectives. Choose from the words in the box.

bumpy	close
excessive	excitable/temperamental
extreme	gentle
guilty	hilly/mountainous
modest/humble	lenient
overcast	pale
plain	rough
successful	vivid

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 rich food | <u>plain food</u> |
| rich colour | _____ |
| 2 vain attempt | _____ |
| vain person | _____ |
| 3 calm sea | _____ |
| calm person | _____ |
| 4 stiff breeze | _____ |
| stiff punishment | _____ |
| 5 moderate amount | _____ |
| moderate politics | _____ |
| 6 distant relation | _____ |
| distant memory | _____ |
| 7 flat countryside | _____ |
| flat road | _____ |
| 8 clear sky | _____ |
| clear conscience | _____ |



KINLOCH HOTEL ISLE OF SKYE



Dear Mum,

Just to let you know we've finally arrived in Skye. The boat crossing to the island was OK after all, though the sea was a bit (1) _____ and sadly the sky was very dull and (2) _____. I thought there was going to be a storm at one point. In the end it was very pleasant on the boat, with just a (3) _____ breeze.

The hotel sent a jeep to pick us up at the harbour, which I thought was a bit excessive until we set off up an incredibly (4) _____ road to the hotel. The countryside is very (5) _____, as you'd expect in Scotland, and there are amazing views from every hill-top. It's so relaxing here - I think I'd become a very (6) _____ person if I lived somewhere like this. My hectic life in Edinburgh already seems a (7) _____ memory.

We've already sampled the best of Scottish cuisine - rather (8) _____ food, you might say, but very fresh ingredients and generous helpings. I'm still on the diet and I'll keep counting the calories but it'll be a (9) _____ attempt, I'm sure.

Tomorrow we're off to the Talisker whisky distillery. Mike promises he'll only consume a (10) _____ amount while we're there, but I think I'd better drive, just in case.

Anyway must go now. I'll phone you when we get to Inverness.

Much love,
Catherine



Vocabulary

5 Fame and the media

1 Complete the text with the words in the box.

brutality	contradictions	delve	gossip	idols	loathe
obsessed	photo opportunity	privileged	published	revere	soap opera

Our Obsession with Fame

Celebrity may be trivial, but we, the public, want it to stay. When Princess Diana died in a car crash, such was the outrage at the press for apparently hounding the woman to her death that it seemed for a brief period that paparazzi photographs would no longer be (1) _____.

But the media quickly regained its insatiable need to (2) _____ into the private lives of the rich and famous. Now, magazines like *Heat* and *Hello!* thrive on paparazzi shots, and everything from a footballer's marital crisis to Diana's son's drug problems is treated as another celebrity (3) _____ by both the tabloid and broadsheet press. (Incidentally, if she achieved little else, Diana showed that the only viable future for the monarchy is celebrity. The alternative is a rather dull (4) _____ that nobody wants to watch.)

Our relationship with celebrity is clearly not without its problems and (5) _____. We seem to have developed a bulimic appetite for fame, consuming endless spin, rumour and (6) _____ before spewing it all back out in disgust at the celebrity's (7) _____ and pampered lifestyle. We build them up but love to knock them down.

We are (8) _____ with celebrity, but like a confused stalker, we are not sure whether to (9) _____ or ridicule the famous, whether to adore or (10) _____ them. As the author Daniel Boorstin once put it: the celebrity's 'relation to morality and even reality is highly ambiguous'. That's why it helps that the media stands between us and our (11) _____ on the other side of the glass. It means we can blame the press for its (12) _____, its sensationalism and its intrusiveness, and we can buy the press for the same reasons.

2 Match the words from the text with the definitions.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> trivial | a impossible to satisfy |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> to hound | b habit of entering into people's private lives |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> paparazzi | c to pursue someone constantly |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> insatiable | d someone who's obsessed with someone else (often a famous person) and follows them around |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> to pamper | e to treat with excessive kindness and comfort |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> a stalker | f photographers who take pictures of the rich and famous |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> to ridicule | g to make someone look foolish |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> intrusiveness | h of little importance |

6 Antonyms

2 Complete the letter with adjectives from exercise 1.



The same word can have different meanings, and therefore different antonyms. The opposite of a *poor diet* is a *balanced diet*; the opposite of *poor quality* is *high quality*.

1 Write the opposite of the following adjectives. Choose from the words in the box.

bumpy	close
excessive	excitable/temperamental
extreme	gentle
guilty	hilly/mountainous
modest/humble	lenient
overcast	pale
plain	rough
successful	vivid

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 rich food | <u>plain food</u> |
| rich colour | _____ |
| 2 vain attempt | _____ |
| vain person | _____ |
| 3 calm sea | _____ |
| calm person | _____ |
| 4 stiff breeze | _____ |
| stiff punishment | _____ |
| 5 moderate amount | _____ |
| moderate politics | _____ |
| 6 distant relation | _____ |
| distant memory | _____ |
| 7 flat countryside | _____ |
| flat road | _____ |
| 8 clear sky | _____ |
| clear conscience | _____ |



KINLOCH HOTEL
ISLE OF SKYE



Dear Mum,

Just to let you know we've finally arrived in Skye. The boat crossing to the island was OK after all, though the sea was a bit (1) _____ and sadly the sky was very dull and (2) _____. I thought there was going to be a storm at one point. In the end it was very pleasant on the boat, with just a (3) _____ breeze.

The hotel sent a deep to pick us up at the harbour, which I thought was a bit excessive until we set off up an incredibly (4) _____ road to the hotel. The countryside is very (5) _____, as you'd expect in Scotland, and there are amazing views from every hill-top. It's so relaxing here - I think I'd become a very (6) _____ person if I lived somewhere like this. My hectic life in Edinburgh already seems a (7) _____ memory.

We've already sampled the best of Scottish cuisine - rather (8) _____ food, you might say, but very fresh ingredients and generous helpings. I'm still on the diet and I'll keep counting the calories but it'll be a (9) _____ attempt, I'm sure.

Tomorrow we're off to the Talisker whisky distillery. Mike promises he'll only consume a (10) _____ amount while we're there, but I think I'd better drive, just in case.

Anyway must go now. I'll phone you when we get to Inverness.

Much love,
Catherine



7 Synonyms and antonyms: formal and informal

Write *formal* versions of these sentences using the words in brackets. Sometimes the form of the words will need to be changed.

- 1 I recognized the type of tree but I couldn't think of its name. (*familiar / identify*)

The type of tree was familiar but I couldn't identify it.

- 2 I don't believe this government can sort out the economic problems. (*faith / ability / solve*)

- 3 They tried to sail around the world but were unsuccessful. (*attempt / end / failure*)

- 4 They don't allow people to smoke here. (*smoking / permitted*)

Now write *informal* versions of these sentences using the words in brackets. Sometimes the form of the words will need to be changed.

- 5 She's constantly finding fault with him. (*always / criticize*)

- 6 I hope he recovers before too long. (*hopefully / get better / soon*)

- 7 It's fortunate that my son isn't obliged to attend school on Saturdays. (*Luckily / have to / go to*)

- 8 It's clear that he insulted her deliberately. (*obviously / rude / on purpose*)

Phrasal verbs

8 Phrasal verbs with a particle and preposition

Complete the sentences with the correct tense of a verb from A plus a particle and preposition from B. Use each verb once and each particle and preposition pair three times.

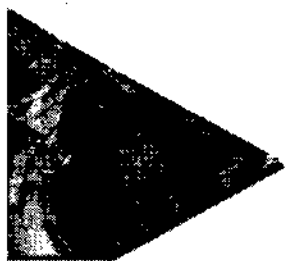
A			B
come	end	face	in for
feel	go	keep	out of
look	put	pull	up to
run	stand	talk	up with

- Oh, dear. We ve run out of coffee. I'll get some more from the corner shop.
- A Are you going to Mick's party tonight?
B No, I don't _____ it. I've got a bit of a headache.
- Alan is off work today so I'm _____ him at the meeting.
- Now that you're a father you have to _____ your responsibilities.
- I won't _____ this behaviour any longer. If you do that again, I'll send you to your room!
- I was going to resign from my job, but my boss _____ me _____ it.
- I invested some money in the stock market, but I _____ less than I started with.
- The finance minister _____ a lot of criticism after he raised interest rates by 2%, but he defended himself vigorously.
- I don't really _____ team sports, but I play a lot of tennis and I go running twice a week.
- Due to cuts in the defence budget, the army will _____ the occupied territories.
- Don't walk so fast! I can't _____ you.
- Many people _____ Nelson Mandela as a statesman with real personal integrity.

ENDQUOTE

'The nice thing about being a celebrity is that when you bore people, they think it's their fault.'

Henry Kissinger (former US Secretary of State)



5

Adding emphasis • Negative inversion • -ever for emphasis
Verbs to describe different sounds
Phrasal verbs – relationships

Love is ... ?

Adding emphasis

1 Structures which add emphasis

►► Grammar Reference 5.1 Student's Book p152

Rewrite each sentence, emphasizing the words in *italics*.
Start with either *What ...* or *It ...* (Sometimes both are possible.)

- 1 I *sent* her a bunch of flowers.
What I did was send her a bunch of flowers.
- 2 I *sent* her a bunch of flowers.
It was me that sent her a bunch of flowers.



- 3 He *should* avoid antagonizing her.

- 4 His *uncompromising attitude* surprised me.

- 5 His *heavy drinking* worries me.

- 6 She felt dreadful about *leaving her husband*.

- 7 She *divorced* him.

- 8 His *bad manners* really annoy me.

- 9 He *proposed* to her *last week*.

- 10 Sam and Jo went to Hawaii on their honeymoon.

2 Negative inversion

►► Grammar Reference 5.2 Student's Book p152

Rewrite the sentences, making them more emphatic.
Start each new sentence with a word or phrase from the box.

In no way	Little	Never before	Never again
No sooner ... than	Nothing	Not until	
Not only ... but also	Nowhere	Rarely	

- 1 I won't ever allow myself to be deceived in such a manner again.
Never again will I allow myself to be deceived in such a manner.
- 2 One rarely finds a person of such integrity as Michael.

- 3 His surliness annoys me more than anything.

- 4 He little suspected that she was seeing another man.

- 5 I've never been spoken to like that!

- 6 She was rude *and* she was mean.

- 7 As soon as he ended the relationship he started another one.

- 8 You won't find a kinder man anywhere!

- 9 He didn't realize the error of his ways until she threatened to leave him.

- 10 Her reaction could in no way be described as sympathetic.

3 The use of -ever for emphasis

! *whatever, whoever, however, etc. mean it doesn't matter what / who / how, etc.*
Whatever you say, nobody will believe you now.
 = It doesn't matter what you say, ...

Complete the sentences with *whatever, whoever, whichever, whenever, wherever, or however*.

- Teenagers are remarkable when it comes to money. _____ much you give them, it's never enough.
- There are three cakes left. Take _____ one you want.
- _____ you're in Athens, you must look me up.
- Someone's taken my dictionary. _____ it was, could they please give it back to me.
- The library was closed, so I had to rely on _____ books I had at home.
- _____ possible we have tried to restore the house to its original state.
- He's always ringing up from Paris or New York or _____ to say how much he loves me.
- _____ many times I'm told someone's name, I can never remember it.
- I hope that _____ you vote for in the next election, you at least know why you are voting for them.
- This part of the machine gets very hot, so _____ you do, don't touch it.

4 Ways of adding emphasis

►► Grammar Reference 5.1–4 Student's Book p152

T51 Complete the second version of the conversations using some of the ways of adding emphasis shown in the Grammar Reference.

1

- A Ben's very happy in his new job.
 B He works for Sony, doesn't he?
 A No, he used to work for Sony. He works for Hitachi now. He really likes it there.
 B I'm interested in why he left Sony. I thought he really liked his job there.
 A He liked the pay, but the hours were very long.

- A Ben's very happy in his new job.
 B It's Sony he works for, isn't it?
 A No, he used to work for Sony. _____
 He really likes it there.
 B _____ I thought he really liked his job there.
 A _____, but the hours were very long.

2

- C You don't love me any more!
 D I love you, honestly.
 C No, you don't. I really hate the way you just deny everything!
 D But I do that because you make such outrageous accusations!

- C You don't love me any more!
 D _____, honestly.
 C No, you don't. _____!
 D _____!

3

- E Did you see the accident?
 F Yes. The black car didn't stop at the lights.
 E Are you absolutely certain? I thought the driver of the white car was to blame.
 F No, the black car definitely caused the accident. I was surprised he didn't stop. The lights were clearly red.

- E Did you see the accident?
 F Yes. _____
 E Are you absolutely certain? _____

 F _____
 _____ The lights were clearly red.

Listening

5 Martine and Jaap

T 5.2 Listen again to Martine and Jaap's story (from Student's Book p48).

Vocabulary note

to throw the clay to turn the clay into pots
the kiln the oven in which pots are baked

1 Answer the questions.

- 1 What was Jaap doing in Provence twenty-two years ago?

- 2 What does Jaap like about Mont Ventoux?

- 3 Why does Martine like to wake up to the sight of the mountain?

- 4 Where and when did Jaap fall in love with Martine?

- 5 Why does Martine think that Jaap learned to become a potter so quickly?

T 5.2 Listen again. Do these statements refer to Martine or Jaap? Write M or J.

- a ☐ was a teacher
- b ☐ taught pottery skills
- c ☐ my pottery improved
- d ☐ throws the pieces
- e ☐ hand paints the pottery

3 What do Martine and Jaap use these adjectives to describe? You can look at the tapescript on p84 to check.

- 1 irresistible

- 2 wonderful

- 3 entrancing

- 4 exhausted

- 5 poor

- 6 creative



Pronunciation

6 Sentence stress

T 5.3 Match a question or statement in A with a response in B, according to the stress pattern (the stressed words are in *italics*). Then listen, check, and repeat.

A	B
1 <input type="checkbox"/> I hear Jane's just bought a second-hand Volvo Estate.	a She's got a <i>brand-new</i> Volvo <i>estate</i> .
2 <input type="checkbox"/> What kind of car has Jane got?	b She's got a <i>brand-new</i> Volvo <i>estate</i> .
3 <input type="checkbox"/> I like Jane's brand-new Volvo saloon.	c She's got a <i>brand-new</i> Volvo <i>estate</i> .
4 <input type="checkbox"/> What nationality is she?	d I <i>thought</i> she was German.
5 <input type="checkbox"/> John said she was German.	e I <i>thought</i> she was <i>German</i> .
6 <input type="checkbox"/> Frank said Heidi was Swiss.	f I <i>thought</i> she was <i>German</i> .
7 <input type="checkbox"/> I hear you married Anne's sister last week.	g I'm going to marry Anne's <i>sister</i> !
8 <input type="checkbox"/> I hear you're going to marry Anne.	h I'm going to marry Anne's <i>sister</i> !
9 <input type="checkbox"/> I've just proposed to Anne's sister.	i I'm <i>going</i> to marry Anne's <i>sister</i> !
10 <input type="checkbox"/> What kind of novels do you like?	j I <i>like</i> reading romantic novels.
11 <input type="checkbox"/> Why do you read such rubbish?	k I like reading romantic novels.
12 <input type="checkbox"/> What do you like reading?	l I like reading <i>romantic</i> novels.
13 <input type="checkbox"/> He never speaks a word of truth.	m I could tell <i>he</i> was lying.
14 <input type="checkbox"/> What did you think of what he said?	n I could <i>tell</i> he was lying.
15 <input type="checkbox"/> What did you think of what they said?	o I could tell he was <i>lying</i> .

Vocabulary

7 Problems, problems...

1 Match the headings, letters from readers, and the replies.

Heading

Letter

Reply

I fancy my friend

☐
☐

Should I reveal he's a cheat?

☐
☐

He never takes me out

☐
☐

2 Complete the texts in exercise 1 with the adjectives in the box.

committed	crushed	faithful	fond
indignant	infatuated	passionate	unattractive

Letters

1 My sister's husband is cheating on her, and he's well aware that I know all about it. I'm amazed that he can pass the time of day with me as if everything is fine. He's never actually mentioned his affair, not even indirectly. I feel I'm in a real dilemma. I'm quite close to my sister and feel very (1) _____ on her behalf. Naturally, my instinct is to tell her, but I'm anxious not to cause her the grief that would follow if she learnt the truth.

2 I've been going out with my boyfriend for nearly three years. I still love him to bits, and he shows quite a lot of affection for me when we're alone. The problem is, he doesn't want to take me anywhere. He goes out clubbing with his mates at the weekend, but he hardly ever goes out with me. It's not as if I'm (2) _____, so what is it? Is he ashamed of me for some reason, or is he just hoping to meet someone better?

3 I've been great friends with one of my male colleagues for a long time, but just recently, and quite unexpectedly, I've become (3) _____ with him. He's (4) _____ of me, but there's never been any indication that he fancies me. I'm agonizing over what to do. I often feel on the verge of expressing my feelings to him, but I fear it might mean the end of a really good friendship. We're both unattached, by the way.

Ask Andrea

Replies

A This man obviously has a hold on you, but you can hardly call someone who never takes you out your boyfriend! He's obviously undermining your confidence in yourself, and he shouldn't feel he can get away with it. Tell him you want him to show he's really (5) _____ to the relationship and pay some attention to your needs. And if you don't get results, I think you should move on to pastures new.

B I think you should try a bit of harmless flirting, and see what happens then. You never know, he may well be waiting for an overture from you before making a move. You could then be completely open about your (6) _____ feelings. However, if he doesn't reciprocate, try hard not to feel (7) _____. You'll just have to laugh it off.

C A tricky one this, and I feel for you. You never know what goes on behind closed doors, though, and your sister may well just be turning a blind eye. For all you know, she may not be (8) _____ either. You could confront your brother-in-law, but he might claim that it's none of your business. You could also suggest to him that they go together to a marriage counsellor. Whatever you do, I don't think you should tell your sister until you have a clear idea of the bigger picture.

8 Word puzzle

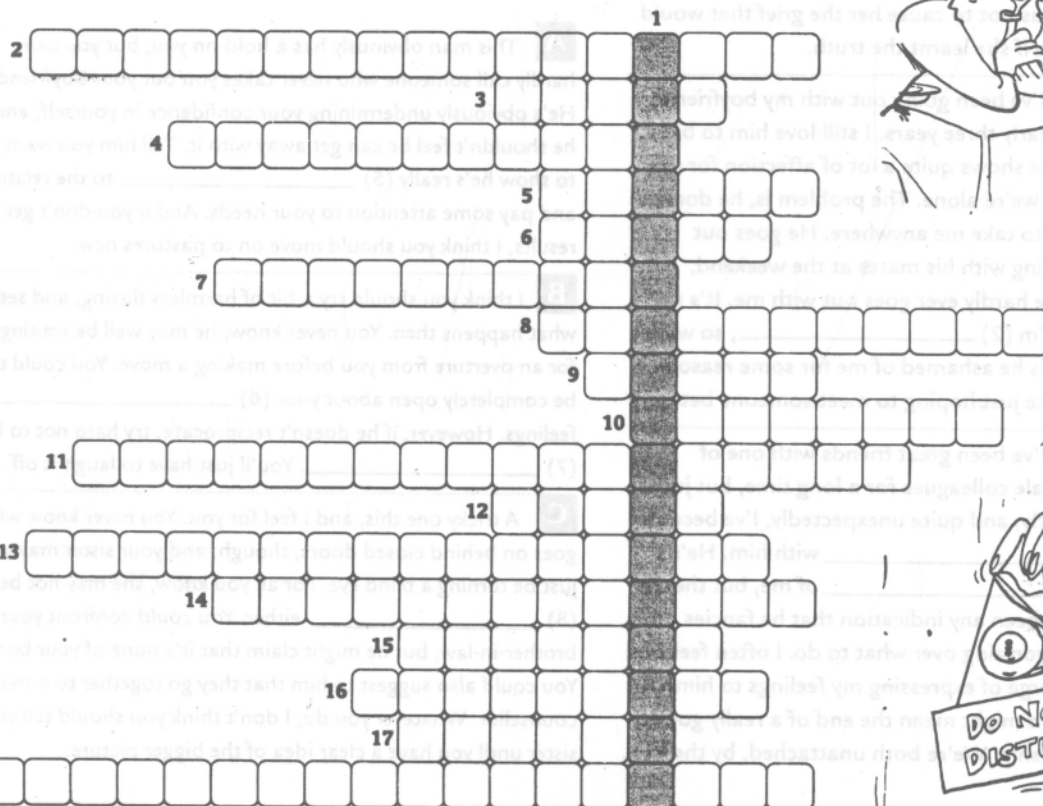
Complete the word puzzle. (All the words and phrases are in the texts on p33.)

Across

- 2 love someone a lot (informal) (4, 7, 2, 4)
- 3 deep sadness (5)
- 4 escape punishment for something you did wrong (3, 4, 4)
- 5 difficult (informal) (6)
- 6 find somebody attractive (informal) (5)
- 7 not married or with a regular boyfriend / girlfriend (10)
- 8 return (feelings) (11)
- 9 behave as if you fancy someone, but not seriously (5)
- 10 an opening move in a relationship (9)
- 11 someone who helps married couples to resolve problems (8, 10)
- 12 friends (informal) (5)
- 13 spend time talking casually (4, 3, 4, 2, 3)
- 14 ignore a problem (4, 1, 5, 3)
- 15 be unfaithful to (5, 2)
- 16 take action to get something started (4, 1, 4)
- 17 a sexual relationship usually involving someone who's married (6)
- 18 leave behind the old circumstances of one's life (4, 2, 2, 8, 3)

Down

- 1 in private (6, 6, 5)



9 Adjectives and nouns

Complete the table. Use your dictionary to help you.

Adjective	Noun
1 admiring	<u>admiration</u>
2 afraid	_____
3 anxious	_____
4 astonished	_____
5 committed	_____
6 considerate	_____
7 deceitful	_____
8 devoted	_____
9 disloyal	_____
10 faithful	_____
11 grateful	_____
12 indignant	_____
13 infatuated	_____
14 proud	_____
15 romantic	_____
16 suspicious	_____

10 Nouns from adjectives + preposition

Complete the sentences with *at*, *for*, *in*, *of*, or *to*. Use each preposition twice.

- I am full of admiration _____ the way in which she handled the negotiations.
- They take great pride _____ their son's academic achievements.
- The Health Minister praised the nurses for their devotion _____ duty.
- She has a strong, simple faith _____ God.
- There was widespread public indignation _____ the way the hostages were treated.
- He was arrested on suspicion _____ murder.
- He should show more consideration _____ the feelings of others.
- His commitment _____ the cause of human rights was total.
- He expressed utter astonishment _____ the outcome of the election.
- Arachnophobia is an extreme or irrational fear _____ spiders.

Synonyms

11 Verbs to describe different sounds

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use each verb once with its literal meaning, and once with a metaphorical meaning.

buzz	creak	rattle	roar
rumble	scratch	slam	squeak

Literal meaning

- He _____ the door in rage as he left.
- These new shoes make a _____ noise when I walk upstairs.
- The lion stood up in its cage and _____, frightening all the children.
- I could hear the thunder _____ in the distance.
- The old stairs _____ as I walked up them.
- A What's that noise?
B It's just the cat _____ at the door.
- The dog was held on a long chain that _____ when it moved around.
- The bees were _____ around the flowers.

Metaphorical meaning

- Lorries _____ along this road at an incredible speed. It's very dangerous.
- I couldn't sleep because my head was _____ with thoughts of the day to come.
- The play was _____ by all the critics in the press, apart from one, who thought the leading actor saved the show.
- Without thinking, he _____ off a long list of things we needed to buy.
- There's been a huge increase in planning applications and the system is _____ under the strain.
- I was very lucky to get a place on the course. Someone dropped out at the last minute, so I just _____ in.
- The argument about the new pay structure _____ on for many months before the unions finally decided to take action.
- I've been _____ my head trying to come up with a solution.

Phrasal verbs

12 Relationships

1 Write the phrasal verbs under the correct heading in the table.

ask sb out	break sth off	chat sb up
fall for sb	get off with sb	get over sb / sth
go off sb	pack sb in	pick sb up
run after sb	split up with sb	walk out on sb

Starting a relationship	Finishing a relationship
ask sb out	

2 Complete the conversations with the correct form of a phrasal verb from exercise 1.

- 1 A Did you hear that Samantha and Oliver have (1) split up?
- B No!
- A Yes. She (2) _____ him last week.
- B Do you think there's a chance they'll get back together?
- A No way. Apparently Samantha's (3) _____ the engagement and returned the ring.
- B Oh, dear. He's besotted with her. He'll take forever to (4) _____ it.
- 2 C I saw you at the party last night, (5) _____ that gorgeous-looking boy.
- D Yeah, but that's all we did - talk. I didn't (6) _____ him or anything.
- 3 E Are David and Judy still going out?
- F No. He's (7) _____ her _____.
- E That didn't last long.
- F No. He's always (8) _____ girls and dumping them unceremoniously after a few weeks.
- 4 G I've noticed Sally's starting to flirt with James. I think she's (9) _____ him.
- H I don't know what she sees in him, frankly.
- G No. I quite liked him at first, but I've really (10) _____ him now.

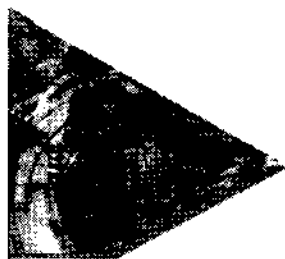


ENDQUOTES

... on love

Match a phrase in A with a phrase in B to make quotations about love.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A</p> <p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> Love at first sight is possible,</p> <p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> Love is blind -</p> <p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> Love can hope</p> <p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> Marry in haste,</p> <p>5 <input type="checkbox"/> Love is an irresistible desire</p> <p>6 <input type="checkbox"/> Love is shown in your deeds,</p> <p>7 <input type="checkbox"/> Do you believe in love at first sight</p> <p>8 <input type="checkbox"/> Love means nothing in tennis</p> | <p>B</p> <p>a repent at leisure.</p> <p>b to be irresistibly desired.</p> <p>c but everything in life.</p> <p>d but it pays to take a second look.</p> <p>e or do I have to walk past you again?</p> <p>f marriage is the eye-opener.</p> <p>g not in your words.</p> <p>h where reason would despair.</p> |
|---|---|



6

Passives • *seem* and *appear*
Nouns formed from phrasal verbs
Idioms with pairs of words

Newspeak

Passives

1 Reporting with passive verbs

►► Grammar Reference 6.2 Student's Book p152

Rewrite the following sentences using the verb in brackets.

- 1 Don McCullin is one of the greatest war photographers. (considered)

Don McCullin is considered to be one of the greatest war photographers.

- 2 He suffered from recurring nightmares after working in Vietnam. (said)

- 3 The new president is a moderate. (said)

- 4 He was an active trade unionist when he was young. (known)

- 5 The rain will die out this afternoon. (expected)

- 6 The escaped prisoner is heading for Scotland. (reported)

- 7 She has an income of over £100,000. (supposed)

- 8 Three people have been killed in an avalanche. (believed)

- 9 They were skiing in the area when the avalanche started. (presumed)

- 10 The rival factions are heading for an agreement on the disputed territory. (thought)

2 Passive revision

Rewrite the two radio news stories, below and on p38, using passive constructions where appropriate.

- 1 People have hailed a teenage girl a hero after she jumped into a canal to save a child's life. Kate Mills, three, fell into the canal while strapped into her pushchair. Several passers-by saw the incident from the tow-path, but it was the girl who leapt into the water and dragged the buggy to the surface. A passing fireman pulled Kate and the girl from the water and an ambulance took them to hospital. They discharged them both after a brief check-up. They have not yet identified the girl, who left the hospital without revealing her name, but locals believe she is from outside the area.

A teenage girl has been hailed a hero after ...



A heroic cockatoo that someone killed last month as it tried to defend its owner may not have died in vain. People claim that 'Bird', who its owner named after the basketball player Larry Bird, may provide vital evidence in a murder trial. When someone fatally attacked Bird's owner, Kevin Butler, at his home in Texas, the cockatoo fought back. Bird managed to wound the two assailants before they stabbed it to death with a fork. Now people hope that DNA they scrape from Bird's claws will help convict the suspected killers.

3 seem and appear

►► Grammar Reference 6.3 Student's Book p153

Rewrite the sentences using *seem* and *appear* with different structures. In some you need to use a *to* infinitive, in the others a *that* clause.

- 1 It seems that he stole the money.
He seems to have stolen the money.
- 2 They appear to be missing.
It appears that they're missing.
- 3 It appears that the outlook for tomorrow's weather is good.

- 4 Tom appears to have been expelled from his school.

- 5 She seems to be enjoying life now that the trial is over.

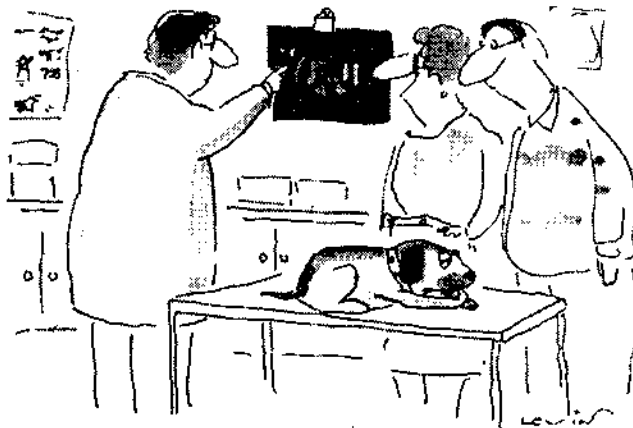
- 6 It seemed that the ousted dictator had left the country.

- 7 The spokesman seemed to be avoiding the journalist's questions.

- 8 It would appear that the gang have been arrested by the police.

- 9 It appears that their marriage has broken up.

- 10 The athlete would appear to have failed the drugs test.



'He appears to have eaten some homework.'

Listening

4 Can it be true?

- 1 **T 61** Listen to the news stories and complete the headlines.

(1) _____
saves climber

Pilot (2) _____ on cricket
pitch at royal palace

'Compensation Awards'
launched by (3) _____

2 Match the words and definitions.

- 1 ☐ novice
- 2 ☐ blizzard
- 3 ☐ freak (*adjective*)
- 4 ☐ alert (*verb*)
- 5 ☐ glider
- 6 ☐ transpired
- 7 ☐ scalding
- 8 ☐ hubcap

- a a plane with no engine
- b severe snowstorm
- c round metal cover in the centre of a car's wheel
- d warn sb about a dangerous situation
- e very unusual or unexpected
- f extremely hot (liquid)
- g person with little experience
- h became known later

3 **T 61** Listen again to the news stories. Complete the tasks below.

Story 1 Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 ☐ Leonardo Diaz was an experienced mountain climber.
- 2 ☐ He tried to use his mobile phone when he got into difficulties.
- 3 ☐ At one point he thought he was going to die.
- 4 ☐ The phone company called to query the bill.
- 5 ☐ The phone company employees phoned him frequently to stop him falling asleep.

Story 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Why was the pilot flying his glider?

- 2 What made him try to land in a 'nice-looking field'?

- 3 Why did the police make an appearance?

- 4 What was Her Majesty's reaction to the episode?

Story 3 Complete the chart.

	Amount of compensation	Reason for compensation	Why was he/she partly to blame?
Stella Liebeck			
Carl Truman			
Amber Carson			

Pronunciation

5 Reading the news

- 1 **T 6.2** Read and listen again to the third radio news report. Note the main stress and links between words in connected speech. Then practise reading it aloud.

The number of compensation claims made by Americans following 'accidents' has increased dramatically over the past few years. Now a newspaper has launched the 'Stella Awards', named after Stella Liebeck, who was awarded two point nine million dollars compensation after spilling a cup of scalding McDonald's coffee on her lap. A contender for this year's award is Carl Truman, who won seventy-four thousand dollars after his hand was run over by a neighbour's car. At the time he was trying to steal the hubcaps from the wheels. Another favourite is Amber Carson, who received a hundred and thirteen thousand dollars from a Philadelphia restaurant after slipping on a spilt soft drink. The drink was only on the floor because Carson had thrown it over her boyfriend thirty seconds earlier.

- 2 **T 6.3** Look at the following news report and mark the main stress and links between words. Read it aloud, then listen and check.

Two elderly Americans have travelled to Scotland to meet the descendants of the fishermen who pulled them out of the Atlantic over seventy years ago. Janet Lee Hutchinson, 77, and her sister, Kathryn, 78, were only six and eight when their parents' plane came down off Greenland in 1932. In danger of freezing and without any food at all, they would have died had it not been for the crew of the *Lord Talbot*, who negotiated ice floes to reach them. 'They gave us the chance to have the rest of our lives', said Kathryn.

Vocabulary

6 Nouns formed with a verb and preposition

- 1 Complete the sentences with the compound nouns in the box.

backlash	breakthrough	check-up	downpour
drawback	outcome	output	setback
shake-up	spin-off	upkeep	upshot

- Teachers are anxiously awaiting the _____ of the pay negotiations.
- My landlord takes care of the flat, but I'm responsible for the _____ of the garden.
- Non-stick saucepans are a _____ from technological advances in space research.
- The factory has increased _____ by 20 per cent over the past year.
- The government will face a _____ from pensioners if they cut the state pension.
- Manchester United's defeat is a serious _____ to their chances of winning the cup.
- The actor's wife maintains that he has been to the doctor simply for a blood test and a _____.
- He believes the main _____ to living in Tokyo is the high cost of living.
- The press photographers were caught in a sudden _____ and got completely drenched.
- This drug represents a significant _____ in the fight against AIDS.
- Two students were caught selling drugs. The _____ of it all was that they were expelled from the school.
- The new chief executive was brought in after a big management _____.

- 2 Match an adjective in A with the compound noun in B which it collocates with.

A	B
1 torrential	a spin-off
2 marital	b check-up
3 lucrative	c downpour
4 prolific	d outcome
5 routine	e output
6 favourable	f break-up

7 Nouns with a special meaning in the plural

Complete the pairs of sentences with the nouns in the box. The same noun is used in each pair of sentences, once in its singular and once in its plural form.

damage	experience	good	ground
honour	length	pain	term

- It has been an honour to work with you.
She has an honours degree in geography.
- I have a terrible _____ in my chest.
I took great _____ to make him welcome.
- After the accident, she had to come to _____ with the fact that she wouldn't dance again.
During his first _____ of office, the President implemented some major reforms.
- We need a person with relevant _____ to fill the post.
He wrote a book about his _____ whilst crossing Africa on foot.



- The vicar was a kind man, and did a lot of _____ during his life.
There is a wide range of electrical _____ on sale in our village shop.
- He was ashamed of his working class background, and went to great _____ to conceal it.
I can only swim one _____ of the swimming pool before I get tired.
- Don't sit on the grass. The _____ is still wet.
I trust John. I have good _____ for believing his version of events.
- The storm caused a lot of _____.
She was awarded £20,000 _____ in the libel case.

Phrasal verbs

8 Phrasal verbs and nouns formed from them

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

break out	crack down	get together
rip off	sell out	write off

- Shop-keepers always try to _____ tourists _____ by overcharging them.
- Tickets for the concert have _____.
It's impossible to buy one now.
- My sister and I are very close. Whenever we _____ we have a good old chat and a laugh.
- If Interpol had more resources, they could _____ on drug smugglers.
- Many people believe that western banks should _____ debts owed by poor countries that can't afford to service them.
- The protest march was going well, but suddenly a fierce fight _____ between rival factions and a lot of damage was done.

Now complete these sentences with the same phrasal verbs, this time making them into nouns. (All the nouns have the verb as the first element, except one.)

- The football match was a _____.
The capacity crowd enjoyed every minute.
- Police are having a _____ on speeding motorists, and imposing heavy fines.
- There has been a severe _____ of food poisoning at the local hospital.
- We're having a little _____ on Sunday to celebrate. Would you like to come?
- You paid someone £800 to build that little wall!
What a _____!
- After the accident, my car was a complete _____ and I had to get a new one.



Idioms

9 Pairs of nouns, adverbs, and verbs

- 1 Match the pairs of nouns, adverbs, and verbs in A and B. (Look for rhymes, opposites, synonyms, and alliteration.) Then match each pair with the correct definition in C.

Pairs of nouns		Definition
<div><div>A</div><div>B</div><div><div>1</div><div>2</div><div>3</div><div>4</div><div>5</div><div>6</div></div><div><div>dealing</div><div>parcel</div><div>go</div><div>outs</div><div>have-nots</div><div>take</div></div></div>	<div><div>C</div><div><div>a</div><div>b</div><div>c</div><div>d</div><div>e</div><div>f</div></div><div><div><input type="checkbox"/> compromise</div><div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the rich and the poor</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> essential component of something</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> intricate details</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> close to both success and failure</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> complex business negotiations</div></div></div>	
Pairs of adverbs		Definition
<div><div>A</div><div>B</div><div><div>7</div><div>8</div><div>9</div><div>10</div><div>11</div><div>12</div></div><div><div>by</div><div>as</div><div>first</div><div>far</div><div>loud</div><div>now</div></div><div><div>foremost</div><div>again</div><div>clear</div><div>wide</div><div>large</div><div>when</div></div></div>	<div><div>C</div><div><div>g</div><div>h</div><div>i</div><div>j</div><div>k</div><div>l</div></div><div><div><input type="checkbox"/> occasionally</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> most important</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> whenever</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> generally speaking</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> unmistakably clear</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> everywhere</div></div></div>	
Pairs of verbs		Definition
<div><div>A</div><div>B</div><div><div>13</div><div>14</div><div>15</div><div>16</div><div>17</div><div>18</div></div><div><div>hit</div><div>live</div><div>wait</div><div>pick</div><div>rant</div><div>chop</div></div><div><div>rave</div><div>see</div><div>miss</div><div>change</div><div>learn</div><div>choose</div></div></div>	<div><div>C</div><div><div>m</div><div>n</div><div>o</div><div>p</div><div>q</div><div>r</div></div><div><div><input type="checkbox"/> choose whatever suits you</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> inexact</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> complain by shouting angrily</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> become wiser</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> repeatedly change one's mind</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> be patient and find out later</div></div></div>	

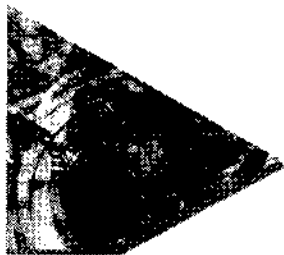
2 Choose the correct pairs.

- 1 It was *hit and miss* / *touch and go* whether he'd finish the work on time.
- 2 He can never make up his mind. He's always *chopping and changing* / *picking and choosing*.
- 3 *By and large* / *First and foremost* he did very well in his final exams, though his maths results were a bit disappointing.
- 4 I should never have trusted him, but you *hit and miss* / *live and learn*, don't you?
- 5 With a bit of *give and take* / *wheeling and dealing* I'm sure they can make the marriage work.
- 6 It's OK. I can hear you *far and wide* / *loud and clear*.
- 7 He had too much to drink and started *ranting and raving* / *chopping and changing* about politics.
- 8 Don't worry about returning my CDs by the weekend. Just give them back to me *as and when* / *now and again*.
- 9 Handling complaints and dealing with difficult customers are *the ins and outs* / *part and parcel* of my job.
- 10 He's got many talents, but *first and foremost* / *by and large* he's an actor.

ENDQUOTE

“Reporters thrive on the world's misfortune. For this reason they often take an indecent pleasure in events that dismay the rest of humanity.”

Russell Baker (Journalist)



7

Modal auxiliary verbs • Set expressions with modals
Stress and intonation of modal verbs • Prepositions in questions

Words of wisdom

Modal auxiliary verbs

► Grammar Reference 7.1–3 Student's Book p153

1 Expressing probability

Complete the conversations with *will*, *won't*, *must*, *can't*, or *should*, and an appropriate infinitive (present or past, simple or continuous).



1

Laura [phone rings] It's OK, mum. I'll answer it.
It (1) is (be) Tom. ... 202558. Hello. ...
No, my Dad isn't in at the moment. ...
He (2) will (get) back around nine,
I think ... OK. Bye.

Mum Who was it?

Laura He didn't leave his name. It (3) must
(be) someone from Dad's work because he
mentioned his boss.

Mum Well, what time is Tom coming round anyway?

Laura He's already half an hour late. He
(4) will (be) here at eight and
it's nearly half past now. Oh, Mum, he
(5) must (forget)!

Mum Don't be silly, dear. He (6) will
(forget). He (7) will (be) delayed.

Laura Then why hasn't he called to let me know?

Mum He (8) must (have) a good reason, I'm
sure. I know! He (9) will (drive) here
right now, so he won't be able to call you, will
he? Not while he's at the wheel. [doorbell rings]
There. That (10) must (be) him now.

Laura Hi, Tom. You're late!

2

Mark My bank statement says I'm overdrawn. There
(1) must (be) some mistake. I
(2) will (get) through a whole
month's salary already!

Fiona We (3) will (spend) too much
money on the house lately.

Mark But how come I'm overdrawn?

Fiona It (4) must (be) the DVD player we
bought. It was over three hundred pounds.

Mark How much have you got in your account?

Fiona About five hundred pounds.

Mark Oh, well. That (5) will (get) us
through to the end of the month if we're
careful.

2 Expressing possibility

Complete the sentences with an appropriate infinitive (present or past, simple or continuous).

I wonder why Alan didn't buy me anything for my birthday. I suppose he might

(1) have forgotten (forget). Or he might

(2) _____ (think)

that now I'm getting on, I don't like to be reminded of my advancing years. On the other

hand, he may (3) _____ (not forget)!

He might (4) _____ (give) me a present this

evening when I see him. Oh no! He could (5) _____

(plan) a surprise party like last year. What a disaster that was!

I hope he isn't doing it again!



We haven't seen our cat since yesterday morning. I can't help thinking that she might (6) _____ (be run over).

Or a dog could (7) _____ (frighten) her. She

may (8) _____ (hide) in someone's garden shed.

She might not (9) _____ (be able to) get out!

But then cats do wander off sometimes. She may

(10) _____ (be) fine and someone

could (11) _____ (feed)

her now - in which case she may not

(12) _____ (be) in

a hurry to come home.



I wonder why Heather has bought all these cakes and biscuits? I suppose there could

(13) _____ (be) a special

offer on at the supermarket. Or she might

(14) _____ (have) friends

round for tea this afternoon. Come to think

of it, sometimes she does some shopping

for old Dorothy next door, so they may not

all (15) _____ (be) for Heather.

She might (16) _____ (buy) some for Dorothy.

3 Expressing obligation

Complete the sentences with *must*, *need*, or a form of *have to*. You will sometimes need to use question forms and negatives.

1 A What time do we have to leave for the airport?

B It's only a thirty-minute drive, so we _____ go until 3.30.

I _____ do my packing.

I haven't started yet!

2 How did you damage your bike? You _____ learn to look after your things. When I was your age, I _____ clean my bike every night.

3 There's a new Indian restaurant that you _____ go to. It's wonderful! You _____ book, though, because it's popular already.

4 I'm sure she didn't mean to upset you. You _____ take everything so personally.

5 I hate _____ get up on cold, winter mornings.

6 I hate _____ tell you this, but you've just got a parking ticket.

7 I don't think a career in the army would suit me. I _____ wear a uniform, for a start.

8 You _____ worry about me. I can look after myself.

9 The doctor said I've got conjunctivitis. I _____ put drops in my eye twice a day.

10 What a wonderful meal that was! You _____ gone to so much trouble!

11 I was very concerned about how my daughter would find going to her new school, but I _____ worried, because she loved every minute.

12 You _____ take out travel insurance, but it's a good idea, just to be on the safe side.

4 Set expressions with modals

- 1 Complete each group of expressions in A with one of these modal verbs: *can, might, must, should, will*. (Each group uses the same modal verb, sometimes in the negative form.) Then match them with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 <input type="checkbox"/> You _____ be joking.	a This is something you shouldn't miss seeing/doing.
2 <input type="checkbox"/> I _____ say, ...	b The complete opposite is true.
3 <input type="checkbox"/> It's a _____.	c I feel I should make this point strongly.
4 <input type="checkbox"/> How _____ I know?	d I wouldn't be surprised if ...
5 <input type="checkbox"/> I _____ wonder if ...	e That's precisely what I would expect in this situation.
6 <input type="checkbox"/> I _____ think so too!	f Why do you expect me to know?
7 <input type="checkbox"/> We _____ see.	g We can't control what will happen in the future.
8 <input type="checkbox"/> Whatever _____ be, _____ be.	h I'll be proved right.
9 <input type="checkbox"/> You _____ see.	i Let's wait and find out.
10 <input type="checkbox"/> You _____ be serious.	j Nothing can be done about it.
11 <input type="checkbox"/> It _____ be helped.	k You're absolutely right.
12 <input type="checkbox"/> You _____ say that again.	l I find that impossible to believe.
13 <input type="checkbox"/> You _____ as well.	m I'm not surprised.
14 <input type="checkbox"/> I _____ have guessed.	n It would probably be better if you did (and it won't do any harm).
15 <input type="checkbox"/> You _____ well ask.	o That's a good question.

- 2 Choose the correct set expressions from exercise 1 to complete the conversations.

- 1 A Did you hear that I lost my job last week?
B (1) *You can't be serious! / It can't be helped.*
A Yeah. They were handing out redundancy notices on Christmas Eve. (2) *I shouldn't wonder / I might have guessed* they'd do it just before a holiday. They always do that.
B What are you going to do?
A (3) *You might well ask. / You can say that again.* I'll just have to find another job.
B Well, at least you're very experienced. You'll find another job fairly easily, I'd have thought.
A Well, (4) *I must say, / I might have guessed*, I don't think there's much chance of finding a job at this time of year.
B Oh, I don't know. Firms are always on the lookout for people like you. You'll be OK, (5) *you'll see. / I must say.*
- 2 C Seen any good films recently?
D Yeah, I went to see *Daylight Robbery* last night. Have you seen it?
C No, I haven't.
D Well, (6) *you might as well. / it's a must.* It was absolutely brilliant. (7) *I shouldn't wonder / It's a must* if it picks up an Oscar or two.
C I went to see *Love in Paris*, but it was rubbish!
D Oh, (8) *you can say that again! / I might have guessed.* We walked out half way through.
C (9) *I must say, / You can say that again,* I was tempted to, but I thought it might get better.
D And did it?
C (10) *You must be joking! / You might well ask.* It got worse.

Listening

5 A father's advice on marriage

1 Read the short introduction to a radio play. (It's a modern version of Jane Austen's novel, *Pride and Prejudice*.)

The heroine of the story is Lizzy Bennet, a young woman of 20. She's single, one of five sisters, and her mother is desperate for her to get married. Lizzy's obsequious cousin, William Collins, has asked Lizzy to marry him. She has rejected his offer, as she thinks he's pompous and boring. Mr Collins is now appealing to her mother ...



2 **T71** Listen to an excerpt from the radio play. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 ☐ Mr Collins remains keen to marry Lizzy.
- 2 ☐ Mr Bennet isn't enthusiastic about speaking to Lizzy.
- 3 ☐ Mr Bennet fully supports his wife.

3 Now read the original passage from the novel on p85. Find these phrases and sentences.

- 1 Depend on it ... that Lizzy shall be brought to reason. line 1
- 2 [She] does not know her own interest
- 3 if liable to such defects of temper
- 4 we shall very soon settle it with her
- 5 we are all in an uproar
- 6 I have not the pleasure of understanding you
- 7 And what am I to do on the occasion?
- 8 She shall hear my opinion.
- 9 An unhappy alternative is now before you
- 10 you must be a stranger to one of your parents

4 **T71** Listen again to the excerpt from the radio play and write down the modern equivalents of the phrases and sentences in exercise 3.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

5 Look at the underlined phrases in the original passage on p85. Write modern English equivalents.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

Pronunciation

6 Stress and intonation of modal verbs

- 1 **T 7.2** The meaning of modal verbs can change according to the stress and intonation pattern of the sentence. Read and listen to the pairs of sentences. Underline the main stress. Then match each sentence with the follow-up sentence that shows the attitude of the speaker.

1 ☐ **b** He might have told me what was going on.

☐ **a** He might have told me what was going on.

a At least I could have done something about it.

b But I was busy at the time so I don't remember.

2 ☐ Where can he have got to?

☐ Where can he have got to?

a He was here just a moment ago.

b His train was on time and it's a five-minute walk from the station.

3 ☐ I could hardly walk home.

☐ I could hardly walk home.

a It's at least ten miles.

b My legs were so stiff after the football match.

4 ☐ You could close the door.

☐ You could close the door.

a Then I wouldn't have to sit in this cold draught.

b Then the light won't keep her awake.

5 ☐ Do you have to work all evening?

☐ Do you have to work all evening?

a Or are you just working from six till eight?

b I was hoping we could go out for a drink.

6 ☐ You could have hit him.

☐ You could have hit him.

a You really should have driven more carefully.

b But you'd have ended up in court.

- 2 **T 7.3** Listen and check. Then practise repeating the sentences with the correct stress and intonation.

Vocabulary

7 Revision: word puzzle

Complete the puzzle. The words are all from Unit 7 of the Student's Book.

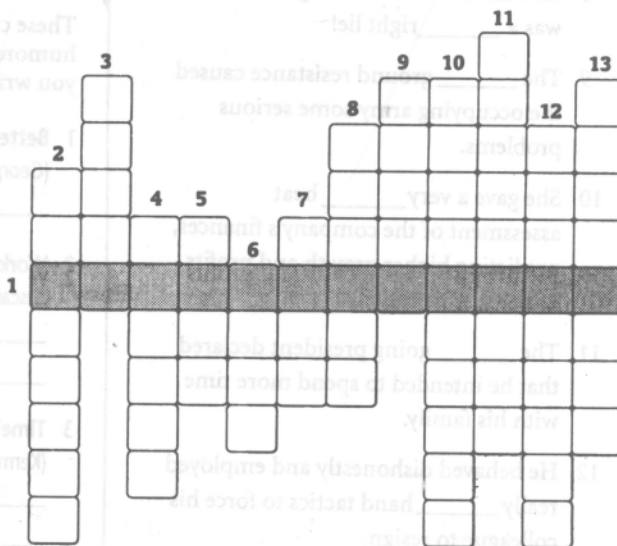
Items 4, 10, and 12 are from the quotations on p63
Item 9 is from part 1 of *Letter to a newborn son* on p65

Items 3, 5, and 6 are from part 2 of *Letter to a newborn son* on p138

Items 1, 2, 7, 8, and 11 are from part 3 of *Letter to a newborn son* on p65

Item 13 is from *You are old, Father William* on p69

- 1 place in a hospital where women give birth (8, 4)
- 2 unable to stop taking (a drug) (8)
- 3 cruel treatment of a person (5)
- 4 hold onto tightly (6)
- 5 let out a long breath that expresses sadness, tiredness, or relief (4)
- 6 suddenly change direction (4)
- 7 rather formal word meaning to cry (4)
- 8 violent and angry (6)
- 9 article of clothing which a baby wears around its bottom (5)
- 10 say that the opposite of what somebody else has said is true (10)
- 11 unable to travel because of heavy snow (9)
- 12 very surprised (9)
- 13 an oily cream that you rub onto the skin to heal injuries (8)



8 Compound adjectives

Complete the compound adjectives in the sentences with the prepositions in the box. Use each preposition twice.

back	down	out
over	under	up

- We ate at a very down-market restaurant last night. Not surprisingly, the food was pretty awful.
- She's a very _____ spoken critic of the government's economic policies.
- The army used _____ whelming force to crush the rebellion.
- The company faces an _____ hill struggle to avoid further losses.
- We've just received a _____ dated pay award, so this month's salary cheque is bigger than usual.
- Could you provide me with some _____ ground information on the project?
- He's behaving like an _____ grown schoolboy, giggling and fooling about.
- He accused me of stealing his wallet. It was a _____ right lie!
- The _____ ground resistance caused the occupying army some serious problems.
- She gave a very _____ beat assessment of the company's finances, predicting higher growth and profits in the year to come.
- The _____ going president declared that he intended to spend more time with his family.
- He behaved dishonestly and employed really _____ hand tactics to force his colleague to resign.

Prepositions

9 Prepositions in questions

Complete the answers with a preposition. Then make the questions.

- A He was addicted to heroin and crack.
Q Which drugs was he addicted to ?
- A She doesn't feel at ease _____ her brother-in-law.
Q Who _____ ?
- A The dove is a symbol _____ peace.
Q What _____ ?
- A He dreamt _____ becoming a musician one day.
Q What _____ ?
- A He's in charge _____ the sales department.
Q Which _____ ?
- A He's in need _____ a good rest.
Q What _____ ?
- A She had a good relationship _____ her neighbour.
Q Who _____ ?
- A They invested their money _____ government bonds.
Q What _____ ?
- A He took advantage _____ his parents.
Q Who _____ ?
- A He's famous _____ his paintings of sunflowers.
Q Which _____ ?

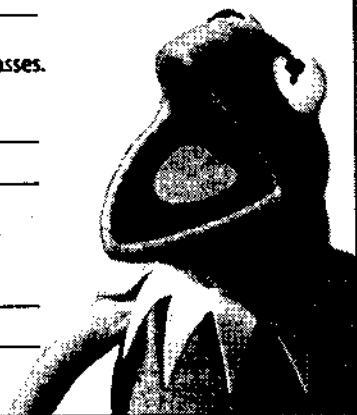
ENDQUOTES

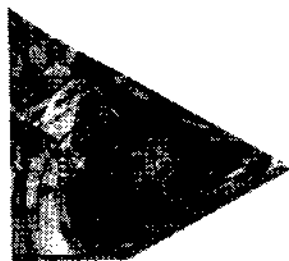
These common or famous expressions have been made humorous by reversing the order of the key words. Can you write the original expressions?

- Better never than late.
(George Bernard Shaw – playwright)

- Work is the curse of the drinking classes.
(Oscar Wilde – playwright)

- Time's fun when you're having flies.
(Kermit the Frog – muppet)





8

Real and unreal tense usage

Metaphors and idioms • *break* and verbs with a similar meaning

Phrasal verbs and Latin-based synonyms

Altered images

Real and unreal tense usage

►► Grammar Reference 8.1–7 Student's Book p154

1 Forming the correct tense

Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verb in brackets, to express either fact or non-fact. Where there is no verb in brackets, use an auxiliary verb.

- A I wish we (1) ~~didn't have to~~ (not have to) go to your brother's exhibition. But I suppose we (2) ~~do~~, don't we?
- B Yes, we promised we (3) _____. He (4) _____ (be) very upset if we (5) _____. I (6) _____ (like) (7) _____ (turn down) the invitation, but I had to accept.
- A I feel so out of place at these events. At his last exhibition nobody (8) _____ talk to me. If only I (9) _____ (understand) more about modern art! And it's so difficult talking to his friends. They all act as though they (10) _____ (be) great artists but I wonder if they (11) _____ (ever sell) any work.
- B Well, just be more careful this time. If only you (12) _____ (not sit down) on that sculpture at his last exhibition. It was so embarrassing!
- A Well, it didn't look as if it (13) _____ (be) part of the exhibition. It just looked like a bench. How (14) _____ (be) I to know it was a work of art?
- B And I wish you (15) _____ (not admire) that pile of bricks in the corner. That *wasn't* part of the exhibition.
- A I'd seen something very similar at the Tate Modern. Look, suppose you (16) _____ (call) him and (17) _____ (say) I was ill.
- B He (18) _____ (not believe) me. I'd rather we just (19) _____ (go). Look, don't worry. It (20) _____ (not last) long. Just look as though you (21) _____ (enjoy) yourself.
- A I (22) _____ (not be)!
- B Come on. It's time we (23) _____ (go). We said we (24) _____ (be) there by seven. We've got a long drive ahead of us.
- A Yes, and a long evening.



2 If only ... / I wish ... for non-fact

Complete the sentences.

- 1 You didn't listen to my advice.

I wish you'd listened to my advice.

- 2 We don't like modern art.

If only _____

- 3 I'm not enjoying this book.

I wish _____

- 4 She couldn't find her wallet.

If only _____

- 5 I've been made redundant.

If only _____

- 6 I smoked too much when I was young.

I wish _____

- 7 He won't apologize for his rudeness.

If only _____

- 8 She'd left before I arrived.

She wishes _____

- 9 I didn't notice the 'Low Bridge' sign.

If only _____

3 would or had?

Decide if the 'd contractions in the sentences are short forms of *would* or *had*. Then decide if the examples of *would* express *past habit*, *future in the past*, or a *conditional*.

- 1 She told me she'd be late. would - future in the past

- 2 He'd often stare out of the window when he should have been working.

- 3 He looked as if he'd run a marathon.

- 4 I'd love to have met Mahatma Gandhi.

- 5 If only you'd told me!

- 6 I bet you'd come if it was free.

- 7 They'd spend hours playing outside before they were old enough to have homework.

- 8 I knew he'd end up being famous.

4 Mixed conditionals

Rewrite the sentences using a combination of conditional types 2 and 3.

- 1 Anne and John are having a row because she lost his tennis racket.

They wouldn't be having a row if she hadn't lost his tennis racket.

- 2 Jane is a very reliable journalist. That is why she was promoted to desk editor.

- 3 I'm afraid of travelling by air, so I had to go to Italy by train.

- 4 Justin's broke because he spent all his money on a painting.

- 5 She doesn't know anything about first aid, so she couldn't help him.

- 6 I didn't look after my teeth, so I've got false ones now.

- 7 I couldn't send the document last night. What a pity I haven't got a fax machine!

- 8 You're so gullible! You believed all the lies he told you?

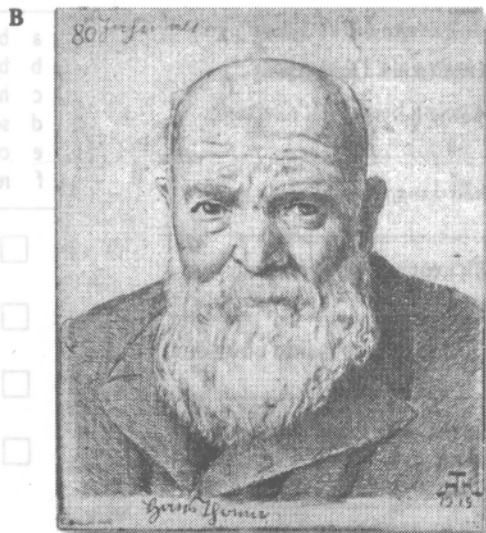
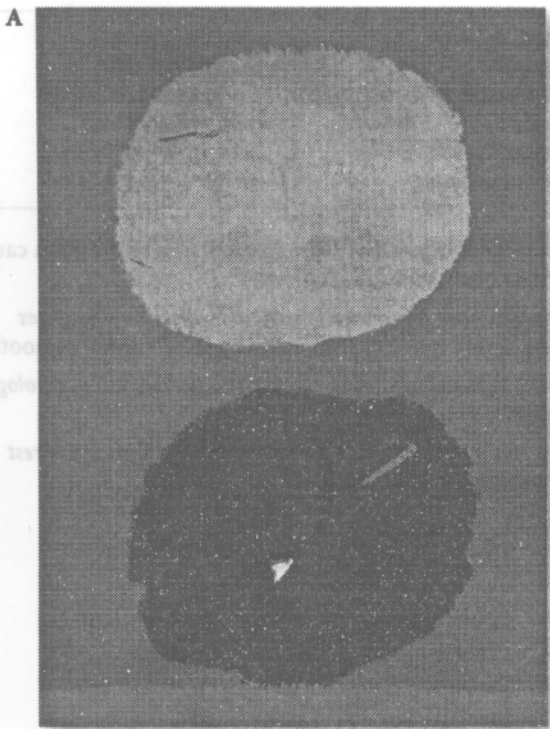


'You'd think if he'd been that successful he would have had his nose fixed.'

Listening

5 The pictures in my house

T 8.1 Listen to Martyn talking about two pictures in his house, an abstract painting (A), and an engraving (B).



1 Which one is he talking about when he:

- 1 ☐ names the artist
- 2 ☐ says where he bought it
- 3 ☐ describes the artist
- 4 ☐ gives the age of the artist

2 **T 8.1** Listen again. Are these sentences true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 ☐ Martyn and his partner buy pictures even when they can't really afford them.
- 2 ☐ Walter Fusi uses other materials than paint.
- 3 ☐ The background of the painting is orange.
- 4 ☐ Walter Fusi uses lava on the painting Martyn describes.
- 5 ☐ Martyn saw the German artist's work in an exhibition in Trieste.
- 6 ☐ The engraving suggests the approach of death.

3 Complete the expressions that Martyn uses to describe the pictures. (The missing word or phrase is defined in *italics*.) You can look at the transcript on p85 to check.

- 1 ... a house which is _____ paintings and drawings ...
(*full of*)
- 2 ... if we see a picture that immediately _____,
(*appeals to our personal taste and values*)
- 3 I think that _____ one a year. (*can be calculated as*)
- 4 ... it's actually made of, erm, a _____ black sand ... (*shiny*)
- 5 ... there's something very, very strong and _____
about these paintings, ... (*deeply thoughtful*)
- 6 ... there's a very, very strong sense of structure in the
_____, ... (*arrangement of ideas*)
- 7 ... I _____ it with Julia's father ... (*make a connection in my mind*)
- 8 ... it's a picture that _____ mortality, ... (*brings to mind*)
- 9 ... in a sense the _____ of life (*worth and uncertainty*)

Pronunciation

6 Conditional sentences

- 1 **T 8 2** Rewrite the sentences using a conditional. Listen and check.

1 She didn't invite me so I didn't go.

If she'd invited me, I'd have gone.

2 I'm not going because it's raining.

3 He insulted me so I left.

4 You didn't eat and you're hungry now.

5 I don't like plants, so I didn't buy one.

6 The weather hasn't improved, so we can't go out.

7 I wasn't free, so I didn't help.

8 He was angry because she hadn't phoned.

9 I rang the police because I was terrified.

10 She wasn't offered the job so she's upset.

11 She didn't contact you because there weren't any problems.

12 I wasn't on time so he left without me.

- 2 **T 8 2** Listen again and repeat the sentences, paying special attention to the pronunciation of the auxiliary verbs.

1 *If she'd invited me, I'd have gone.*

/ɪf ʃi:dmɪvɪtəd mi: aɪdəv ɡɒn/

Vocabulary

7 Revision: metaphors and idioms

Replace the phrase in *italics* in each sentence with a metaphor or idiom from the box.

a	be in floods of tears	g	point the finger at
b	be the root of	h	go round in circles
c	have a few hiccups	i	pull your socks up
d	scar you for life	j	break someone's heart
e	come to you in a flash	k	be overshadowed by
f	reach a crossroads in life	l	not have the foggiest idea

- ☐ A lot of people *put the blame on* television as the main cause of violent behaviour in children.
- ☐ We might *have a few small problems* when the computer system is first installed, but it will soon be running smoothly.
- ☐ Being bullied at school can *cause you permanent psychological damage*.
- ☐ Soon you'll *have to make a decision that will affect the rest of your life*.

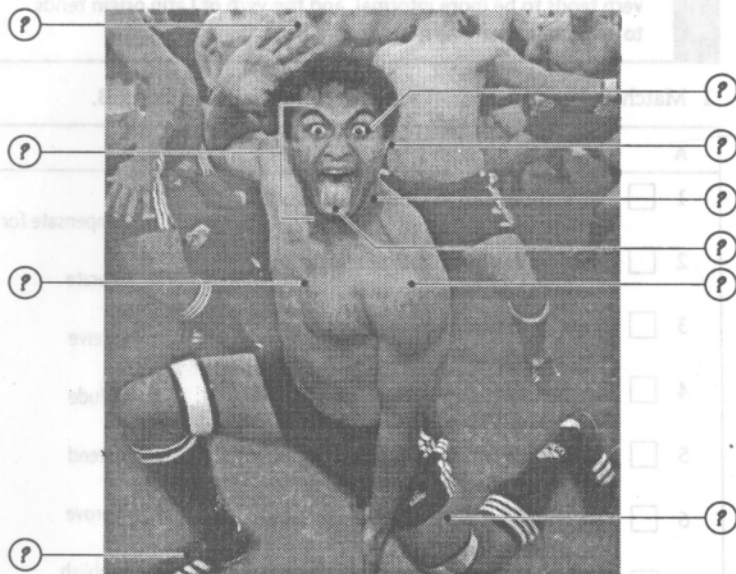


"WHEN I CAME TO THE CROSSROADS OF MY LIFE, I FOUND I WAS OUT OF GAS!"

- ☐ 'How can money *be the fundamental cause of* all evil? It's wonderful stuff!'
- ☐ I don't want to discuss this any more. We could *make no progress at all* for hours.
- ☐ How can you *not know at all* when her birthday is? You've been her best friend for years!
- ☐ It can really *cause someone severe emotional pain* when a lover decides to end the relationship.
- ☐ You can spend ages trying to solve the last clue in the crossword, and then it will *suddenly occur to you*.
- ☐ She will often *cry a lot* for no apparent reason.
- ☐ The Formula 1 driver, Ralf Schumacher, must find it difficult to *appear inferior in comparison to* his older, more successful brother, Michael.
- ☐ If you don't *make a big effort to improve* soon, you'll get kicked out of art college.

8 Metaphors and idioms to do with the body

- 1 Complete the metaphors and idioms in A with the name of one of the parts of the body indicated in the picture. Then match them to the definitions in B.



A

- 1 ☐ keep an _____ on someone
- 2 ☐ pull someone's _____
- 3 ☐ a pain in the _____
- 4 ☐ put one's _____ in it
- 5 ☐ get something off one's _____
- 6 ☐ play it by _____
- 7 ☐ put a brave _____ on it
- 8 ☐ put one's _____ on it
- 9 ☐ be on the tip of one's _____
- 10 ☐ give someone the cold _____

B

- a confess something (usually unpleasant)
- b deliberately ignore or be unfriendly to someone
- c look after someone or something while someone else isn't there
- d improvise according to the situation
- e tease someone
- f show courage by minimizing a problem
- g an irritating person, or something one doesn't like doing
- h something you can almost, but not quite, remember
- i do or say something tactless or embarrassing
- j precisely identify something, especially a problem

- 2 Complete the sentences with the metaphors and idioms in exercise 1. Use the words in the correct form.

1 A To talk to her you wouldn't think she's just lost her job.

B I know. She's obviously upset but she's _____

2 Can you _____ the kids while I pop out for a while?

3 She's _____ at the moment. I must have said something to offend her.

4 It's difficult to prepare for the meeting as I don't know how they'll react to our suggestions. We'll just have to _____

5 Don't take him seriously. He's just _____

6 You really _____ when you asked about his girlfriend. Didn't you know they'd just split up?

7 If you feel so strongly you should go and talk to her and _____

8 Dave's a real _____. He keeps on asking for lifts. I wish he'd use the bus.

9 There's something strange about him, but I can't quite _____

10 I couldn't remember his name when I met him, but it was _____

Synonyms

9 break and verbs with a similar meaning

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Sometimes there is more than one correct answer.

break	burst	crack	crush
shatter	snap	splinter	

Literal meaning

- To make wine, you first _____ the grapes.
- If you stretch a rubber band too much, it _____.
- This plate is _____.
Why don't you throw it away?
- My children's toys don't last.
They _____ very easily.
- If you dropped a vase from a great height, it would _____.
- In winter, water pipes can _____ if they get frozen.
- You shouldn't give chicken bones to a dog because they _____ into small pieces.

Metaphorical meaning

- After a year fighting in the trenches, his nerve finally _____ and he had to be sent home.
- The little boy _____ into tears when he couldn't find his mother.
- His time of 9.06 seconds just _____ the world record.
- The injury _____ his dreams of becoming a professional footballer.
- The army was sent in to _____ the rebellion.
- After managing to stay calm for a long time, his temper finally _____.
- A _____ group is a group of people who break away from a large organization to form their own group. (Use the verb as an adjective).

Phrasal verbs

10 Phrasal verbs and their Latin-based synonyms



Many phrasal verbs have a synonym of Latin origin. The phrasal verb tends to be more informal, and the verb of Latin origin tends to be more formal and literary.

1 Match a phrasal verb in A with a verb of Latin origin in B.

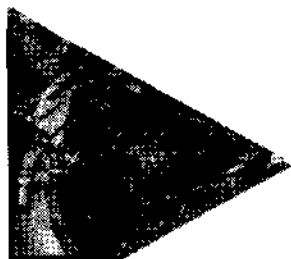
A	B
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Government forces have put down a revolt by a group of soldiers.	a compensate for
2 <input type="checkbox"/> Business has been bad recently, but things are picking up now.	b tolerate
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Don't be taken in by adverts that promise miracle cures.	c deceive
4 <input type="checkbox"/> She says she's got stomach-ache but she's just putting it on to avoid school.	d exclude
5 <input type="checkbox"/> The service was poor but the wonderful food more than made up for it.	e pretend
6 <input type="checkbox"/> The government is setting up an inquiry into prison conditions.	f improve
7 <input type="checkbox"/> Police have ruled out murder, but are holding two men for questioning.	g establish
8 <input type="checkbox"/> The teachers won't put up with bad language in the playground.	h suppress

2 Underline the more appropriate verb, depending on whether the sentences are formal or informal.

- He's a great mate of mine. He's the kind of bloke who'll *stand by / support* you when times get tough.
- At his trial the defendant was charged with *assaulting / beating up* a policeman.
- Looking after six kids all day has *worn me out! / exhausted me!*
- The government is proposing to *abolish / do away with* inheritance tax.
- A team of architects was employed to *do up / restore* the palace to its original splendour.
- You don't have to let him talk to you like that! *Stick up for yourself! / Defend yourself!*
- The Japanese armed forces *gave in / surrendered* on 14 August 1945, bringing World War II to a close.
- Mum, my teacher *told me off / reprimanded me* this morning for being late.

ENDQUOTE

'The moment you cheat for the sake of beauty, you know you're an artist.'
David Hockney (Artist)



9

Verb patterns Prepositions in passive sentences Idioms with *as ... as* and *like*

History lessons

Verb patterns

►► Grammar Reference 9.1–6 Student's Book p156

1 Using the correct form

1 Rewrite the sentences using the verbs in brackets.

deny /di'naɪ/ verb (de-nies, deny-ing, de-nied, de-nied) 1 to say that sth is not true: [VN] to deny a claim / a charge / an accusation ◊ The spokesman refused either to confirm or deny the reports. ◊ There's no denying (the fact) that quicker action could have saved them. ◊ [V-ing] He denies attempting to murder his wife. ◊ [V (that)] She denied (that) there had been any cover-up. ◊ [VN that] It can't be denied that we need to devote more resources to this problem.

- He said he hadn't tried to overthrow the government. (deny)
He denied trying to overthrow the government.
- She never gets into arguments with her boss. (avoid)

- He doesn't smoke any more. He stopped in 1998. (give up)

- Did you arrive on time despite the traffic? (manage)

- The minister said he had made a mistake. (admit)

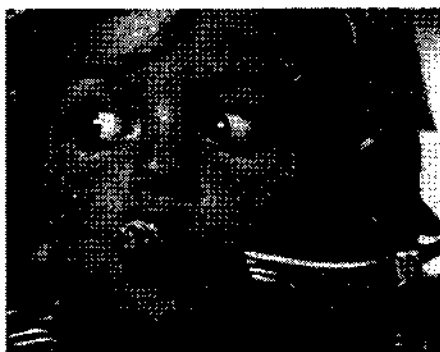
- 'Go on. I'm sure you'll get the job if you apply for it.' (encourage)
She _____
- 'Why don't we go out for a meal?' (suggest)
He _____
- Dave wishes he hadn't lost his temper. (regret)

- 'I'm sorry I didn't phone.' (apologize)
I _____
- Dad wouldn't let Kate go to the music festival. (refuse)

- 'OK, I'll lend you £100.' (agree)
She _____
- 'I'll do better, I swear!' (promise)
He _____

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Sometimes you need a passive form.

- I want to be kept (keep) informed of any developments.
- Our teacher expects us _____ (use) a dictionary.
- I hate _____ (keep) waiting.
- She's thinking of _____ (emigrate).
- Nobody likes _____ (insult).
- She succeeded in _____ (convince) him that she was right.
- He was threatening _____ (call) the police.
- He begged _____ (allow) to come with us.
- I didn't dare _____ (swim) out to the island.
- He was made _____ (feel) very small by his boss.
- Are you accusing me of _____ (lie) to you?
- I remember _____ (tell off) for speaking with my mouth full when I was a child.



2 Correcting mistakes

Find ten mistakes in the verb patterns in the report and correct them.

An eyewitness account of the fall of the Berlin Wall

Ralf Schmidt, 17, reports from West Berlin on 9 November 1989.

The day began like any other. I'd started to get ready for school when I turned on the radio. The announcer said that the Wall was down. I couldn't help to wonder if I was dreaming, it was so unbelievable. I thought I'd better hurry to school to see what was happening. In the school playground, everyone seemed to be very happy and excited. Then the head teacher came out. He said he wanted that we join in the celebrations and so would let us to have the whole day off school.

My friends and I decided to go immediately to Checkpoint Charlie, the main crossing point from East to West Berlin. We were keen welcoming the people arriving from the East. When we arrived, everything was in chaos. We saw young people, old people, friends, and strangers laughing and hugging each other. The first cars from East Berlin started arriving and people were clapping, cheering, and throwing flowers. At first the border guards attempted controlling the flow of cars but soon gave up trying because there were so many, and instead joined in dancing. After a while they didn't prevent people to climb the Wall either. Soon the people at the top were helping others to clamber up – me and my friends among them – and we all carried on to dance. Someone lent us a hammer and suggested us to knock chunks of concrete off the wall. I remember to wave to the East German guards in their watchtowers and they waved back. Only yesterday they would have been ordered shoot us! What a day. I shall never forget it.



3 Verbs + -ing or to with a change of meaning

Complete the sentences with either the infinitive or the -ing form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I used to think (think) that life ended at 30.
I'm not used to thinking (think) so hard this early in the morning.
- 2 Jane was never a very reliable friend. If I were you, I'd try _____ (forget) her.
If your clothes don't seem very white after you've washed them, try _____ (soak) them in a little bleach.
- 3 Please stop _____ (make) such a terrible noise!
After half an hour, we stopped _____ (make) a cup of tea.
- 4 I remember _____ (see) her in another French film and she was really good in that.
Did you remember _____ (call) Tim and tell him that we can't come on Saturday?
- 5 I started _____ (read) classical literature at the age of six.
Oh, look! It's starting _____ (rain).
- 6 He went on _____ (write) his essay, even though the noise started to get louder.
The lecture began very badly, but the professor went on _____ (make) some interesting points.
- 7 I couldn't help them _____ (find) what they were looking for as I was in too much of a hurry.
Harry looked so funny that I couldn't help _____ (laugh).
- 8 Buying your own house means _____ (take) responsibility for all the repairs.
I'm sure she means _____ (make) some big changes in this department.
- 9 Do you like _____ (cook)?
When we have a dinner party, I like _____ (cook) something really exotic that nobody's ever had before.
- 10 I regret _____ (inform) you that you've all failed the exam.
She regrets _____ (buy) those shares.
They've halved in value over the past two years.

4 Verbs of the senses

Complete the sentences with either the infinitive (without *to*) or the *-ing* form of the verbs in brackets.

- I heard my neighbours _____ (turn) off their television and _____ (go) to bed.
- I woke up at two in the morning. I could hear my neighbours _____ (have) an argument.
- When I looked through the window, I saw her _____ (read) a book.
- When she saw me _____ (come), she waved.
- She could feel her heart _____ (pound) as she neared the end of the race.

Listening

5 Henry VIII

- Read the text about the famous English king, Henry the Eighth, ignoring the gaps at this stage.



King Henry VIII Henry was born in 1491 and reigned from 1509 until his death in 1547.

Henry's wives Henry had six wives:

- (a) _____. Their marriage lasted 24 years but produced only one child, Mary. Desperate for a male heir, Henry sought permission from the Pope to divorce Catherine and remarry. The

Pope refused and so Henry broke with the Catholic church in Rome and (1) _____ her nonetheless.

2 Anne Boleyn. Their three-year marriage produced a daughter who would later become Queen Elizabeth I. Henry accused Anne of infidelity and she was (2) _____.

3 (b) _____. She died giving birth to a son, Edward, who would succeed Henry.

4 Anne of Cleves. Their marriage was short-lived and they (3) _____ within six months.

5 Catherine Howard. She was thirty years younger than Henry and a cousin of Anne Boleyn. She shared the same fate: Henry believed her unfaithful and had her beheaded.

6 (c) _____. She (4) _____ Henry.

Henry's character & lifestyle He led an (5) _____ lifestyle and enjoyed entertaining. He loved food and music and was said to have composed the song *Greensleeves*.

The (6) _____ of the Monasteries In 1536 Henry was short of money and so ordered the closure of all 200 monasteries in England. The buildings were (7) _____ and their land and property were confiscated.

- T 9.1** Simone and Richard were asked to remember as much as they could about Henry. Listen to Simone and complete gaps *a*, *b*, and *c* in the text with the names of the wives in the box.

Catherine Parr Catherine of Aragon Jane Seymour

- T 9.1** Try and complete gaps 1–7 in the text with the words in the box. Listen to Simone again to check.

beheaded	destroyed	Dissolution
divorced	divorced	extravagant
survived		

- T 9.2** Now listen to Richard talking about Henry. Identify and correct five errors in what he says.

Incorrect	Correct
1 _____	_____
2 _____	_____
3 _____	_____
4 _____	_____
5 _____	_____

- Read these extracts from Simone's account. Then look at the tapescript of Richard's account on p86 and find the words or phrases he uses that correspond to the words in *italics*.

- ... Henry the Eighth is most *famous* for the fact that ... _____
- ... he was *known for having a very extravagant lifestyle*, ... _____
- ... I *remember* learning at school ... _____
- ... in the *correct order*, ... _____
- ... I've always found that quite *useful* ... _____
- ... *breaking away from* the Catholic church ... _____
- ... he actually *burned* and destroyed ... _____

Pronunciation

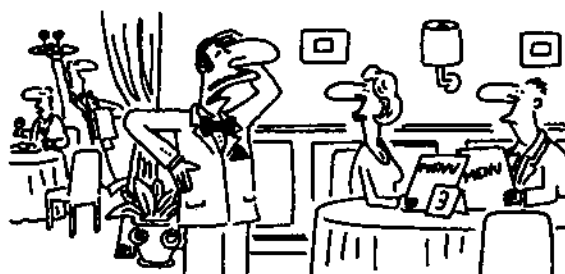
6 Jokes based on homophones and homonyms

Many English jokes depend on a 'play on words' which is the result of a homophone or homonym.

'What colour would you paint the sun and the wind?'
'The sun rose and the wind blue.'

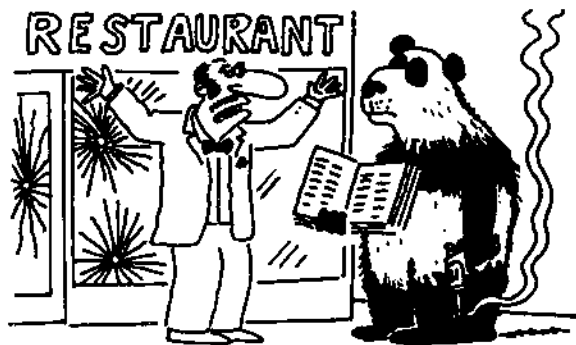
rose is a homonym (a colour and the past tense of rise); and /blu:/ is a homophone (blue and blew).

- 1 a **T 9.3** Find two spellings for this homophone.
/bi:n/ _____ and _____
- b Now listen to the joke. In which order do you hear the two words that are pronounced /bi:n/?
- 2 a **T 9.4** Find two spellings for this homophone.
/wam/ _____ and _____
- b Now listen to the joke. Which of the two spellings do you hear?



- 3 **T 9.5** shoots can mean
 - 1 third person singular of the verb shoot
 - 2 plural of shoot, new young growth on a plant
- leaves can mean
 - 1 plural form of the noun leaf
 - 2 third person singular of the verb leave

Listen to the joke. When the panda reads the dictionary, does it think that shoots and leaves are verbs or nouns?



Vocabulary

7 Revision: verbs and nouns

- 1 Complete the chart. (Use your dictionary to help you.)

Verb	Noun
1 assassinate	assassination
2 attack	_____
3 _____	conquest
4 demolish	_____
5 _____	deployment
6 destroy	_____
7 _____	invasion
8 sink	_____
9 _____	storming
10 revolt	_____
11 _____	threat
12 wound	_____

- 2 Complete the sentences with verbs (sometimes passive) and nouns from the chart in exercise 1.

- 1 The _____ of American battleships in Pearl Harbour in 1941 brought America into the Second World War.
- 2 The _____ of the Bastille by an angry mob in Paris in July 1789 marked the beginning of the French _____.
- 3 The town _____ completely _____ in the bombing raid. Hardly any buildings were left standing.
- 4 Nelson was shot during the Battle of Trafalgar and died from the _____ a few hours later.
- 5 The group of soldiers _____ the enemy positions but failed to capture them.
- 6 The Romans _____ Britain in AD 43 but didn't manage to conquer the whole of the country.
- 7 Terrorism poses a serious _____ to many western countries.
- 8 A lot of people seem to know where they were when President Kennedy _____ in 1963.
- 9 The troops were ordered to _____ in key positions around the city.
- 10 In 1545 the warship *Mary Rose* _____ in the Solent, drowning most of her crew.

8 Historical periods

1 Complete the descriptions of the historical periods with the words in the box.

characterized collapse conquered decline deposed establishment flowering

THE ROMAN EMPIRE

The period during which Rome (1) _____ and ruled much of Europe and the Middle East. It lasted approximately from 260 BC, when Rome gained control of Italy, until AD 476 when the last Emperor was (2) _____.



THE DARK AGES

The long period of instability and economic and cultural (3) _____ in Europe following the (4) _____ of the Roman Empire in the fifth century.

THE MIDDLE AGES

The period from about AD 700 until about AD 1500, which saw Christianity spread throughout Europe and the (5) _____ of the feudal system.

THE RENAISSANCE

This period began in Italy around 1300 and lasted for about 300 years. It was (6) _____ by an interest in Ancient Greece and Rome, and a (7) _____ of art, literature, and architecture.

2 Now complete the descriptions of these later historical periods.

advent corruption crisis decades era movement Pact rivalry

THE REFORMATION

A movement for reform of the Roman Catholic church. It started in Germany in 1517 when Martin Luther launched a protest against the (8) _____ and greed of the Papacy, and resulted in the establishment of Protestant Churches in the following (9) _____.

THE ENLIGHTENMENT

An intellectual (10) _____ in the eighteenth century that emphasized reason, individualism, and religious tolerance, and heralded an (11) _____ of great scientific and philosophical investigation.

THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

The period during which industry developed rapidly. It started in England in the mid-eighteenth century, with the (12) _____ of steam power and the growth of factories.

THE GREAT DEPRESSION

The world economic (13) _____ that began in 1929 with the collapse of the New York Stock Exchange ('The Wall Street Crash') and lasted for four years.

THE COLD WAR

The period of intense military and political (14) _____ between NATO and the Warsaw (15) _____, which lasted from 1946 until the fall of communism in the Soviet Union in 1990.



Prepositions

9 Prepositions in passive sentences

1 Match a verb in A with a phrase in B.

A	B
1 accuse sb	against sb
2 charge sb	of lying
3 congratulate sb	at sb angrily
4 deal	in a scheme
5 force sb	on winning
6 involve sb	for a meal
7 hold sth	about a danger
8 shout	to an ordeal
9 subject sb	with an issue
10 warn sb	into resigning

2 Complete the sentences with one of the verb + preposition combinations from exercise 1. Make the verb passive.

- Her father had a terrible temper. As a child she remembered always being shouted at.
- My boss is rude to everyone, so favouritism isn't something he can _____.
- The matter will _____ by our Customer Service department.
- Your quarrel is none of my business and not something I want _____.
- The meal is free but all drinks will _____.
- Retirement is something you should choose voluntarily, not _____.
- Achieving a first-class degree is certainly something she should _____.
- A fireman is constantly _____ danger in the course of his work.
- Don't complain now about being in debt. You _____ it many times.
- Don't worry about being critical during meetings – it won't _____ you.

Idioms

10 Comparisons with as ... as

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

sheet	bone	clear	feather	flat
gold	hard	old boots	regular	safe

- Are you feeling OK? You've gone as white as a _____.
- Stop worrying about the ladder! It may look very old, but it's as _____ as houses.
- I had my waterproofs on when I got caught in the downpour, so I'm as dry as a _____.
- Joe's as _____ as nails – he never seems to feel any pain.
- It's great cycling in Holland because the countryside's as _____ as a pancake.
- I've enjoyed looking after your kids. They've been as good as _____.
- This steak's as tough as _____ . I can hardly cut it.
- I back up all my work twice a day, as _____ as clockwork.
- Could you explain that to me again? I'm afraid it's as _____ as mud at the moment.
- It's OK, I can carry this on my own. It's as light as a _____.

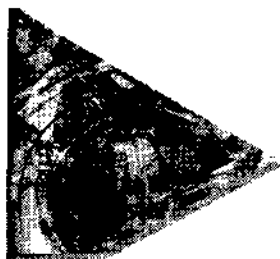
11 Comparisons with like

Choose the correct way to complete the idioms.

- My new motorbike goes like *a chimney / the wind*.
- Mary drinks like *a fish / log*. She ought to cut down.
- Jo and Kay fight like *the wind / cat and dog*. I wish they'd be nicer to each other.
- That jacket fits you like *a leaf / glove*. I'd buy it if I were you.
- He was absolutely terrified. He was shaking like *a leaf / fish*.
- Cook extra food if Bob's coming to dinner. He eats like *a chimney / horse*.
- James forgot my birthday again. He's got a memory like *a sieve / horse*.
- Ray's house stinks. He smokes like *a log / chimney*.
- I'm not at all tired. Last night I slept like *a log / glove*.
- I think he should leave his wife. She treats him like *dirt / cat and dog*.

ENDQUOTE

'The past is really almost as much a work of the imagination as the future.'
Jessamyn West (Poet and author)



10

Intensifying adverbs
Position of adverbs • Extreme adjectives
Phrasal verbs – particles and meanings

The body beautiful

Intensifying adverbs

►► Grammar Reference 10.1–3 Student's Book p157

1 Intensifying adverbs and adjectives

Underline the fifteen examples of intensifying adverbs in the text. Eight of them are wrong. Replace the incorrect adverbs with appropriate ones.



STEVE FOSSETT

The man who made ballooning history

In 2002 Steve Fossett became the first man to fly a balloon solo non-stop around the world. The millionaire adventurer had made six previous attempts on the record, but had been very unfortunate. In 1998 he had an utterly lucky escape when his balloon plunged 8,700 metres into the sea. 'It was rather terrifying and I was deeply disappointed' said Fossett afterwards.

This time, after leaving the Australian town of Northam on June 19th, the 58-year-old American covered more than 19,000 miles in thirteen days, a very amazing achievement. He travelled incredibly fast, sometimes at speeds of up to 200 mph.

In extremely low temperatures, Fossett spent two weeks in *The Spirit of Freedom*, a completely small capsule attached to a 42-metre-high silver balloon. Fossett experienced some absolutely frightening moments, especially over the Andes, where it was extremely difficult to keep the balloon stable.

'Steve has conquered the last quite significant aviation challenge in the world,' said Sir Richard Branson, who himself had tried unsuccessfully to win the record. 'To have flown 20,000 miles over the ocean, at the mercy of the weather, alone in a cold, unpressurized cabin powered by the wind is entirely astonishing.'

Fossett was utterly exhausted after the flight, but speaking by satellite phone shortly after landing in Australia, he said, 'It is a simply wonderful time for me. Finally after six flights I have succeeded and it is a quite satisfying experience.'

2 Intensifying adverbs and verbs

- 1 Complete the letter of complaint (A) to a television company with the adverbs in the box. Use each adverb once.

entirely	freely
seriously	sincerely
strongly	thoroughly

- 2 Complete the reply (B) with the adverbs in the box.

deeply	entirely
fully	greatly
really	sincerely

B

LTC Television • LONDON

Mrs Kirsty McKenzie
43 St Helen's Road
Edinburgh EH52 7JN

A

43 St Helen's Road, Edinburgh EH52 7JN

15th July 200-

Head of Scheduling
LTC Television Centre
London

Dear Sir or Madam,

I feel I must write to you on a matter about which I feel very strongly. I (1) _____ believe that there is far too much sport of all kinds shown on LTC television today.

I (2) _____ disapprove of the wall-to-wall coverage, particularly of football, golf, and cricket on all your channels. It really is unacceptable when I turn on the TV on a weekday evening and find football on two of your three channels. I (3) _____ admit that sport plays a major role in our society, but this really is unacceptable. Sundays are already (4) _____ taken up by sport. I also find it absolutely ridiculous that scheduled programmes are cancelled because of Wimbledon or some other tennis tournament.

I (5) _____ hope that you will listen to those of us who are not sports fanatics and provide some entertainment for us too.

Yours faithfully
Kirsty McKenzie (Mrs)

PS I (6) _____ enjoyed your production of 'Hamlet' last week. More of that sort of thing, please!!

Dear Mrs McKenzie,

Thank you for writing to us about sport on LTC Television. We (7) _____ appreciate viewers taking the time to send us feedback on programming. However, I am afraid that I don't (8) _____ agree that sport dominates our television schedules. I (9) _____ understand that during big sporting events such as Wimbledon or the World Cup the amount of coverage can be quite annoying for non-sports lovers. While we (10) _____ regret alienating any of our audience, we do have a duty as a public broadcaster to ensure that the millions of sports fans around the country are able to watch these events live on television. I (11) _____ believe that we achieve a balance overall.

May I add that I (12) _____ liked the *Hamlet* production, too? I have passed on your comments to the producer.

Yours sincerely

Ray Davies

Ray Davies • Head of Scheduling

Adverbs

3 The position of adverbs

► Grammar Reference 3.1–3 Student's Book p150



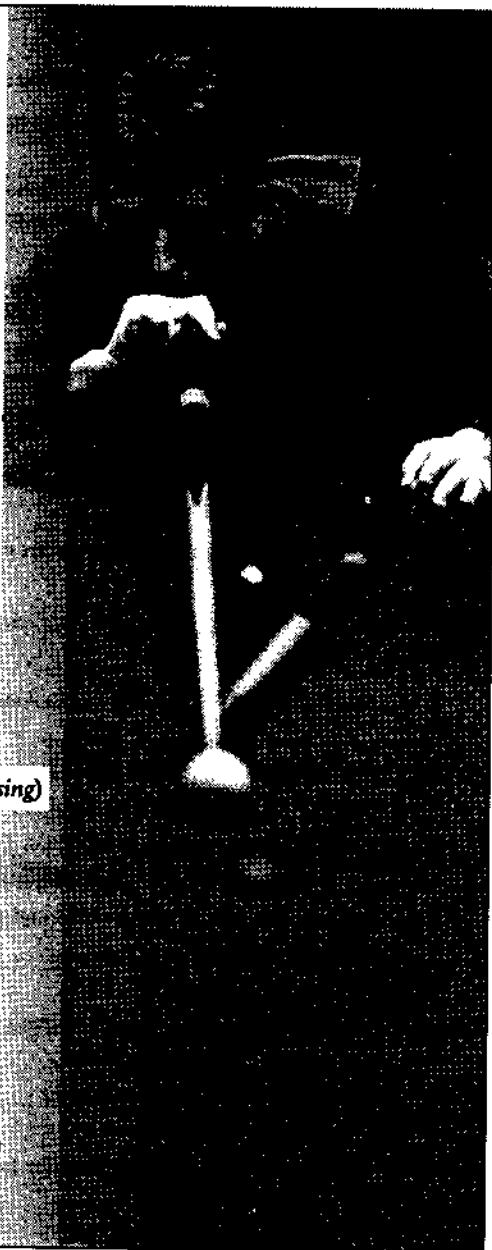
The position of an adverb can change the meaning of a sentence.

Naturally she posed for the camera. (Of course she did.)

She posed for the camera naturally. (in a natural way)

Rewrite the sentences twice, putting the adverb in brackets in two different positions. Each sentence should reflect the meaning of the words in *italics*.

- 1 George likes snooker. (even)
 - a Even George likes snooker. (*George, too*)
 - b George even likes snooker. (*surprisingly*)
- 2 I can't answer that question. (frankly)
 - a _____ (*to tell you the truth*)
 - b _____ (*in a frank way*)
- 3 He realized that she wasn't well. (obviously)
 - a _____ (*of course he did*)
 - b _____ (*of course she wasn't*)
- 4 He discussed the design with her. (very sensibly)
 - a _____ (*it was wise*)
 - b _____ (*in a sensible way*)
- 5 I don't think she can answer your questions. (honestly)
 - a _____ (*I'm telling the truth*)
 - b _____ (*in an honest way*)
- 6 I saw him yesterday at the gym. (only)
 - a _____ (*and nowhere else*)
 - b _____ (*not long ago*)
- 7 He told her what he thought of her. (actually)
 - a _____ (*though it seems surprising*)
 - b _____ (*his real thoughts*)
- 8 She agreed to speak to him. (kindly)
 - a _____ (*in a kind way*)
 - b _____ (*it was kind of her*)
- 9 I'm sure he's clever. (quite)
 - a _____ (*of course he is*)
 - b _____ (*reasonably clever*)
- 10 They knew he was able to cook. (well)
 - a _____ (*it was clear they knew*)
 - b _____ (*skilfully*)



Listening

4 Sports – love them or loathe them?

- 1 **T 101** Listen to Paul talking about golf and snooker as televised sports. Choose the correct answers.

Golf

- Paul thinks that golf *should be played more quickly / lacks drama and excitement*.
- He says that the TV cameramen *have trouble filming the ball in motion / zoom in on the moving ball in the distance*.
- He doesn't understand why the spectators *applaud when the ball is hit / keep walking and stopping*.
- He *can't see the point of / The only interesting bit is watching them putting the ball into the hole*.

Snooker

- He *has always enjoyed watching snooker on TV / used to dislike snooker but now likes it*.
 - He believes that *snooker players are incredibly skilful / all sports require physical agility and a sensitive touch*.
 - When Paul first tried snooker, he *concentrated on getting the ball into the pocket / he planned what his next shot was going to be*.
 - He thinks snooker is *more difficult than chess / similar to chess*.
- 2 **T 101** Look at the tapescript on p86. Replace the words in *italics* with the exact words Paul uses.

- There's one sport that (*fails to interest me at all*) _____, ...
- ... we watch them waiting and (*worrying intensely*) _____ and (*thinking carefully*) _____, ...
- ... this is the bit I always find (*absolutely absurd*) _____, ...
- ... this is what I can't (*understand*) _____, ...
- ... this is a great (*reason to be happy*) _____.
- ... I would start watching snooker on TV and (*lose interest*) _____ pretty quickly.
- ... snooker has this amazing combination of the (*ability to move quickly and easily*) _____, the sensitive touch ...
- ... I remember what (*I finally realized*) _____, that amazed me ...
- ... that seems quite (*a difficult task*) _____ sometimes.
- ... it seems to me something (*similar to*) _____ chess, ...

Vocabulary

5 Revision: words to do with the body

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

clap	frisk	hug	munch
nudge	pinch	rub	scratch
shove	squeeze	spit	wink

- As I went through the security check at the airport a guard _____ me, but he didn't find anything.
- My cat _____ my hand. She's got sharp claws and she drew blood!
- Why are you _____ at me? Is there some joke or is there something wrong with your eye?
- The audience _____ wildly at the end of the performance.
- As she sat down next to me she accidentally _____ my elbow and made me spill my drink.
- He _____ every last bit of toothpaste out of the tube.
- The old lady ignored the queue and jumped onto the bus, _____ everyone aside.
- He kissed his daughter goodbye and _____ her tightly.
- It's not acceptable to _____ in the street, even if you do need to clear your throat.
- When David Beckham walked into the office I had to _____ myself to make sure I wasn't dreaming!
- She sat at the bar sipping her beer and _____ crisps.
- 'Ouch!' he said, and _____ his arm where the ball had hit him.

6 Verbs of movement

1 Label each picture with a verb of movement from the box.

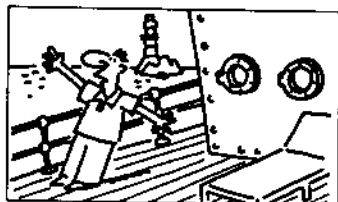
crawl	creep	hop	limp	march
sprint	stroll	sway	tiptoe	stumble



1 creep



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



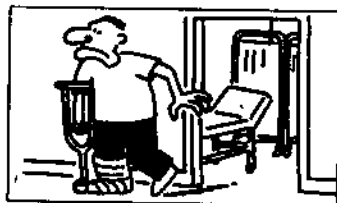
5 _____



6 _____



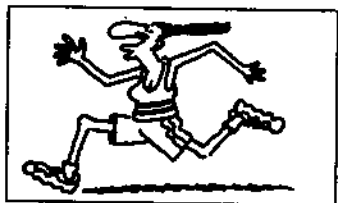
7 _____



8 _____



9 _____



10 _____

2 These verbs can also be used in a metaphorical sense. Choose the correct verb to complete the sentences.

stroll sway limp

1 After the fire the cruise ship managed to _____ back to port.

creeping tiptoeing crawling

2 Stop _____ around the subject and just get to the point, will you?

marching tiptoeing crawling

3 I can't stand the way she's always _____ to our boss. She's trying to get early promotion, I think.

stumbled marched strolled

4 The police _____ upon a huge weapons hoard during a routine inspection of the building.

marched paced hopped

5 Marianne _____ into my office yesterday and demanded a pay rise.

stroll hop crawl

6 I'm driving into town myself so _____ in and I'll give you a lift.

stumbled swayed limped

7 I wasn't sure who to vote for, but I was _____ by one candidate's promise to improve local services.

crept limped strolled

8 A feeling of tiredness and boredom _____ over me.

7 Extreme adjectives

Complete the chart with one weak and two extreme adjectives for each limit adjective.

amusing	apprehensive	chilly
content	crucial	delighted
ecstatic	enormous	exhausted
famished	fed up	freezing
furious	gigantic	gorgeous
grief-stricken	hilarious	hysterical
inconsolable	irritated	livid
peckish	perishing	petrified
pretty	shattered	significant
sizeable	sleepy	starving
stunning	terrified	vital

Weak	Limit	Extreme 1	Extreme 2
<u>peckish</u>	hungry	<u>starving</u>	<u>famished</u>
_____	angry	_____	_____
_____	important	_____	_____
_____	happy	_____	_____
_____	beautiful	_____	_____
_____	big	_____	_____
_____	cold	_____	_____
_____	funny	_____	_____
_____	frightened	_____	_____
_____	tired	_____	_____
_____	sad	_____	_____

Pronunciation

8 Making the most of extreme adjectives

- 1 **T 10.2** Mark the stress on these extreme adjectives. Then listen and check.

crucial gigantic ecstatic perishing

- 2 **T 10.3** Read, listen to and repeat the example. Notice how the stressed syllable in the extreme adjective is longer than the other syllables.

'Was the film funny?'

'Yes, it was hilarious!'

Remember, these are *extreme* adjectives, and you can make the most of them by pronouncing them in this way!

- 3 **T 10.4** Listen to the questions and reply using an extreme adjective from exercise 7. Then repeat the model answers.

- 'Were you angry?'
- 'Are you happy?'
- 'Is it a big house?'
- 'Is it an important document?'
- 'Are you cold?'
- 'Do you think she's pretty?'
- 'Are you tired?'
- 'Was James a bit sad?'
- 'Were you frightened?'



Phrasal verbs

9 Particles and meanings



Certain particles can convey a particular meaning. For example, *off* can have the sense of *departing* (*set off, take off, wander off, run off*).

- 1 Each group of phrasal verbs below has one of these meanings: *ending, reducing, improving, solving*. Write the correct meaning for each group. Which verb in each group *doesn't* belong?

1 _____	2 _____	3 _____	4 _____
cheer up look up brush up break up do up	cut off log off break off set off call off	sort out wear out find out work out figure sth out	turn sth down slow down get down cool down cut down

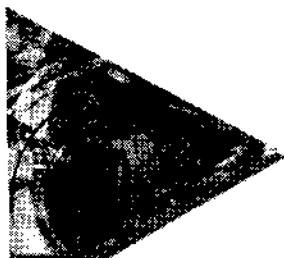
- 2 Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from exercise 1.

- I'm going to evening classes to _____ my English.
- _____ the music, will you – it's far too loud!
- I got a shock when I sat down and _____ how much money I owed my parents.
- We bought a house last year but it was in a terrible state and it's taking ages to _____.
- When I'd finished working on my PC I closed the website window and _____.
- If the soup's too hot, let it _____ for a while before you drink it.
- She smokes 30 a day. She really should _____ a bit.
- Unfortunately he had to _____ the meeting as he had to go away unexpectedly.
- Could you ring Kate and _____ what time she's arriving tomorrow?
- I rang Harry on my mobile, but the reception was really poor and we were _____ in the middle of our conversation.
- Bob's found a job at last so we've begun to pay off our debts. Things are definitely _____.
- When Fidel Castro established close ties with the Soviet Union in 1960, the USA _____ diplomatic relations with Cuba.
- We need to _____ this problem as soon as possible.
- I just can't _____ why she left her husband. They seemed so happy together.
- _____ ! It isn't the end of the world.

ENDQUOTE

'Serious sport has nothing to do with fair play. It is bound up with hatred, jealousy, boastfulness, disregard of all rules and sadistic pleasure in witnessing violence. In other words, it is war minus the shooting.'

George Orwell (Author)



11

Relative clauses • Participles

Adjective order • *shine* and words with a similar meaning
Prepositions in set phrases

The ends of the earth

Relative clauses

►► Grammar Reference T1.2–3 Student's Book p158

1 Defining and non-defining relative clauses

1 Decide if the sentences are more likely to be filled with defining (D) or non-defining (ND) relative clauses, or whether both (B) are possible (with a change in meaning).

- 1 ☒ B The computer _____ has malfunctioned.
- 2 ☐ My teenage children _____ are coming with us on a trip to Italy.
- 3 ☐ I'd like you to meet someone _____.
- 4 ☐ Computers _____ have revolutionized communications.
- 5 ☐ I can remember a time _____.
- 6 ☐ My younger brother _____ gave me a wig for Christmas.
- 7 ☐ The people _____ had to take the train home.
- 8 ☐ Would you like to watch the video _____?
- 9 ☐ I don't like travel brochures _____.
- 10 ☐ The island _____ is Madagascar.

2 Complete the sentences in exercise 1 with the relative clauses in the box, inserting a relative pronoun and commas where necessary.

- a ... car was stolen ...
- b ... I made on my last holiday ...
- c ... has a bizarre sense of humour ...
- d ... they use to calculate weather patterns ...
- e ... foreign travel was exclusively for the wealthy ...
- f ... have become much more powerful in the last 15 years ...
- g ... don't even know who Michelangelo was ...
- h ... often make extravagant claims about holiday resorts ...
- i ... I'd most like to visit ...
- j ... I've been meaning to introduce you to for ages ...



2 Correcting mistakes

In the following sentences, there are some mistakes in the relative clauses. Find them and correct them.

- 1 The island of Malta that is situated south of Sicily and which used to be a British colony gained its independence in 1964.
- 2 A man to whom I was talking to recently told me a joke, which was very funny, but that I've unfortunately forgotten.
- 3 The Inuit who we used to call 'Eskimos' are an ancient people.
- 4 Pete the guy who's car I borrowed last week is visiting his mum that's ill.
- 5 You need a passport for the countries to where you're travelling.

3 Spoken versus written style

Read the transcript of part of a telephone call in which a woman is complaining about a holiday.

Write her letter of complaint, using more formal English. The letter should contain the same information and incorporate relative clauses where appropriate. The beginning has been done for you.

“ Good morning. My husband and I have just had a holiday and ... Yes, that's right, your agency organized it, and I feel I must complain about it. ... Well, when we arrived at the airport the tour guide ... yes, she was supposed to take us to the hotel, but she wasn't there. We had to take a taxi. ... Yes, that's right. And it cost a lot of money. Now, in the brochure - you sent us a brochure two months ago - it said our hotel was 'a stone's throw from a golden beach fringed by coconut palms'. This wasn't true. ... Can I finish, please? In fact it was three miles from the coast. And the 'beach' - we went there on our first day - the beach wasn't sandy at all, but rocky and muddy. ... Yes. And as if that wasn't bad enough, to get to the beach you had to cross a motorway! ... yes a motorway! And it was full of speeding traffic! And then the hotel. It was dirty and old, and you said it had 'all modern conveniences'. When we came to see you, you told us about the wonderful food ... yes, you promised it would be of an internationally high standard. Well, dinner was the same every night and they didn't serve it until 10, and everyone was wanting to go to bed then. I think your company owes us an apology and a refund. ... Well, its motto is 'We aim to please'. ... How much? Five hundred pounds would be an acceptable amount. That's half the cost of the holiday. ”

31 MARLBOROUGH CRESCENT - CAMBRIDGE CB2 4WG

Sunshine Travel
123 Euston Rd
London N2 6TG

31st August

Dear Sir or Madam,

My husband and I have just had a holiday which your agency organized and which ...

Yours faithfully,
Joanna Smith



Participles

►► Grammar Reference T1.4-7 Student's Book p159

4 Forming the correct participle

Rewrite the sentences using a present or past participle.

- 1 She put on her coat, then went out.

Having put on her coat, she went out.

- 2 If you view the cliffs from this angle, they look very tall.

- 3 He got run over as he crossed the road.

- 4 I walked down the road and I hummed to myself at the same time.

- 5 If the weather permits, we can go on a tour of the island tomorrow.

- 6 She'd eaten earlier so she wasn't hungry.

- 7 I live near the sea so I get plenty of opportunities to go swimming.

- 8 When I'd visited Zanzibar I flew on to the Seychelles.

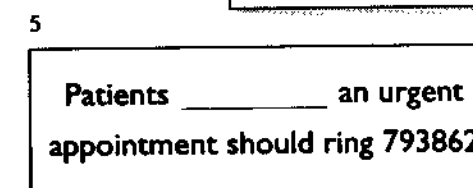
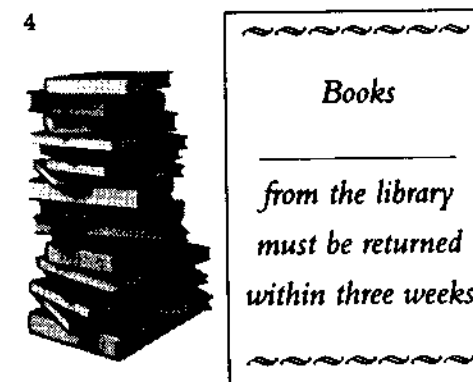
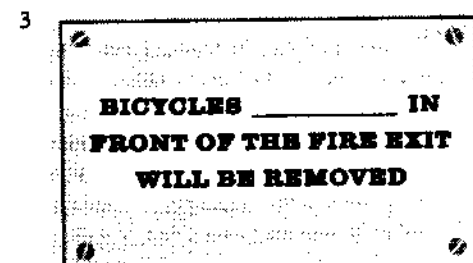
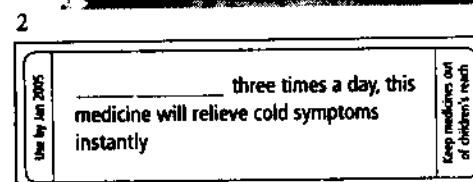
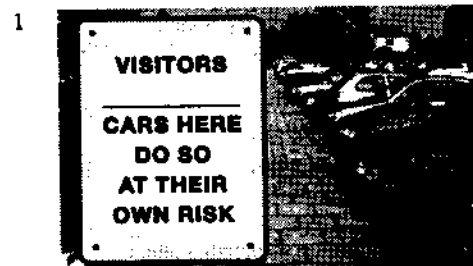
- 9 David has been rejected by his peers and lacks confidence, so he would certainly benefit from a change of school.

- 10 She spilt wine on her dress and completely ruined it.

5 Signs and labels

Complete the signs and labels with a verb from the box, either as a present or a past participle.

apply	borrow	deliver	leave
park	pay	require	swim
take	travel		



6



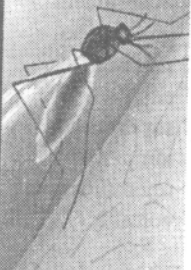
CHILDREN
_____ **IN**
THIS POOL MUST BE
OVER 5 YEARS OLD

7

Passengers _____ to all
stations beyond Exeter should use
the front four coaches only

8

ADVICE



If _____
promptly, the
ointment will
rapidly reduce
the swelling
caused by
insect bites

9

Take-away orders over €20
_____ *free of charge*

10

Customers _____ by
credit card will be charged
5% commission.

6 Participle clauses introduced by *while*, *when*, *after*, *by*, *on*, and *since*

Rewrite the sentences, using a word from the box and a participle clause with *-ing*.

after by on since when while

1 He finished work and went home.

After finishing work, he went home.

2 He ate his supper and read a book at the same time.

3 He invested wisely so he made a lot of money.

4 I came to live in the country a few years ago. I now realize how much I hated living in town.

5 He graduated from university and went off to work in Australia.

6 When you go abroad, it is advisable to take out travel insurance.

7 I came across a wonderful book. I was browsing in our local bookshop.

8 I worked hard and I managed to pass all my exams.

9 When you open a tin, be careful not to cut yourself.

10 When we heard the weather forecast, we decided not to go camping in the mountains.

Listening

7 Simon Winchester: how I became a journalist

- 1 **T 11.1** Listen to Simon Winchester, a BBC foreign correspondent, talking about how he began his career. Put these events in the correct order.

- ☐ read a book called *Coronation Everest*
- ☐ met James Morris in Wales
- ☐ received a letter from James Morris
- ☒ read Geology at Oxford University
- ☐ resigned from his job in Africa
- ☐ worked on an oil rig in the North Sea
- ☐ went to Uganda to work as a geologist
- ☐ flew back to Britain
- ☐ wrote to James Morris
- ☐ found a job as a journalist in Newcastle upon Tyne

EVEREST CONQUERED

HILLARY AND TENSING REACH THE SUMMIT



- 2 **T 11.1** Listen again. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false ones.

- 1 ☐ Simon didn't become an academic because he didn't get a very good degree.
- 2 ☐ They reached the summit of Everest on the morning of the Queen's coronation on 2 June 1953.
- 3 ☐ Simon was particularly impressed that Morris had been the first journalist to report the news.
- 4 ☐ Simon wrote to James for advice on how to become a journalist.
- 5 ☐ James advised him not to become a journalist.
- 6 ☐ Simon didn't meet James until 1974.
- 7 ☐ James had changed into a woman and changed his name to Jan.
- 8 ☐ Simon and James have lost touch with each other.

- 3 Match a verb in A with a noun in B to make collocations. Look at the tapescript on p87 to check.

A	B
1 <input type="checkbox"/> get	a a long story short
2 <input type="checkbox"/> go into	b a degree
3 <input type="checkbox"/> beat	c your resignation
4 <input type="checkbox"/> move	d the best of friends
5 <input type="checkbox"/> hand in	e commerce
6 <input type="checkbox"/> cut	f house
7 <input type="checkbox"/> remain	g a rival

Pronunciation

8 Word stress

- T 11.2** Write the words in the correct column, according to their stress. Then listen, check, and repeat.

agriculture	independence
autonomous	inhabitant
colony	isolated
community	magnificent
depression	population
desolate	seasonal
dialect	situated
economic	supermarket
economy	temperate
eruption	unemployment
exotic	volcanic
explorer	

1 ● ● ●	
2 ● ● ●	
3 ● ● ● ●	agriculture
4 ● ● ● ●	
5 ● ● ● ●	

Vocabulary

9 Adjective order

►► Grammar Reference 11.1 Student's Book p157

Read the extract from a travel diary. Correct any mistakes in the order of adjectives.

12th AUGUST

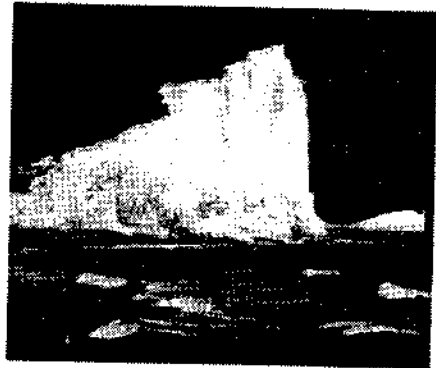
Today was extremely hot and humid. This morning I left the hotel at ten and ventured into downtown, crowded, noisy Kyoto. I headed for Shisen-do, a temple that a friend of mine said I shouldn't miss. Although I was wearing light, cotton, cool clothing I was already sweating after twenty minutes. So when I reached the temple and walked in I was struck by the peaceful, dark interior. Shisen-do is a beautiful, wooden, old temple built with great simplicity and grace, surrounded by tall, ancient maple trees and overlooking a deep, large pond with moss-covered rocks. There is always the sound of running water in Japanese temples and to the left of the pond was a fountain with a bamboo, black, long tube which tipped backwards when it was full of water, making a soft knocking sound on the stone beneath. While I was sitting cross-legged on the tatami mat, looking out at the garden, I got into conversation with a young interesting man wearing a cotton blue robe. He told me he came there to meditate every day. I could see why. When I left, I experienced an incredible sense of calm and well-being, and as I sat having a cold, long drink in a lovely little café not far away, I realized that I hadn't felt like that in a very long time.



10 Geographical features

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

Bay	Canyon	cliffs
Delta	Estuary	peak
peninsula	Plains	Reef
waterfall		



- We took the ferry from Calais in northern France and soon we could see the white _____ of Dover in the distance.
- Last year we went diving off the Great Barrier _____ in Australia.
- Niagara Falls is the highest _____ in North America.
- We watched the sun set over the Pacific as we drove across the Golden Gate Bridge over San Francisco _____.
- The Grand _____ in Colorado is over one and a half kilometres deep.
- Everest is the highest _____ in the Himalayas.
- Spain and Portugal are a _____.
- The Thames _____ flows into the North Sea.
- Although it is surrounded by desert, the Nile _____ is very intensely cultivated.
- Wheat is the principal crop grown on the Great _____ in the USA.

Synonyms

11 *shine* and words with a similar meaning

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box. Use each word once with its literal meaning and once with a metaphorical meaning.

dazzle	glow	flare	flash
flicker	shine	sparkle	twinkle

Literal meaning

- 1 Across the harbour, the lights twinkled in the distance.
- 2 If car drivers don't dip their headlights at night, they can _____ you, and you can't see anything.
- 3 I love the way the dying embers of a fire _____ in the dark.
- 4 If sailors are in difficulty, they can fire _____ into the air to attract attention.
- 5 There was a sudden _____ of lightning.
- 6 I like to polish my shoes for a long time to get a really good _____ on them.
- 7 She stood by the sea and watched the sunlight _____ on the water.
- 8 A candle will _____ in a breeze, casting shadows round a room.

Metaphorical meaning

- 9 The book got a _____ review in the newspaper, so I went out and bought it.
- 10 He's poor at creative thinking, but he really _____ at anything that requires manual dexterity.
- 11 People say that just before death, the whole of your life _____ in front of you in a split second.
- 12 He prepared a gourmet meal, totally unassisted, in the _____ of an eye.
- 13 Violence has _____ up again in Kroana, where the situation is bordering on civil war.
- 14 As soon as I saw her come on stage, I was _____ both by her beauty and performance.
- 15 When our eyes met, a slight _____ of recognition crossed his face, but he made no other sign that he remembered me.
- 16 The party was all right, but it lacked _____. There was nothing very exciting or lively about it.

Prepositions

12 Prepositions in set phrases

1 Complete each list of phrases with *in*, *on*, *at*, or *by*.

1 _____	2 _____	3 _____	4 _____
full speed	duty	tears	the look of things
regular intervals	show	common	heart
someone's disposal	a knife edge	advance	chance

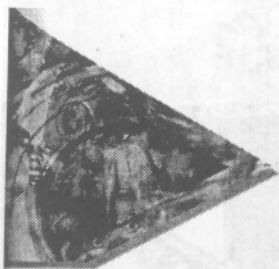
2 Complete the sentences with the set phrases from exercise 1.

- 1 All the hotel facilities are _____ during your stay.
- 2 I hadn't planned to see her -- we just met _____.
- 3 They have a lot _____: they both love walking, swimming, and gardening.
- 4 Travelling _____, the bullet train can do 270 km/h.
- 5 The policewoman wasn't _____ at the time, so she wasn't in uniform.
- 6 The economy is _____ at the moment and we could easily go into a recession.
- 7 What's upset Jane? She was _____ when I saw her just now.
- 8 As you're new to the job I'll come _____ to see how you're getting on.
- 9 _____ Linda isn't coming to work today. It's already half past ten.
- 10 Payment must be made _____, and goods will not be delivered until the account has been settled.
- 11 I've typed this letter of rejection so many times now I know the whole thing _____.
- 12 All the latest computers will be _____ at the exhibition.

ENDQUOTE

"Travel makes a wise man better, and a fool worse."

Thomas Fuller (Clergyman and historian)



12

Linking devices • General revision

Idioms with *time*

Phrasal verbs – literal and metaphorical meanings

Life goes on

Linking devices

►► Grammar Reference 12.1–6 Student's Book p159

1 Revision of linkers

Choose the correct linkers.

Making time

The beginning of calendars

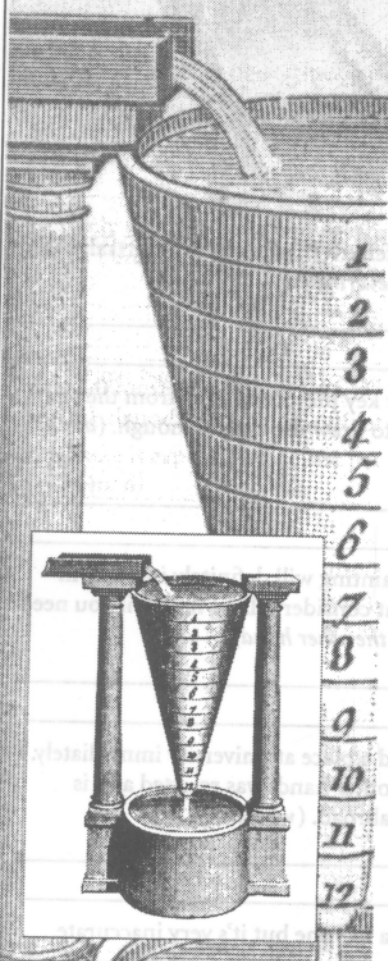
(1) *All the same/Even though* we are not certain of the details of time-keeping in prehistoric eras, we do have evidence of some early attempts to measure time (2) *owing to/since* the discovery by archaeologists of ancient artefacts. For example, 20,000 years ago Ice-Age hunters in Europe scratched lines on sticks or bowls, possibly (3) *so that/because of* they could count the days between the phases of the moon. And 5,000 years ago Sumerians (in present-day Iraq) had already divided time (4) *as long as/in such a way that* a year had 30-day months and a day 12 hours. (5) *In spite of/Having long had* a calendar based on the moon's cycles, the Egyptians then realized that Sirius, the 'Dog Star', rose next to the sun every 365 days. (6) *As a result,/All the same*, in 4236 BC they devised a 365-day calendar.

Early clocks

(7) *As soon as/Unless* people found a need to know the time of day, great civilizations in the Middle East and North Africa began making clocks. It seems that the Sumerian culture was the first to do so, (8) *although/in spite of* it died out before it could pass on its knowledge.

(9) *Because of/So that* the many obelisks found near the Nile, archaeologists believe the Egyptians were the next to develop rudimentary clocks. The obelisks formed a kind of sun-dial – but only (10) *as long as/so that* the sun shone! (11) *Consequently/Even though* the Egyptians invented water clocks (12) *so as not to/in order to* be dependent on the sun's rays.

The Greeks invented a 'night clock' around 325 BC. This was a bowl-shaped container that slowly filled up with water coming in at a constant rate. Markings on the inside of the bowl determined the hours so that (13) *because of/no matter how* dark it was, they could 'feel' the time with their fingers.



2 Using contrast linkers

! Some contrast linkers join two contrasting ideas in the same sentence, whereas others introduce the second idea in a separate sentence.

*I only got about four hours' sleep last night, **even though** I went to bed early.*

*I went to bed early last night. **All the same**, I only got about four hours' sleep.*

Linking in one sentence

Although
Despite
Even though
Much as
Whereas

Linking over two sentences

All the same,
Even so,
However,
Nevertheless,
On the other hand,

Rewrite the sentences using the linking words in brackets.

- 1 Despite not being very well off, he gives generously to charities. (*even so*)

He's not very well-off. Even so, he gives generously to charities.

- 2 I admire her, though I find her difficult to get on with. (*much as*)

- 3 He left school without any qualifications. However, he's now one of the richest people in the world. (*despite*)

- 4 I don't believe in miracles. Nevertheless, his recovery seems to defy medical explanation. (*although*)

- 5 My grandfather can describe in great detail events that took place fifty years ago, although he often can't remember what he had for breakfast. (*however*)

- 6 A foot of snow fell overnight, and yet the trains were still running. (*nevertheless*)

- 7 There were four key players missing from the team. They managed to draw the match, though. (*all the same*)

- 8 Although the painting will definitely increase in value, you might consider selling it now if you need the money. (*on the other hand*)

- 9 Kate was offered a place at university immediately. Martin, on the other hand, was rejected and is planning to go abroad. (*whereas*)

- 10 His watch cost a fortune but it's very inaccurate. (*even though*)

General revision

3 Correcting mistakes

Correct the mistakes in these sentences. (The unit in which the particular grammar point is covered is given in brackets.)

- 1 A Why did you tread on his toe?
B I didn't mean! (Unit 1)

- 2 A Your boots are all muddy!
B I've worked in the garden. (Unit 2)

- 3 She arrived lately for the meeting. (Unit 3)

- 4 I wish just you'd be quiet for a moment! (Unit 3)

- 5 Don't forget to phone mum, do you? (Unit 4)

- 6 Never I have eaten so much in one day! (Unit 5)

- 7 Only when he collapsed I realized he was seriously ill. (Unit 5)

- 8 He has been alleged that he had an affair. (Unit 6)

- 9 There is expected to be 300 people at the reception. (Unit 6)

- 10 Do you think we can travel to other planets by the end of the century? (Unit 7)

- 11 It's ten o'clock, so I think Jo will arrive in Hong Kong at the moment. (Unit 7)

- 12 If you'd be taller, you could reach the shelf. (Unit 8)

- 13 I wish you'll come with me to London. (Unit 8)

- 14 I'd rather you to do it yourself. (Unit 8)

- 15 I regretted to shout at him as he was really upset. (Unit 9)

- 16 I'm not used to write with my left hand. It's really difficult. (Unit 9)

- 17 I sincerely agree with you. (Unit 10)

- 18 What a greatly delicious meal! (Unit 10)

- 19 He passed his driving test which surprised me. (Unit 11)

- 20 Budapest that has a population of two million lies on the river Danube. (Unit 11)

- 21 Climbing the hill, the view was fantastic. (Unit 11)



Listening

4 Estate agents' euphemisms

- 1 **T 12.1** Listen to an estate agent describing the features of a house to a couple who are interested in buying it. Number the features in the order that they are described by the estate agent.

- ☐ Price
- ☒ Location
- ☐ Condition of house
- ☐ Kitchen
- ☐ Dining room
- ☐ Living room
- ☐ Front garden
- ☐ Back garden
- ☐ Parking



- 2 **T 12.1** Read the true defects of the house that the couple are interested in buying. Listen again and complete the euphemistic expressions that the estate agent uses to underplay each defect.

1 Churchill Road is in a busy, noisy area.
Churchill Road is in a lively, popular area of town.

2 The local shops are a 30-minute walk away.
... the local shops ...

3 There are only two buses a day into town.
... there's ...

4 The house needs extensive redecoration.
It's ...
A lick ...

5 The roof needs replacing.
... the roof ...

6 The kitchen units are old.
A little ...
... modernizing!

7 The kitchen is small.
... it's ... , ...

8 The dining room is dark.
It ... , ...

9 The back garden is overgrown.
... the garden is ...

10 The house is expensive.
Not ... , ...

Pronunciation

5 Sentence stress

- T 12.2** In the following conversations, underline the words where the main stress is in B's replies. Then listen, check, and repeat.

1 A It was a nice film, wasn't it?

B You didn't really like it, did you?
I thought it was awful.

2 A Thank you for the meal.

B You didn't really like it, did you?
You didn't eat much.

3 A What did you think of the film?

B I liked the scenery, but the acting was poor.

4 A Who did you tell about the party?

B I told Peter.

5 A I lost all my money playing cards.

B I told you!

6 A Who told Alice that I've been sacked?

B I told her.

7 A Just think! If you get this job, we'll be able to afford a new car!

B If I get the job.

8 A I've invited Robbie Williams round for a drink.

B Not the Robbie Williams!

9 A Did you pay the gas bill?

B I thought you'd paid it!

10 A Are you going to pay the bill, or shall I?

B It doesn't matter who pays it as long as one of us does.

11 A This is yours, and you must keep it for ever.

B I wouldn't give it to anyone.

12 A It was very kind of you to give Liam that antique vase.

B I didn't give it to him. He bought it from me.

Vocabulary

6 Pairs of synonyms

Complete the sentences with the correct adjectives.

ancient antique

- I inherited a beautiful _____ wardrobe from my grandmother.
- While we were in Guatemala we visited the ruins of an _____ Mayan city.

current up-to-date

- In the past he's always gone out with English girls but his _____ girlfriend is from the States.
- Please visit our website for the most _____ information on our products.

biased bigoted

- The book gives a very _____ account of the rebellion, failing to mention any incidents that show the rebels in a bad light.
- Nothing you say will make her change her opinions. I've never met such a _____ person!

impartial open-minded

- During the summing-up, the judge remained strictly _____, favouring neither the plaintiff nor the defendant.
- Mike's parents aren't very _____ about his bohemian lifestyle. They want him to find a secure job and settle down.

immaculate impeccable

- He's renowned for his generosity, good humour and _____ manners.
- At the Oscar ceremonies she looked _____ in her Versace outfit.

faulty flawed

- We need to rethink our business strategy. Our current marketing plan is clearly _____.
- The TV wouldn't come on as there was a _____ connection in the plug.

petty trivial

- The government has announced new measures to combat _____ crime such as vandalism and graffiti.
- Matters which appear _____ can turn out to have far-reaching consequences.

urgent vital

- The general sent an _____ message to headquarters requesting immediate reinforcements.
- In a democracy the media plays a _____ role in calling politicians to account.

7 Revision: word puzzle

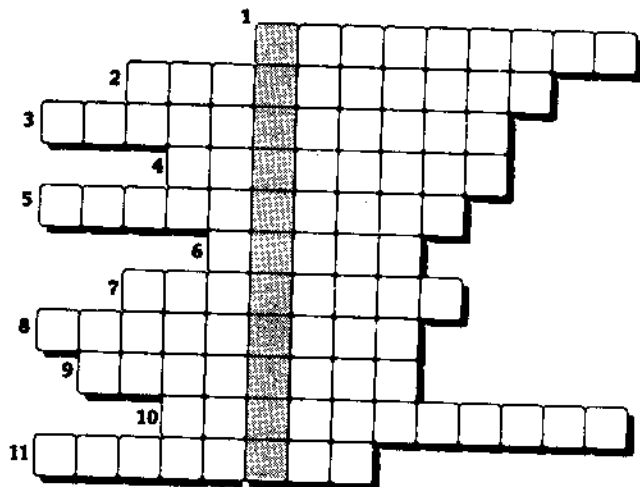
Use the clues to complete the puzzle. All the words are in the text, *A sideways look at time*, on p111 of the Student's Book.

Across

- the noun from modern (9)
- not consistently good and trustworthy (10)
- never-ending (11)
- existing only as an idea, without physical existence (8)
- not correct or exact (10)
- the opposite of rural (5)
- a chart showing the days and months of a year (8)
- facts or events, especially in nature (9)
- the ability to accept delay (8)
- the habit of being on time (11)
- using a lot of energy; too busy (8)

Down

- something you need to take to establish the size, length, or amount of something (11)



Phrasal verbs

8 Connections between literal and metaphorical meanings

Phrasal verbs can have both a literal and a non-literal meaning. Sometimes these can be quite closely related, and if you understand the literal meaning, you can picture the metaphorical meaning.

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box. Use each verb once with its literal meaning and once with a metaphorical meaning.

catch up with	cover up	fall back
pick up	pin down	see through
sort out	stand up for	

Literal meaning

- My CD collection was in a terrible mess, so one afternoon I _____ it _____ alphabetically.
- As he was getting up, he banged his head, and _____ onto the bed with a loud groan.
- She had walked ahead of the others, so she stood and waited for them to _____ her.
- The whole theatre audience _____ the Queen's arrival.
- Don't just drop the paper on the floor! _____ it _____ and put it in the bin!
- The house was going to be empty for a long time, so they _____ all the furniture with dustsheets.
- The police dog jumped on the escaping prisoner and _____ him _____ so he couldn't move.
- The train window was so filthy you couldn't _____ it.

Metaphorical meaning

- I didn't learn much Chinese while I was in China, but I _____ a few useful, everyday phrases.
- She was in terrible debt by the time she left university but was able to _____ on her parents for financial support.
- The plumber has been saying for weeks that he'll come and fix my washing machine, so yesterday I _____ him _____ to a definite date.



- Don't let the authorities daunt you. _____ your rights!
- You and I have a problem of communication, but I'm sure we can _____ it _____.
- President Nixon tried to _____ his involvement in the Watergate affair, but the truth came out in the end.
- She soon learnt to _____ his smooth exterior to the real person underneath.
- Michael missed a whole term of school due to illness but it didn't take him long to _____ his classmates.

Idioms

9 Idioms with the word *time*

1 Match an idiom in A with a definition in B.

A

- 1 ☐ for the time being
- 2 ☐ in the nick of time
- 3 ☐ to bide one's time
- 4 ☐ many a time
- 5 ☐ at the best of times
- 6 ☐ time will tell
- 7 ☐ behind the times
- 8 ☐ time to kill
- 9 ☐ about time too
- 10 ☐ live on borrowed time
- 11 ☐ for old time's sake
- 12 ☐ before somebody's time

B

- a it should have happened long ago
- b for the present time, until later
- c old-fashioned
- d to wait for a good opportunity
- e even when circumstances are most favourable
- f nothing to do
- g we'll know in the future
- h because of sentimental memories
- i before somebody was present in a particular environment
- j frequently
- k at the last possible moment
- l live or survive longer than expected

2 Choose the most appropriate idiom.

- 1 He's really *behind the times* / *biding his time*.
He refuses to use the computers at work.
- 2 A Do you know Paris well?
B Yes, very well. I've been there *many a time* / *behind the times*.
- 3 We arrived *at the best of times* / *in the nick of time*, just as the performance was starting.
- 4 A Joe has finally got round to mowing the lawn.
B *About time too!* / *In the nick of time!*
- 5 I'm just *biding my time* / *living on borrowed time*, but I am going to confront her about it soon.
- 6 A Do you remember Daniel King? He used to work in sales.
B No, he was *behind the times* / *before my time*.
- 7 A Do you think Andrew will change his ways?
B I don't know. *Time will tell* / *About time too*.
- 8 I met Ann for the first time in twenty years so we went for a drink *for old times' sake* / *at the best of times*.
- 9 We've got *time to kill* / *many a time* before the train's due. Shall we go for a coffee?
- 10 A Shall I put the car in the garage?
B No, leave it out *for the time being* / *on borrowed time*. I might need it later.

ENDQUOTES

... on time

Match a phrase in A with a phrase in B to make quotations about time and life.

A

- 1 ☐ Time is a great teacher,
- 2 ☐ They say that time changes things,
- 3 ☐ We should all be concerned about the future,
- 4 ☐ Life has to be lived forwards,
- 5 ☐ Time is a great healer,
- 6 ☐ If God had meant for today to be perfect,

B

- a but can only be understood backwards.
Kierkegaard (philosopher)
- b but a poor beautician. Lucille S Harper (author)
- c but you actually have to change them yourself.
Andy Warhol (artist)
- d He wouldn't have invented tomorrow. Unknown
- e because we will have to spend the rest of our lives there. Charles F Kettering (inventor)
- f but unfortunately it kills all its pupils.
Hector Berlioz (composer)

Tapescripts

Unit 1

T 1.1

I've been living in Britain for five years now and I work for a large company and there aren't many foreigners working here so I'm surrounded by er British people all day, er, most of my friends and almost all of my colleagues are British. And I think they accepted me from the word go, er, especially because I came here for the job, and I was considered good enough to be given this job and they accepted me as er somebody who does their job well, er, so integration was never really a problem. Er, what I found problematic in the beginning was er especially the paperwork, er, er, side of things, er, like opening a bank account or er renting a flat to live in. Erm, all the rules and regulations are set up to cater for people who have lived in Britain all their lives, who are British, and I simply cannot produce the documents they want or, er, don't have the history, er banking history for example. Erm, so these kind of things were always a problem, but er, nobody treated me differently because I was a foreigner, and I think in Britain where, especially in the South East, er people are used to er foreigners, to dealing with foreigners, erm and I don't think they er reacted differently to me, differently er to any British people. Erm, I have settled down now in Britain and I'm here for a, [pause] for the long term really. Erm, and I think I've, I've been accepted by friends, by colleagues, by the world around me, erm, and I think I, I enjoy living here, erm, I don't think I'm living here as a foreigner, although I am still faithful to my roots and I go back to visit my family er quite often, as often as I can, and I still don't consider myself British and I don't think I ever will, but I don't think that's the point.

I don't consider myself British because er I was er twenty-seven when I first moved here, so I had all that history behind me, all my upbringing behind me, the cultural background, er my school years, er, my friendships, er, my becoming an, an adult. These all happened er back home and not here in Britain, erm, when I talk to British people sometimes they forget that I'm, I'm not from around here and they make

references to TV series from the Seventies or to famous people who were only famous in Britain for a short while, and I have no idea who they are talking about, erm, it, and in Britain I noticed that er general knowledge includes quite a lot of er knowledge of, of, of these things, these celebrities, TV programmes, cultural things that I simply have no memory of because I grew up with a different cultural background. Erm, so these small things that make everyday life a bit more meaningful, these, these were all different for me, er, before five years ago. And although I'm catching up fast, I, I don't think I will ever become fully British.

T 1.2

I... was, I grew up in America, I lived there till I was in my early twenties, when I married and moved to Italy. Erm, I lived in Italy for twenty-two years and I've lived in Great Britain for the last twelve years. I... they're all very, very different. I must say that the difference probably between the British and the Italians is the greatest difference, erm, Italians are very verbal about their emotions, they, they have a, always have a friendly banter, sometimes friendly arguments, but there's never maliciousness. Erm, I find the, the British are quite reserved, in fact they're very reserved, but they're also quite repressed, and I think that because of this side of them they erm, they tend to have a lot of anger, and I think this comes out very much in the job society, in erm the brawls, in the football violence, and it's, I find it quite difficult because it's very hard to speak to erm a, a Brit and say exactly what you think, because they will very often react badly. I do think it's quite funny because the British society seems to be divided into little sections and you have very, very eccentric people who tend to, I think, rebel against this very, very, reserved side of the British er, personality.

In Italy erm, there's ver... there isn't a lot of violence, erm, and the people are very, very, very friendly, and they will argue about so many things, even the football match that happened yesterday, but it's always with a friendly attitude and, erm, I think that the Americans are probably somewhere in between the British and the Italians, because

the Americans are very individualistic and they do speak their mind and they do say what they think and they're quite belligerent about their opinions.

When I first arrived in, in Great Britain I found it very, very difficult to feel comfortable after having lived so many years in Italy. I found that because I am very outspoken, I say what I think that people's reaction was quite negative. And I've slowly learnt... slowly, as one does, learned to adapt to that by saying li... less, but I still by nature, after so many years of my life being spent in a country where it was regarded as erm something worth being, erm, one who spoke their mind, I find it really quite difficult to erm even, even now after having lived here for eleven or twelve years, very difficult to, to not say what I think. But I'm learning, but I, it's not what I would call the ideal situation and I do feel that, erm, probably one of these days I will go back to Italy because I do feel that I'm much happier there, because I feel freer, erm, freer to express myself, freer to be myself.

I think it's very difficult to adapt to a country which is as traditional as Great Britain is. Saying that, I mean, Britain has what I consider to be the best humour in the world. It's far better than American humour, it's far better than Italian humour and it's far better er well than any humour that I know. Italian humour is very slapstick, American humour can be quite vulgar, and British humour is just very, very caustic and very clever. But erm, you know, that's a small, that's a small minority of the general population.

Unit 2

T 2.1

One book that I've really enjoyed recently was, um, by Nick Hornby, um, and it's called *How to be good*. And it's about, um, a kind of typical, prosperous, upper-middle-class London family – the husband is a journalist and the wife is a doctor – and they have two nice, youngish children, um, and their life appears to be fine, but um, the husband, over the twenty years of his marriage, has become a very sort of bitter, cynical, unhappy man, um, and his wife kind

of wishes he was happier, she, she wishes that they were happier in their marriage. He, he never seems to have a good word to say about anybody, he's always very critical about everything, um, and she would like this to change, she would like them to be kind of happy – not carefree, necessarily – but just happier than they are. Um, and one day he, he, he suffers from a bad back and he goes off to see a, a kind of a faith healer – which is very very unlike him, I mean he would normally dismiss faith healers as complete nonsense – but he goes to see a faith healer, and the faith healer completely cures his bad back, in in an hour. Um, this thing that he's suffered from for years is is cured, um, and the faith healer also starts to have a kind of, an influence on his character, on his personality and he very quickly changes from being an extremely cynical, unhappy, but quite funny, man, um, to being an extremely caring, socially-aware, but very unfunny man. Um, and his wife obviously notices this change and he starts to introduce all these plans to the household to try to make the world a better place, he he becomes obsessed with making the world happier and making people happier, um and he does things like, he forces his children to play with the most unpopular children in their class, because he thinks that they ought to play with unpopular children, because it will make the world a happier place and he brings homeless people back home and gives them dinner and promises to give them dinner every Sunday, for example, and obviously, his family's reaction is, is, is, one more or less of horror, um ... and, you know, his children don't really like having to play with the most unpopular children in the class and his wife doesn't really like having homeless people coming for dinner every weekend, um, and she doesn't like this change that has come over her husband. She didn't like him before because he was too unhappy and cynical but she liked the fact that he had a sense of humour. Now he's lost his sense of humour and he's gained a sense of social responsibility. Um, and it's extremely cleverly written in that I certainly instantly recognized the type of family that this was and I recognized some of my own kind of personality traits in the traits of David, I'm ashamed to admit, that – this kind of natural cynicism, and and reaction of 'Deuch!', you know, not really not really caring about a lot of things that one should care about. Um, and it's, it is a very, very funny book, I mean Nick Hornby is, is, is best known, I suppose, as a comic writer, um, and it did make me laugh out loud, laugh out loud. Bits of it really were very funny indeed, but there's this kind of, uh, always this this undercurrent of a, a deeper philosophical message, which makes it quite a serious book at the same time. I think that's why I liked it.

Unit 3

T 3.2

Interviewer Right. Now, I'm with Anita Roddick in your majestic office in this fantastic building here. And what struck me as I came in was: it makes you smile. You know, these statues that you've got here.

Roddick It's a, a workplace that is human. The worst thing about any workplace is that it's never seen as a form of aesthetics – little boxes where people work, pale walls, a couple of dry plants. For me it's a geography of space that should absolutely spell out creativity. So creative messages, er the unexpected, uh for example, we have, we have, we've taken works of art like *Déjeuner sur l'herbe*, um which is a wonderful Impressionist piece of art, and we've made ... moulded it into 3D statues. So, here is an artist, two artists with their model, tot ... naked, having a, having a *déjeuner* a lunch in the, in our sort of er our campus site, so everybody who passes into the main building sees these naked bodies. And you know and it's just unexpected, and I think the unexpected is a form of creativity.

You go into the main building and there's quotes about women and there's statements on, on activism and er it's just ... and big, big blanket words like 'Love your body', uh, embellishing the walls. So, it is, it is, it's saying that, 'You're not coming into a normal company here.'

Interviewer As I drove up I saw that statue of *Le Déjeuner sur l'herbe* and it was so interesting I, I took a picture of it – I hope you didn't mind ...

Roddick No, not at all, I think –

Interviewer I'm sure everybody does. But then right next to it was a chap mowing the grass and I should have said to him, you know, 'What do you think of this statue?', but I didn't. But you know people like that, ordinary working people, I wonder how they would take to this aesthetics in the workplace.

Roddick I think they ... as, as you reacted to it, with a smile. It has to be about laughter, it has to be about cheekiness and parody and wit. You know, who says, there's no book ever written, there's no words by God or the gods or both, there's no, nothing in nature that says the workplace has to be a diminishment of the human spirit. You know, this is where people spend most of their life, er working life, er daily life, eight hours a day, it's where they develop their friendships, it's where they're many times more creative, where they're having their relationships embellished.

T 3.3

Roddick I think they ... as, as you reacted to it, with a smile. It has to be about laughter, it has to be about cheekiness and parody and wit. You know, who says, there's no book ever written, there's no words by God or the gods or both, there's no, nothing in nature that says the workplace has to be a diminishment of the human spirit. You know, this is where people spend most of their life, er working life, er daily life, eight hours a day, it's where they develop their friendships, it's where they're many times more creative, where they're having their relationships embellished.

Unit 4

T 4.3

The idea of being famous ... I have to say that for me the mind boggles when I have to think about what on earth could possess people to want to have that fate in life, to be famous, and it certainly makes me realize that it takes all sorts to make a world, because there are of course, there are hundreds of people out there, aren't there, who are just desperate to do anything to get on television and become famous TV personalities, and it's obviously something that draws an incredible number of people. And I suppose it must say a lot about different personality types because, I'm the kind of person, if I'm shopping, walking in the street, and I'm not even that keen when I bump into someone I know, because I do like to walk around and be, a little bit lost in my own world really, lost in my own thoughts, and it's a bit of a shock if somebody suddenly says hello, and I have to kind of suddenly engage in interaction in that way. So, I mean, the thought of walking down streets and complete strangers coming up to you and starting conversations is unbelievably horrific. I cannot imagine who could possibly get any satisfaction out of that idea. So that's obviously something I would really hate is the idea of being recognizable. And on top of that the prospect of media attention, oh, I mean that is something that I think that, even the most seasoned and experienced celebrity will admit that it's something they really, really get very, very tired of indeed. And you often see this in programmes where they're trying to show what it's like, people opening the doors and all those flashes, flash cameras going off in your face and journalists mobbing each other to try to get to you, and I'm sure that can actually be very, very frightening if you simply just can't get away from it.

So, what on earth is it that makes people want to be famous? I think that a lot of people who hanker after fame really don't care what they might be famous for – they just want to be famous. Fame is an end in itself. They want to be the centre of attention,

they crave adulation, they want to rub shoulders with pop stars and film stars. And that's the problem of so much fame and celebrity these days, that, with reality TV there's a lot of people who become famous for doing virtually nothing, and, it reminds me of a ... of course there's a famous quote by Andy Warhol, who, he said that in the future everyone would be famous for fifteen minutes, and I heard someone the other day say that with the advent of reality TV, unfortunately, it's turned out that Warhol's fifteen minutes has become more like thirty minutes.

But there's another kind of fame, I suppose. I mean it's the idea of being remembered for something. That must be a nice idea, if you could be remembered for doing something that's worthwhile. So, yeah, if you could be very wellknown for some significant achievement, then, that must be a very gratifying kind of fame, you were always famous as the person who found the cure for cancer, something like that, and I, I think those kinds of fame needn't necessarily go with immediate recognition, in the street for example.

And ... what kind of area ...? I think it must be very nice to be something like a successful and famous writer, of fiction, so that you'd feel like you'd created, you'd written some wonderful novels that people had really loved and had enriched their lives. And I'm sure there, there's a degree of fame that must be quite enjoyable, to go on to art shows on television and talk about your work and be interviewed and take part in discussions and to be a, just enough of a kind of a media celebrity. But I'm sure you could achieve that without being mobbed in the street and accosted by strangers, so, mmm, that's about the only way I could imagine it being a, an attractive prospect.

T 4.4

I have to say that for me the mind boggles when I have to think about what on earth could possess people to want to have that fate in life, to be famous, and it certainly makes me realise that it takes all sorts to make a world.

... I'm the kind of person, if I'm shopping, walking in the street, and I'm not even that keen when I bump into someone I know, because I do like to walk around and be, a little bit lost in my own world really, lost in my own thoughts, ...

I think that a lot of people who hanker after fame really don't care what they might be famous for – they just want to be famous. Fame is an end in itself. They want to be the centre of attention, they crave adulation, they want to rub shoulders with pop stars and film stars.

Unit 5

T 5.2

- J Well, it was nearly twenty five years ago now ...
- M It was twenty two.
- J Oh yes, twenty two. And I was on holiday in Provence. A walking holiday. I'm from Holland – it's so flat – so the mountains here, here in Provence were irresistible, especially Mont Ventoux just here. It has wonderful walking trails.
- M Yes, you see, I've lived in this village all my life. I was born here. Every day I've woken to the sight of the mountain rising up in front of the village. Every day it's the same, but a little bit different. It's so beautiful. The way the snowline ebbs and flows in the winter, or how the flowers cover the mountainside in spring. It's, it's entrancing.
- J So, I was on holiday with a friend of mine, Rémi, and we'd walked to the summit of Mont Ventoux. It's a long climb, nearly five hours. We could see a village below us, a beautiful medieval perched village cascading down the hillside. It took us hours to reach it ... and by the time we did we were exhausted and very thirsty. So, the first house we came to I knocked on the door to ask for a glass of water, and ...
- M Oh, I remember
- J ... and the most beautiful girl opened the door!
- M Oh, Jaap!
- J And I fell in love. On the spot. That was it! My friend returned to Holland on his own.
- M It's true! Poor Rémi.
- J But lucky me.
- M It was so unexpected. See, I am an artist, a potter, so my friends always believed I would marry a creative man, another artist or a poet. And in a way I have. You see Jaap was a physics teacher when I met him. But I have taught him how to work with the potter's wheel, to throw the clay, and work with the kiln. He learned so quickly and became an expert – perhaps his science background helped. Friends say my pottery improved the very day I met Jaap, and now we've worked together for over twenty years. He throws the pieces, and I hand paint them.
- J The studio where we work is attached to the house, and we have a small shop next to that. Whether we're working or not, we always have the view of Mont Ventoux to inspire us. We never grow bored of that, or each other.

Unit 6

T 6.1

Leonardo Diaz, who's from Colombia, had a lucky escape while climbing in the Andes last week. The novice climber got caught in a freak blizzard 4,000 metres up in the mountains. Diaz tried to call for help on his mobile phone but was unable to make a call as his pay-as-you-go credit had run out. 'I'd forgotten to buy some more minutes,' he said. Just when he had resigned himself to freezing to death, he received a call, from a salesperson at the phone company, wondering if he'd like to buy some more minutes. Diaz explained the situation and she alerted the emergency services. She and her colleagues then took turns to call Diaz to keep his spirits up until help arrived seven hours later.

A pilot received a royal welcome when he landed his glider on Saturday. The pilot was taking part in a gliding contest in the Scottish Highlands when he began to lose altitude. He decided to land his glider in 'a nice-looking field' near the River Dee – only to find himself surrounded by police officers. It transpired that the 'field' was in fact the cricket pitch at the royal palace at Balmoral, and that the whole incident had been watched with great interest by the Queen, who was taking tea at the time. Her Majesty was said to be relieved that no harm had come to the pilot.

The number of compensation claims made by Americans following 'accidents' has increased dramatically over the past few years. Now a newspaper has launched the 'Stella Awards', named after Stella Liebeck, who was awarded \$2.9 million compensation after spilling a cup of scalding McDonald's coffee on her lap. A contender for this year's award is Carl Truman, who won \$74,000 after his hand was run over by a neighbour's car. At the time he was trying to steal the hubcaps from the wheels. Another favourite is Amber Carson, who received \$113,000 from a Philadelphia restaurant after slipping on a spilt soft drink. The drink was only on the floor because Carson had thrown it over her boyfriend thirty seconds earlier.

Unit 7

T 7.1

- Mrs Bennet I'll make Lizzy see sense – you can be sure of that. I'll talk to her about it myself right away. She's a very silly, stubborn girl and doesn't know what's good for her. But I'll make sure she does know!
- Mr Collins Forgive me for interrupting, but if she really is silly and stubborn, I'm not sure that she'd be quite the right person for a man in my position – I naturally want a happy marriage. So, if she continues to

reject me, perhaps it would be better not to force her to accept me ... because if she does have such a problem with moodiness she couldn't really do much to make me happy.

Mrs Bennet Oh, no, don't get me wrong. Lizzy's only stubborn in this sort of situation. In every other way she's as sweet as any girl I know. I'll go and see my husband at once, and I'm sure we'll sort it out with her in no time at all.

Mrs Bennet George, I need to talk to you right away. We're all going frantic! You must come and make Lizzy marry William Collins. Because she swears she won't have him and if you're not quick about it, he'll change his mind and he won't have her!

Mr Bennet I'm afraid I really don't follow you. What are you talking about?

Mrs Bennet Lizzy and William Collins. She says she won't marry William Collins and William is now beginning to think he doesn't want to marry her!

Mr Bennet And what am I supposed to do about it? It seems to be a hopeless situation.

Mrs Bennet Speak to Lizzy about it yourself. Tell her that you insist that she marries him.

Mr Bennet Ask her to come here. I'll tell her what I think.

Mr Bennet Come here, love. I wanted to talk to you about an important matter. I understand that Mr Collins has asked you to marry him. Is that true?

Lizzy It is.

Mr Bennet Right. And you've said no.

Lizzy I have.

Mr Bennet Right. Now we come to the difficult bit. Your mother insists that you accept his offer. Isn't that right, Catherine?

Mrs Bennet Yes, or I'll never speak to her again.

Mr Bennet You've now got a very difficult choice to make, Elizabeth. From now on you'll have to break off your relationship with one of your parents. Your mother won't speak to you again if you don't marry William Collins, and I won't speak to you again if you do.

Unit 7

5 Original passage from *Pride and Prejudice*

'Depend on it, Mr Collins,' she said, 'that Lizzy shall be brought to reason. I will speak to her about it myself directly. She is a very headstrong foolish girl, and does not know her own interest; but I will make her know it.'

'Pardon me for interrupting you, Madam,' cried Mr Collins; 'but if she really is headstrong and foolish, I know not whether she would altogether be a very desirable wife to a man in my situation, who naturally looks for happiness in the marriage state. If therefore she actually persists in rejecting my suit, perhaps it were better not to force her into accepting me, because if liable to such defects of temper, she could not contribute much to my felicity.'

'Sir, you quite misunderstand me,' said Mrs Bennet, alarmed. 'Lizzy is only headstrong in such matters as these. In every thing else she is as good natured a girl as ever lived. I will go directly to Mr Bennet and we shall very soon settle it with her, I am sure.'

She would not give him time to reply, but hurrying instantly to her husband, called out as she entered the library.

'Oh! Mr Bennet, you are wanted immediately; we are all in an uproar. You must come and make Lizzy marry Mr Collins, for she vows she will not have him, and if you do not make haste he will change his mind and not have her.'

Mr Bennet raised his eyes from his book as she entered, and fixed them on her face with a calm unconcern which was not in the least altered by her communication.

'I have not the pleasure of understanding you,' said he, when she had finished her speech. 'Of what are you talking?'

'Of Mr Collins and Lizzy. Lizzy declares she will not have Mr Collins, and Mr Collins begins to say that he will not have Lizzy.'

'And what am I to do on the occasion? It seems an hopeless business.'

'Speak to Lizzy about it yourself. Tell her that you insist upon her marrying him.' 'Let her be called down. She shall hear my opinion.'

Mrs Bennet rang the bell and Miss Elizabeth was summoned to the library.

'Come here, child,' cried her father as she appeared. 'I have sent for you on an affair of importance. I understand that Mr Collins has made you an offer of marriage. Is it true?' Elizabeth replied that it was. 'Very well. And this offer of marriage you have refused?'

'I have, Sir.'

'Very well. We now come to the point. Your mother insists upon your accepting it. Is not it so, Mrs Bennet?'

'Yes, or I will never see her again.'

'An unhappy alternative is now before you, Elizabeth. From this day you must be a stranger to one of your parents. Your mother will never see you again if you do not marry Mr Collins, and I will never see you again if you do.'

Elizabeth could not but smile at such a conclusion of such a beginning; but Mrs Bennet, who had persuaded herself that her husband regarded the affair as she wished, was excessively disappointed.

Unit 8

T 8.1

I live in a house which is packed with paintings and drawings, and erm, even when I've been quite short of money, if I, or Julia, partner, if we see a picture that immediately resonates with us, erm, that actually seems significant to us, or that we're strongly attracted to, we almost always buy it. Erm ... there's a painter that we have lots of works by, called Walter Fusi, erm, I think we've known him for about 10 years, and we have about ten paintings by him, which is erm, I think that works out at one a year. And the last one we bought, erm, which we in fact got last year, is ... well, it's an extremely powerful

work. Erm, it's incredibly simple, essentially it's more or less, they're simply like, they're circles, but they're like they're imperfect circles, they're possibly, erm, almost oval. These two shapes, one of which is orange, and the other, which is beneath it, is black, and it's actually made of erm, a glittering black sand, which is stuck to the, stuck to the paper, and these two circles are against an incredibly strong, deep red background, and the paint of this background is applied so thickly, it's almost like lava or something, from a volcano. And then at the base of the painting, there's a horizontal strip, which

again is, erm, is red, it's a, it's a lighter red, and that essentially is all there is to the painting. Erm, now it's very difficult in terms of an abstract painting to say why it's so attractive to you. But there's something very, very strong and meditative about these paintings, and also something which is robust and strong and vigorous, and, I don't know, I think maybe it's the shapes he uses, are very elemental, and ... there's something very, very deep within you that, that responds to these shapes. Now, he's an abstract painter, but there's a very, very strong sense of structure in the composition, and, I mean, as an artist,

he's now 78, but he has over 50 years' experience behind him, and I think in the simplest lines and shapes that he produces, you can see that there's all this experience and discipline, and self-discipline behind them.

There's another little painting we have, on the staircase, which was a great find. It's an engraving, it's by a German artist, who I actually saw, years after we bought this little engraving from a second-hand bookshop in Trieste. Erm ... he was featured in an exhibition of German Romantic paintings, erm, in the Hayward Gallery in London, and this is simply, it's a self-portrait, which was done in his later life. It's an engraving, erm, he's a little bald-headed man, with a little beard, and there's a deeply intimate sense to this self-portrait, and ... I don't know, it ... in my mind I associate it with Julia's father, and possibly even with my own father actually. Erm, it, it's a picture that makes you think of mortality, but also of, I don't know, in a sense the value and the precariousness of life, because it's quite clear that this was a self-portrait made by the artist in his, erm, in his later years.

Unit 9

T 9.1

Simone

I suppose Henry the Eighth is most famous for the fact that he had six wives. I know some of their names, I actually know all of their names, but I'm not sure I know them in the correct order. But as far as I can remember, his first wife was Catherine of Aragon, the second one was Anne Boleyn, third one was Jane Seymour, she was the one that he actually loved the most, fourth one was Anne of Cleves, fifth was Catherine Howard and sixth was Catherine Parr. So, he obviously liked the name Catherine a lot, because he married three Cathelines and he married two Annes as well, which is quite extraordinary really.

And in terms of what happened to his wives, I remember learning at school a little rhyme to help, help you remember the fate of his wives in the correct order, and it goes like this: divorced, beheaded, died, divorced, beheaded, survived. So I've always found that quite useful.

Mmm ... I guess he was known for having a very extravagant lifestyle, he liked to entertain, to wine and dine his guests, and his kitchens were some of the most impressive in the western world at that time, and you can still visit those kitchens today at Hampton Court Palace.

He's also famous for the fact that he was responsible for breaking away from the Catholic church in Rome, and also I guess one could say he was, he was a great builder, in the sense that he built Oxford and Cambridge colleges, and he also built

quite a few palaces, and in cont ... on the other hand he was also a great building destroyer, he was responsible for what was called the dissolution of the monasteries, and, er, he actually burned and destroyed the vast majority of monastic buildings in this country. So, yes, he's famous for quite a few things and his legacy certainly lives on today.

T 9.2

Richard

Mmm ... history's not my strong point, I have to say, but Henry the Eighth was such an outrageously colourful character, so I think I know the basic facts about him. Erm ... he came to the throne in ... erm, must have been about 1550 I reckon. And he certainly lived it up ... he liked his food and drink, that's for sure, which is why he was so fat. But of course, the thing he's most renowned for is having had so many wives ... six of them altogether, famously. And there's erm ... one thing I do recall from my dim and distant schooldays, is a little sort of poem that my teacher said would always come in handy if we needed to remember the sequence of their respective fates. Er ... it goes ... er ... let me see ... beheaded, divorced, died ... beheaded, divorced, survived. Mmm.

I can't do many of their names. Anne Boleyn was the most famous one and I'm pretty sure she was the first ... yes, yes, I, I'd put money on that. And the name Jane Seymour springs to mind, but I'm not sure where she fits in. I presume that none of his marriages lasted very long ... can't have really if he had six. The reason he got through so many wives was that he desperately wanted an heir, a male son, to take his place as king. I think he had two children in the end, and one of them was a boy, but he was always ill. The real point about all these divorces was ... it was Henry's need to do this that led to England splitting with the Catholic church in Rome, which had a pretty dramatic effect on our history really. And after that, there was something about the, the dissolution of the monasteries, which is a very nice way of saying that he looted them and then set fire to them. I know that because when you travel around England, you come across a lot of ruins of monasteries.

T 9.3

A Waiter! What's this in my bowl?

B It's bean soup, madam.

A I don't care what it's been. I want to know what it is now.

T 9.4

A Waiter!

B Yes?

A Wine to table three.

B 'Oh, you people at table three, I wish you'd hurry up and decide what to order...'

T 9.5

A panda goes into a restaurant and orders a burger and chips. When he's finished, he gets out a gun and starts shooting holes in the ceiling and walls. Then he gets up and calmly walks out. The waiter rushes out after him and shouts, 'What the hell do you think you were doing? You could have killed someone!' The panda replies, 'Sorry, but I couldn't help it. Pandas always do that.'

'What do you mean, "Pandas always do that"?''

The panda takes out a dictionary and opens it to the entry for panda. 'Look,' he says, reading from the dictionary, 'Panda. Large black and white bear. Eats shoots and leaves.'

Unit 10

T 10.1

There's one sport that leaves me completely cold, and that's golf. So straight away I apologize to golf fans and I'm sure they will understand and sympathize with my lack of insight into their sport. But it's the fact that this has become a TV sport, which I just cannot believe, because there are no really fast movements in it. It's not as if you're, you're watching people (sort of) rush around in some fluid way, which, which usually generates some kind of excitement in sport. No, this is people walking, walking around fairly slowly and then stopping and waiting, and we watch them waiting and agonizing and deliberating, because of course it's, 'what what club am I going to use?' And meanwhile for the TV action the camera zooms in on the, the golf hole in the distance and ... there is this great sense of expectancy which is building up meanwhile, which would be fine if something exciting really was going to happen. But the reward we get for all this, this waiting and agonizing is ... finally ... 'schoomp!' That's it, there's a quick shot, we, we hear the noise, but then the camera tries to find the ball in the air and ... this is the bit I always find completely farcical, because you can see the cameraman desperately trying to locate where the ball's gone, and they can't, the camera can't follow the ball, so usually it's not until the ball lands somewhere that finally the camera homes in on it. Erm, and then the spectators, and again, this is what I can't fathom, is why on earth people would go ... and sometimes they stand in the rain to go and watch this. But they all applaud when the shot's been taken. Erm why? Well presumably yes, the ball has gone in the direction of the hole - great - it hasn't landed in any sand or water - fantastic - so, this is a great cause for celebration. And so what next? Another long walk before they stop and the whole process is repeated. So, erm, I can't see the point of, of watching it. The only bit I can see where there's a little bit of tension is when

they finally get on the green and they're trying to put the ball to get it into the hole, and often, yep, there's a little bit of, of uncertainty there ... is it going to go in the hole or not? But no, not a lot, so on, on the whole I just find it, it really is mind-numbingly boring.

I could contrast that with another sport that I can see that some people would say, you know, 'oh, how on earth can you watch that?', which is snooker. And I used to certainly feel the same. I, I would start watching snooker on TV and switch off pretty quickly, but, I can't remember why, I once erm got involved in watching it over a period of time, and of course you begin to realize a little bit more about what's going on. And the more I watched it, I actually began to appreciate what incredible skill is, is at stake there, and of course, that is true in all sports at the, certainly at the top level, but snooker has this amazing combination of, of the physical agility, the, erm the sensitive touch it needs to hit those balls so that they spin and bounce off the other balls at precisely the right angle. And it's almost like, it seems like Newtonian physics really, they way they erm have to plan the trajectory of the balls. But er, I remember what finally dawned on me that amazed me about these top players is that, when I remember having a go at a snooker table, the whole issue was 'can I get that ball in that pocket?', and that seems quite a tall order sometimes. But of course, these players, erm, they're, they're not really concentrating so much on that, but the next shot, and that is amazing the way they are always looking at the table, looking at the pattern of the balls and they're thinking about where the next ball is going to go, what the next shot after that is going to be. Erm, and I think there's, I think the mental erm concentration and calculation involved in it seems to me something a... akin to chess, so I think that's a, it's, I really admire er snooker players. I think they must have tremendous skills, both physical and mental.

Unit 11

T 11.1

Interviewer Simon, if you could tell me how you came to be a foreign correspondent and a travel writer in the first place.

Winchester Well, I became a journalist in a rather peculiar way. I was um I read geology at Oxford and got a fairly bad degree and not therefore being able to go into academics I went into commerce and found myself in Uganda, in western Uganda, looking for copper, ostensibly, finding no copper, at all, but being fascinated by one particular thing which was mountain climbing. I was on a range of mountains and there's a lot of interesting mountain landscape in central Africa. So I used to, I lived in a tent, essentially, in the

foothills of these mountains, and would get from the British Council library in a place called Fort Portal any books I could about mountain climbing. And one day after I'd been there for maybe six months I got a book called *Coronation Everest* by a man called James Morris which was about his account of being *The Times* correspondent on the successful Mount Everest expedition of 1953. And it was particularly his story, not just of climbing the mountain, but of getting the news of it having been climbed back to London to appear in *The Times* on the morning of the Queen's coronation on 2 June 1953. And it struck me that not only was this a story of great heroism, but it was also a story of amazing journalistic triumph, beating all his rivals and getting the news exclusively for his paper. So I wrote to him. I mean I knew nothing about journalism, but I said, 'Dear Mr Morris ...' care of his publishers Faber and Faber in London, 'I'm a 21-year-old geologist living in East Africa. Can I be you, essentially?' And oddly enough we found we were moving house in America a few months ago, and found in a biscuit tin his reply which was so unbelievably solicitous and kind, in which he said, 'It really is the best job in the world. You'll never make yourself very rich, but you'll have the most wonderfully interesting and fulfilling life. So if you really want to do it, my advice to you is to give up geology on the day you receive this letter, come back to Britain and get a job on a local newspaper.' So I did it. I handed in my resignation in Africa that day and I thought, 'What the heck? Why not?' Got to Entebbe, took the BOAC flight - it was that long ago - back to London, couldn't get a job on a newspaper immediately. I mean, who would want a 21-year-old geologist, if you're a news editor? But eventually I spent some time working on an oil rig in the North Sea as a geologist but eventually a newspaper in Newcastle upon Tyne took me on, and to cut a very long story short, James and I corresponded for years, he, by this time I knew he was a well-known writer, with books on in those days Venice and Spain and Oxford and things, and um but we never met, until one day in 1974 when we met in Wales. I was then the *Guardian's* correspondent in um Washington, and I came back to go climbing in Wales and the woman I was climbing with said, 'You've got to meet your hero, your mentor, James Morris.' And he had changed into a woman. He had become Jan Morris. And um which was something of a surprise. But we've remained the very best of friends. We've written a book together, and um I will talk to Jan on this visit to Britain, I always do, and we stay with each other, but it is rather strange when your guru turns into your gurness.

Unit 12

T 12.1

Estate agent Mr and Mrs Brown?
Mrs Brown That's right.
Estate agent Gary Connelly from Sellit and Runn. How do you do?
Mr & Mrs Brown Hello.
Estate agent I understand you're interested in number 21 Churchill Road.
Mr Brown Yes, that's right.
Estate agent Here are the details of the property. ... Churchill Road is in a lively, popular area of town.
Mrs Brown Are there any shops nearby?
Estate agent Yes, the local shops are within walking distance. And I believe there's a regular bus service into the city centre.
Mrs Brown Uh, huh.
Mr Brown Is there a drive or garage?
Estate agent Well, the house benefits from ample parking space, erm, directly in front of the house.
Mrs Brown Oh, so, no front garden?
Estate agent Heh, heh, not as such, no.
Mrs Brown What decorative condition is the house in?
Estate agent It's ideal for the DIY enthusiast. A lick of paint certainly wouldn't go amiss.
Mr Brown Is there any building work that needs doing?
Estate agent No. I think just the roof is in need of some attention. Here's a photo of the living room. ... As you can see, it's been tastefully modernized. It was the previous owner I believe who got rid of the draughty old fireplace. And here's the kitchen. ... Full of character, as you can see.
Mrs Brown The units look really old.
Estate agent A little on the old side perhaps. Ideal for modernizing!
Mr Brown And it's rather small.
Estate agent Well, yes, it's not exactly enormous, but then I like to have everything within easy reach if I'm standing at the cooker or the sink, don't you?
Mrs Brown [doubtfully] Mmm. And is this the dining room?
Estate agent Yes. It's a bit on the small side, but very cosy.
Mr Brown I don't think you could get a very large dining table in there.
Mrs Brown And is it dark?
Estate agent It isn't the brightest room in the house, certainly, but there's a nice view from the window, looking out over the rear garden. ... I think we have a photo of the garden. ... Yes, here. As you can see, the garden is very mature and well-established.
Mrs Brown Those roses need pruning.
Mr Brown How much did you say the house was on for?
Estate agent £250,000. Not exactly cheap, I grant you, but in view of the popularity of the area, a very reasonable price, I'm sure you'll agree.

Workbook Key

UNIT 1

- 1 2 have 3 will 4 did 5 didn't 6 did
7 wouldn't / didn't 8 had 9 must have /
might have / did 10 did 11 was 12 are
13 could 14 will 15 would 16 had
17 have 18 Would / Will
- 2 2 persuaded ... to 3 offered to / did offer to
4 hope to 5 used to be 6 expected ... to be
7 forgot to 8 weren't able to
- 3 2 companions 3 allies 4 adores 5 had a
crush on 6 fancy 7 gossip 8 chatting
9 have a word with 10 loathe 11 abhorred
12 despises 13 sniggering 14 giggled
15 chuckled
- 4 1 The aspects which he found problematic
are 2 and 4.
2 1 e 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 b
3 1 T
2 F (She married and then moved to Italy.)
3 T
4 F (She says she has learned to adapt and
not always say what she's thinking, but
she still finds it very difficult and feels
she'd be happier in Italy.)
- 4 1 brawls B
belligerent A
caustic humour B
banter I
repressed B
slapstick humour I
speak their mind A
verbal about their emotions I
vulgar humour A
yob society B
- 5 1 belligerent 2 vulgar 3 banter
4 caustic 5 brawls 6 slapstick
7 speak their mind 8 yob 9 repressed
- 5 2 1 interesting 2 difference 3 library
4 everything 5 Perhaps 6 vegetables
7 literacy 8 secretary 9 occasionally
10 general
- 3 A Perhaps
B difference, library, medicine, general
C literature, comfortable, vegetables,
interesting, everything, literacy, secretary
D occasionally
- 4 In British English a syllable is normally lost
in: *interesting, difference, everything,*
vegetables, secretary, occasionally, and
general.
- 6 1 immigration 2 borders 3 headlines
4 deterrence 5 the displaced
6 immigration policies 7 policing
8 asylum procedure 9 border personnel
10 imprisonment

- 2 1 economic migrants 2 asylum seekers
3 the dispossessed 4 human smugglers
5 refugees
- 3 1 mix 2 stability 3 identity 4 support
5 fervour 6 endorsement 7 headache
8 policies 9 measures 10 statement
11 elections 12 diplomacy
- 7 2 to 3 against 4 to 5 to 6 on 7 to
8 as 9 at 10 on / about 11 in 12 at
13 against 14 on 15 with
- 8 2 quarter past three 3 at the weekend
4 from Monday to Thursday (inclusive) /
from Monday until Thursday / between
Monday and Thursday 5 write to me
6 different from / to 7 in the team
8 start again 9 named after 10 take away
11 garden at the back 12 in / for a travel
agency 13 Go straight on

UNIT 2

- 1 1 was talking 2 was known 3 have / should
have 4 would be 5 thought 6 had
7 had ... completed 8 wrote 9 is writing
10 'll hang on 11 had ... read / had ... been
reading 12 hides / hid / had hidden
13 describes / had described 14 read / was
reading 15 had written
- 2 1 Harry came into the room and sat down,
exhausted. He had had a terrible day at the
office and had only just arrived home. Mary
was / would be coming round later and she
would almost certainly want to go out.
Harry wasn't sure he could face that. At least
he had his holiday to look forward to. By this
time next week he'd be sitting on a sun-
drenched beach sipping cocktails ...
- 2 John expected to get a decent rise because
he had been working / had worked at the
publishing company for many years. He knew
he sold more books every year than any of his
fellow sales representatives. He'd been selling
books all his life and knew exactly what
approach to adopt with every bookshop he
visited.
- 3 1 were discovered 2 were found 3 made
4 was examining 5 have been 6 had been
ripped out 7 had been stolen 8 would /
could stop by 9 had acquired 10 would
co-operate 11 fled 12 flew 13 was found
14 is now serving 15 stole / had stolen
16 have still not been recovered / still haven't
been recovered 17 will not say / won't say /
hasn't said 18 have had 19 have been
improving / have improved 20 be shown

4 1 2

- 2 caring A, critical B, cynical B,
funny B, obsessed A, socially aware A,
unfunny A, unhappy B
- 3 1 quite young youngish
2 happy in some way kind of happy
3 he would reject them as totally stupid
he would normally dismiss faith healers
as complete nonsense
4 he feels guilty about it I'm ashamed
to admit
5 it lies beneath the surface
this undercurrent of a deeper
philosophical message
- 5 1 1 The weather conditions bring tears to
my eyes.
2 And try not to notice I've fallen in love.
3 That says something different. And when
was it wrong
4 The head does its best, but the heart is
the boss
- 2 1 She's crying because she's happy.
2 They are her thoughts.
3 That her heart rules her head. In other
words, she prefers to follow her feelings
rather than dwell on any doubts that she
has when she tries to analyse the
situation rationally.
- 3 Four
- 5
On Waterloo bridge, where we said our
goodbyes
The weather conditions bring tears to my eyes.
I wipe them away with a black woolly glove
And try not to notice I've fallen in love.
On Waterloo bridge I am trying to think:
This is nothing. You're high on the charm and the
drink.
But the juke-box inside me is playing a song
That says something different. And when was it
wrong?
- On Waterloo bridge with the wind in my hair
I am tempted to skip. You're a fool. I don't care.
The head does its best, but the heart is the boss –
I admit it before I'm halfway across.
- 6 1 witty, patronizing 2 bewildered, distracted
3 haughty, overbearing 4 courteous,
considerate 5 supportive, considerate
6 snobbish, prejudiced 7 timid, reserved

- 7 1 Positive Negative
assertive aggressive
shrewd cunning
resolute stubborn
trusting naive
self-assured arrogant
charming smarmy
frank tactless
open-minded unprincipled
- 2 1 aggressive 2 unprincipled 3 frank
4 naive 5 shrewd 6 stubborn
7 arrogant 8 charming
- 8 2 tragically 3 separate 4 receiving
5 transferred 6 maintenance
7 disappeared 8 effect 9 principal
10 unnecessarily
- 9 1 1 bellow, growl, screech, snap
2 sigh, whine, yelp
3 mutter, whisper
4 stammer
- 2 1 whined 2 sighed 3 bellowed
4 screeched 5 growled 6 whispered
7 stammered 8 muttered 9 yelped
10 snapped
- 10 2 1 ✓
2 Burglars broke into the house while they were on holiday.
3 The bus drew up at the traffic lights.
4 ✓
5 He got caught in the rain and came down with a cold.
6 He's not very nice to his teachers. He's always sending them up.
7 ✓
8 I've got so much work. I'm really getting behind with it.
9 She really takes after her father.
10 ✓
11 I was taken in by his apparent honesty.

UNIT 3

- 1 1 1c 2a 3b 4e 5d 6g 7h 8i 9j 10f
- 2 2 distinctly remember
3 virtually impossible
4 sincerely hope
5 eagerly await
6 sorely tempted
7 bitterly disappointed
8 accurately predict
9 perfectly clear
10 highly unlikely
- 3 2 supremely 3 virtually 4 perfectly
5 wildly 6 sorely 7 deliberately
8 infinitely
- 2 1 hard 2 Surely 3 lately 4 most 5 hardly
6 right 7 late 8 directly 9 easily 10 easy
11 rightly 12 Sure, sure.
- 3 1 2 Just leave me alone, will you!
3 What's that noise? Oh, it's OK. It's just the cat.
4 That picture looks just right on that wall.
5 It's just starting to rain. Have you got an umbrella?
- 6 It's just as quick to cycle in London as it is to drive.
7 We've got just enough time to get to the airport.
We've just got enough time to get to the airport.
8 I've just seen a terrible accident.
9 He wasn't badly hurt. It was just a small cut.
10 I'm just going to the shops. Is there anything you want?
11 Just stop talking and eat up!
Stop talking and just eat up!
12 It's just as easy to wash this jumper by hand.
- 2 2 emphasis 3 only 4 exactly
5 right now 6 equally 7 exactly
8 a short time before 9 only
10 right now 11 emphasis 12 equally
- 4 1 3
2 1 F Her office is described as majestic.
2 F There are statues representing this painting in the grounds outside.
3 T
4 T
5 F He says that he should have asked this question, but he didn't.
6 T
- 3 1 spell out 2 blanket words 3 drove up
4 cheekiness 5 parody 6 wit
7 a diminishment 8 embellished
- 4 In order to emphasize a point.
Roddick I think they – as, as you reacted to it, with a smile. It has to be about laughter, it has to be about cheekiness and parody and wit. You know, who says, there's no book ever written, there's no words by God or the gods or both, there's no, nothing in nature that says the workplace has to be a diminishment of the human spirit. You know, this is where people spend most of their life, uh working life, er daily life, eight hours a day, it's where they develop their friendships, it's where they're many times more creative, where they're having their relationships embellished.
- 5 1 When the homograph is a verb, the final syllable is given the full vowel value. When it's a noun or adjective, the final syllable is a schwa /ə/. The stress is the same for both forms.
- 1 estimate: noun /'estimat/; verb /'estimeit/
2 delegates: noun /'deligats/; verb /'deligeits/
3 separate: adjective /'separat/;
verb /'separeit/
4 moderate: verb /'modereit/;
adjective /'modorat/
5 elaborate: verb /'laebareit/;
adjective /'laeborat/
6 compliments: verb /'kompliments/;
noun /'kompliments/
7 documents: noun /'dokjuments/;
verb /'dokjuments/
8 supplements: noun /'saplaments/;
verb /'saplaments/
- 2 1 approximate (adjective) /ə'prɒksɪmət/;
(verb) /ə'prɒksɪmeɪt/
2 articulate (verb) /ɑ:'tɪkjuleɪt/;
(adjective) /ɑ:'tɪkjulət/
3 deliberate (verb) /dɪ'lɪbəreɪt/;
(adjective) /dɪ'lɪbəɪt/
4 intimate (verb) /'ɪntɪmeɪt/;
(adjective) /'ɪntɪmət/
5 alternate (adjective) /ɔ:l'tɜ:nət/;
(verb) /'ɔ:l'təneɪt/
6 associate (noun) /ə'seʊsɪət/;
(verb) /ə'seʊsɪeɪt/
7 co-ordinates (noun) /keu'ɔ:dɪneɪts/;
(verb) /keu'ɔ:dɪneɪtɪs/
8 graduate (noun) /'grædjueɪt/;
(verb) /'grædjuet/
The stress patterns is different in 5.
- 6 1 b shoot up c peak d pick up
e fluctuate f level off
- 2 g remain stable h decrease gradually
i plummet j fall slightly k bottom out
- 3 1 steadily 2 shot up 3 peaked 4 levelling off
5 substantial 6 picked up 7 dropped
8 stable 9 downturn 10 increase
- 4 Sample answer:
The number of students attending dance courses fell slightly in January and then fluctuated in February and March. Numbers dropped dramatically in April, but bottomed out at the beginning of May and remained stable through May and June. They rose steadily in July, levelled off in August and September and then shot up in October. They peaked at the end of the month, remaining at a high level in November, before dropping sharply again in December.
- 7 2 j The film is based on a novel by Jane Austen.
3 a It may be old and rusty, but I'm very attached to my car.
4 h Bill is emotionally detached from his parents. He hardly ever speaks to them.
5 e McDonalds has become synonymous with fast food.
6 c The employees kept quiet about the false accounting in the company.
7 l You can't tell her anything. She's impervious to criticism.
8 b The working hours in my job are incompatible with family life.
9 k His disruptive behaviour at school is indicative of a deeper psychological problem.
10 f The company isn't liable for any damage caused to vehicles parked on the premises.
11 d The teacher is very concerned about my son's lack of progress.
12 i Marc is totally obsessed with football. He thinks of nothing else.
- 8 1 calculated risk
daylight robbery
flying visit
glass ceiling
level playing field
lost cause
red tape

tall order
teething problems
vested interest

- 2 1 daylight robbery 2 red tape
3 calculated risk 4 teething problems
5 glass ceiling 6 vested interest
7 tall order 8 level playing field
9 lost cause 10 flying visit

UNIT 4

- 1 1 1 apparently 2 Luckily 3 Hopefully
4 Incidentally 5 Actually 6 Presumably
7 Thankfully 8 Admittedly 9 quite
honestly 10 Naturally 11 basically
12 surely

- 2 1 Mind you, Admittedly, 2 After all,
3 As I was saying, Anyway, 4 come to
think of it, should I say, 5 However,
6 I mean, After all, 7 No doubt
8 All in all, though, Of course, 9 At least
10 by the way, 11 Come to think of it, As
a matter of fact, 12 Anyway,

- 2 2 wasn't 3 didn't 4 is 5 isn't 6 hasn't
7 has 8 Does 9 Was 10 do 11 won't
12 shall

- 3 1 1 R 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 R 6 F 7 R 8 R
9 R 10 F 11 F 12 R

- 2 2 ✓ - falling.
3 X - rising. Should be falling.
4 ✓ - falling.
5 ✓ - rising.
6 X - falling. Should be rising.
7 X - falling. Should be rising.
8 ✓ - rising.
9 ✓ - rising.
10 X - rising. Should be falling.
11 ✓ - rising.
12 X - rising. Should be falling.

- 4 1 1 2, 3 2 1, 4

- 2 2 e 3 a 4 h 5 c 6 b 7 d 8 g

- 3 1 the mind boggles 2 what on earth
3 it takes all sorts to make a world
4 bump into someone 5 lost in my own
thoughts 6 hanker after 7 an end in
itself 8 rub shoulders with

- 5 1 1 published 2 delve 3 photo opportunity
4 soap opera 5 contradictions 6 gossip
7 privileged 8 obsessed 9 reverent
10 loathe 11 idols 12 brutality

- 2 1 h 2 c 3 f 4 a 5 e 6 d 7 g 8 b

- 6 1 1 pale colour
2 successful attempt, modest / humble
person
3 rough sea, excitable / temperamental
person
4 gentle breeze, lenient punishment
5 excessive amount, extreme politics
6 close relation, vivid memory
7 hilly / mountainous countryside,
bumpy road
8 overcast sky, guilty conscience

- 2 1 rough 2 overcast 3 gentle 4 bumpy
5 hilly / mountainous 6 calm 7 distant
8 plain 9 vain 10 moderate

- 7 2 1 I have no faith in this government's
ability to solve the economic problems.
3 Their attempt to sail around the world
ended in failure.

- 4 Smoking is not permitted here.

- 5 She's always criticizing him.

- 6 Hopefully he'll get better soon.

- 7 Luckily, my son doesn't have to go to
school on Saturdays.

- 8 He was obviously rude to her on purpose.

- 8 2 feel up to 3 standing in for 4 face up to
5 put up with 6 has talked / talked ... out of
7 ended / 've ended up with 8 came in for
9 go in for 10 pull out of 11 keep up with
12 look up to

UNIT 5

- 1 3 1 It's him that should avoid antagonizing her.
4 What surprised me was his
uncompromising attitude.

- It was his uncompromising attitude that
surprised me.

- 5 What worries me is his heavy drinking.

- It's his heavy drinking that worries me.

- 6 What she felt dreadful about was leaving
her husband.

- It was leaving her husband that she felt
dreadful about.

- 7 What she did was divorce him.

- 8 What really annoys me is his bad manners.

- It's his bad manners that really annoy me.

- 9 It was last week that he proposed to her.

- 10 It was Sam and Jo that went to Hawaii
on their honeymoon.

- 2 2 Rarely does one find a person of such
integrity as Michael.

- 3 Nothing annoys me more than his surliness.

- 4 Little did he suspect that she was seeing
another man.

- 5 Never before have I been spoken to like that!

- 6 Not only was she rude, but she was also
mean.

- 7 No sooner had he ended the relationship
than he started another one.

- 8 Nowhere will you find a kinder man!

- 9 Not until she threatened to leave him did
he realize the error of his ways.

- 10 In no way could her reaction be described
as sympathetic.

- 3 1 However 2 whichever 3 Whenever
4 Whoever 5 whatever 6 Wherever

- 7 wherever 8 However 9 whoever

- 10 whatever

- 4 1 A Ben's very happy in his new job.

- B It's Sony he works for, isn't it?

- A No, he used to work for Sony. It's Hitachi
he works for now. He really likes it there.

- B What I'm interested in is why he left Sony!
It's why he left Sony that I'm interested in.

- I thought he really liked his job there.

- A What he liked was the pay / It was the pay
he liked, but the hours were very long.

- 2 C You don't love me any more!

- D I do love you, honestly.

- C No, you don't. What I really hate is the
way you just deny everything! It's the way
you just deny everything that I really hate.

- D But (the reason) why I do that is because
you make such outrageous accusations!

- 3 E Did you see the accident?

- F Yes. What happened was the black car
didn't stop at the lights.

- E Are you absolutely certain? I thought it
was the driver of the white car who was
to blame.

- F No, it was definitely the black car that
caused the accident. What surprised me
was that he didn't stop. The lights were
clearly red.

- 5 1 1 He was on a walking holiday.
2 The walking trails.
3 Every day it's the same, but a little
different.
4 On the spot (there and then).
5 Perhaps his science background helped.

- 2 a J b M c M d J e M

- 3 1 the mountains in Provence
2 the walking trails
3 the way the snowline advances and
recedes in the winter and the way the
flowers cover the mountainside in spring
4 Jaap and Rémi when they reached the
village
5 Rémi
6 the man Martine's friends thought she
would marry

- 6 1 4f 5d 6e 7i 8h 9g 10l
11j 12k 13n 14o 15m

- | 7 1 | Heading | Letter | Reply |
|-----|-------------------------------|--------|-------|
| 1 | fancy my friend | 3 | B |
| | Should I reveal he's a cheat? | 1 | C |
| | He never takes me out | 2 | A |

- 2 1 indignant 2 unattractive 3 infatuated
4 fond 5 committed 6 passionate
7 crushed 8 faithful

- 8 Across 2 love someone to bits 3 grief
4 get away with 5 tricky 6 fancy
7 unattached 8 reciprocate 9 flirt
10 overture 11 marriage counsellor
12 mates 13 pass the time of day
14 turn a blind eye 15 cheat on
16 make a move 17 affair
18 move on to pastures new

- Down 1 behind closed doors

- 9 2 fear 3 anxiety 4 astonishment
5 commitment 6 consideration 7 deceit /
deception 8 devotion 9 disloyalty
10 faith / faithfulness / fidelity 11 gratitude
12 indignation 13 infatuation 14 pride
15 romance / romanticism 16 suspicion

- 10 1 for 2 in 3 to 4 in 5 at 6 of 7 for 8 to
9 at 10 of

- 11 1 slammed 2 squeaking 3 roared
4 rumbling 5 creaked 6 scratching
7 rattled 8 buzzing

Metaphorical meaning

- 9 roar 10 buzzing 11 slammed
12 rattled 13 creaking 14 squeaked
15 rumbled 16 scratching

12 1

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Starting a relationship | Finishing a relationship |
| ask sb out | break sth off |
| chat sb up | get over sb / sth |
| fall for sb | go off sb |
| get off with sb | pack sb in |
| pick sb up | split up with sb |
| run after sb | walk out on sb |
- 2 2 walked out on 3 broken off
4 get over 5 chatting up 6 get off with
7 packed ... in 8 picking up
9 fallen for 10 gone off

Endquotes on love

- 1 d 2 f 3 h 4 a 5 b 6 g 7 e 8 c

UNIT 6

- 1 He is said to have suffered from recurring nightmares after working in Vietnam.
- 2 The new president is said to be a moderate.
- 3 He is known to have been / was known to be an active trade unionist when he was young.
- 4 The rain is expected to die out this afternoon.
- 5 The escaped prisoner is reported to be heading for Scotland.
- 6 She is supposed to have an income of over £100,000.
- 7 Three people are believed to have been killed in an avalanche.
- 8 They were presumed to be skiing / They are presumed to have been skiing in the area when the avalanche started.
- 9 The rival factions are thought to be heading for an agreement on the disputed territory.

2 Sample answers

A teenage girl has been hailed a hero after she jumped into a canal to save a child's life. Kate Mills, three, fell into the canal while strapped into her pushchair. The incident was seen by several passers-by from the tow-path, but it was the girl who leapt into the water and dragged the buggy to the surface. Kate and the girl were pulled from the water by a passing fireman and taken to hospital by ambulance. They were both discharged after a brief check-up. The girl, who left the hospital without revealing her name, has not yet been identified but she is believed by locals to be from outside the area.

A heroic cockatoo that was killed last month as it tried to defend its owner may not have died in vain. It's claimed that 'Bird', who was named after the basketball player Larry Bird, may provide vital evidence in a murder trial. When Bird's owner, Kevin Butler, was fatally attacked at his home in Texas, the cockatoo fought back. Bird managed to wound the two assailants before being stabbed to death with a fork. Now it's hoped that DNA scraped

from Bird's claws will help convict the suspected killers.

- 3 The outlook for tomorrow's weather appears to be good.
- 4 It appears (that) Tom has been expelled from his school.
- 5 It seems (that) she's enjoying life now that the trial is over.
- 6 The ousted dictator seemed to have left the country.
- 7 It seemed (that) the spokesman was avoiding the journalist's questions.
- 8 The gang would appear to have been arrested by the police.
- 9 Their marriage appears to have broken up.
- 10 It would appear (that) the athlete has failed the drugs test.

- 4 1 Mobile phone 2 lands 3 newspaper
- 2 1 g 2 b 3 e 4 d 5 a 6 h 7 f 8 c

3 Story 1

- 1 F He was a novice.
- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 F They called to see if he wanted to buy any more minutes, as his pay-as-you-go credit had run out.
- 5 F They phoned him to keep his spirits up.

Story 2

- 1 He was taking part in a gliding contest.
- 2 He was beginning to lose altitude.
- 3 Because he'd landed not in a field but on the cricket pitch at the royal palace at Balmoral.
- 4 She'd been very interested in the proceedings and was glad that the pilot was uninjured.

Story 3

Amount of compensation	Reason for compensation	Why was he / she partly to blame?
Stella Liebeck \$2.9 million	She was burnt by scalding coffee	She had spilt the coffee herself
Carl Truman \$74,000	His hand was run over by a neighbour's car	He was trying to steal the hubcaps from the wheels
Amber Carson \$113,000	She slipped on a spilt soft drink	She had thrown the drink over her boyfriend

- 5 2 Two elderly Americans have travelled to Scotland to meet the descendants of the fishermen who pulled them out of the Atlantic seventy years ago. Janet Lee Hutchinson, 77, and her sister, Kathryn, 78, were six and eight when their parents' plane came down off Greenland in 1932. In danger of freezing, and without any food at all, they would have died had it not been for the crew of the *Lord Talbot*, who negotiated ice floes to reach them. 'They gave us the chance to have the rest of our lives,' said Kathryn.

- 6 1 outcome 2 upkeep 3 spin-off
4 output 5 backlash 6 setback
7 check-up 8 drawback 9 downpour
10 breakthrough 11 upshot 12 shake-up

- 2 1 c 2 f 3 a 4 e 5 b 6 d

- 7 2 pain / pains 3 terms / term
4 experience / experiences 5 good / goods
6 lengths / length 7 ground / grounds
8 damage / damages
- 8 1 rip ... off 2 sold out 3 get together
4 crack down 5 write off 6 broke out
7 sell-out 8 crack-down 9 outbreak
10 get-together 11 rip-off 12 write-off

- 9 1 2 d ins and outs
3 a give and take
4 f wheeling and dealing
5 e touch and go
6 c part and parcel
7 j by and large
8 i as and when
9 h first and foremost
10 l far and wide
11 k loud and clear
12 g now and again
13 n hit and miss
14 p live and learn
15 r wait and see
16 m pick and choose
17 o rant and rave
18 q chop and change

- 2 1 touch and go 2 chopping and changing
3 By and large 4 live and learn
5 give and take 6 loud and clear
7 ranting and raving 8 as and when
9 part and parcel 10 first and foremost

UNIT 7

- 1 2 should get / should be getting
3 must have been
4 should have been
5 must have forgotten
6 can't have forgotten / won't have forgotten
7 'll have been / must have been
8 'll have / must have
9 'll be driving / must be driving
10 'll be / must be
- 2 1 must be / must have been
2 can't have got
3 must have been spending
4 'll be / must be
5 'll get / should get
- 2 2 have thought / think 3 not have forgotten
4 give 5 have planned / be planning
6 have been run over 7 have frightened
8 be hiding / have hidden 9 be able to 10 be
11 be feeding 12 be 13 be / have been
14 be having 15 be 16 have bought
- 3 1 do ... have to / do ... need to
needn't / don't need to
must / have to / need to
2 must
had to

- 3 must/have to, need to / must
4 mustn't
5 having to
6 to have to
7 'd have to
8 needn't / don't have to
9 have to / need to
10 needn't have
11 needn't have
12 don't have to / don't need to

- 4 1 b must 2 c must 3 a must
4 f should 5 d shouldn't 6 e should
7 i 'll 8 g will ... will 9 h 'll
10 i can't 11 j can't 12 k can
13 n might 14 m might 15 o might

- 2 1 I You can't be serious! 2 I might have guessed 3 You might well ask.
4 I must say, 5 you'll see.

- 2 6 it's a must. 7 I shouldn't wonder
8 you can say that again! 9 I must say,
10 You must be joking!

- 5 2 1 F He fears that if she's silly, stubborn
and moody, she won't make him happy.
2 T
3 F He doesn't want Lizzy to marry
Mr Collins.

- 3 2 line 4 3 line 14 4 line 21 5 line 27
6 line 36 7 line 42 8 line 46 9 line 61
10 line 62

- 4 1 I'll make Lizzy see sense – you can be
sure of that.
2 (She) doesn't know what's good for her
3 if she does have such a problem with
moodiness
4 we'll sort it out with her in no time at all
5 We're all going frantic
6 I'm afraid I really don't follow you
7 And what am I supposed to do about it?
8 I'll tell her what I think.
9 You've now got a very difficult choice to
make
10 you'll have to break off your relationship
with one of your parents

- 5 1 I don't know if
2 it would be better
3 What are you talking about?
4 Isn't that so / right?

- 6 2 a Where can he have got to?
b Where can he have got to?
3 a I could hardly walk home.
a I could hardly walk home.
4 a You could close the door.
b You could close the door.
5 b Do you have to work all evening?
a Do you have to work all evening?
6 b You could have hit him.
a You could have hit him.

- 7 1 delivery room 2 addicted 3 abuse
4 clutch 5 sigh 6 veer 7 weep 8 fierce
9 nappy 10 contradict 11 snowbound
12 astounded 13 ointment

- 8 2 outspoken 3 overwhelming 4 uphill
5 backdated 6 background 7 overgrown
8 downright 9 underground 10 upbeat
11 outgoing 12 underhand

- 9 2 with doesn't she feel at ease with
3 of is the dove a symbol of
4 of did he dream of becoming one day
5 of department is he in charge of
6 of is he in need of
7 with did she have a good relationship with
8 in did they invest their money in
9 of did he take advantage of
10 for of his paintings is he famous for

Endnotes

- 1 Better late than never.
2 Drink is the curse of the working classes.
3 Time flies when you're having fun.

UNIT 8

- 1 3 would 4 'd be / 'll be 5 didn't / don't
6 & 7 'd like to have turned down / 'd have
liked to turn down 8 would 9 understood
10 were / are 11 ever sell / 've ever sold
12 hadn't sat down 13 was 14 was
15 hadn't admired 16 called 17 said
18 wouldn't believe 19 went 20 won't last
21 're enjoying 22 won't be
23 were going / went 24 'd be

- 2 2 If only we liked modern art.
3 I wish I were / was enjoying this book.
4 If only she'd been able to find her wallet.
5 If only I hadn't been made redundant.
6 I wish I hadn't smoked so much when I
was young.
7 If only he'd apologize for his rudeness.
8 She wishes she hadn't left before I arrived.
9 If only I'd noticed the 'Low Bridge' sign.

- 3 2 would – past habit
3 had
4 would – conditional
5 had
6 would – conditional
7 would – past habit
8 would – future in the past

- 4 2 If Jane weren't / wasn't a very reliable
journalist, she wouldn't have been
promoted to desk editor.
3 If I weren't / wasn't afraid of travelling by
air, I wouldn't have had to go to Italy by
train.
4 Justin wouldn't be broke if he hadn't spent
all his money on a painting.
5 If she knew anything / something about
first aid, she could have helped him.
6 If I'd looked after my teeth, I wouldn't have
false ones now.
7 If I had a fax machine, I could have sent the
document last night.
8 If you weren't so gullible, you wouldn't
have believed all the lies he told you.

- 5 1 A 2 B 3 B 4 A

- 2 1 T
2 T
3 F The background is deep red.

- 4 F He uses sand. The paint is so thick it's
almost like lava.
5 F The exhibition was in London.
6 T

- 3 1 packed with 2 resonates with us
3 works out at 4 glittering 5 meditative
6 composition 7 associate 8 makes me
think of 9 value and the precariousness

- 6 2 I'd go / I'd be going if it weren't / wasn't
raining.

- 3 If he hadn't insulted me, I wouldn't have left.
4 If you'd eaten, you wouldn't be hungry now.
5 If I liked plants, I'd have bought one.

- 6 If the weather'd improved, we'd be able to
go out.

- 7 If I'd been free, I'd have helped.
8 He wouldn't have been angry if she'd
phoned.

- 9 I wouldn't have rung the police if I hadn't
been terrified.

- 10 If she'd been offered the job, she wouldn't
be upset.

- 11 She'd have contacted you if there'd been
any problems.

- 12 If I'd been on time, he wouldn't have left
without me.

- 7 i g 2 c 3 d 4 f 5 b 6 h 7 l 8 j 9 e
10 a 11 k 12 i

- 8 1 c eye 2 e leg 3 g neck 4 i foot
5 a chest 6 d ear 7 f face 8 j finger
9 h tongue 10 b shoulder

- 2 1 putting a brave face on it
2 keep an eye on
3 giving me the cold shoulder
4 play it by ear
5 pulling your leg
6 put your foot in it
7 get it off your chest
8 pain in the neck
9 put my finger on it
10 on the tip of my tongue

- 9 1 crush 2 snaps / breaks. 3 cracked
4 break 5 shatter 6 burst 7 splinter
8 cracked / broke / snapped 9 burst
10 broke 11 shattered 12 crush
13 snapped 14 splinter

- 10 1 1 h 2 f 3 c 4 e 5 a 6 g 7 d 8 b

- 2 1 stand by 2 assaulting 3 worn me
out! / exhausted me! 4 abolish
5 restore 6 Stick up for yourself!
7 surrendered 8 told me off

UNIT 9

- 1 1 2 She avoids getting into arguments with
her boss.
3 He gave up smoking in 1998.
4 Did you manage to arrive on time
despite
the traffic?
5 The minister admitted making / having
made a mistake.
6 She encouraged me to apply for the job.
7 He suggested going out for a meal.
8 Dave regrets losing / having lost his
temper.

- 9 I apologized for not phoning / I apologized for not having phoned.
 10 Dad refused to let Kate go to the music festival.
 11 She agreed to lend me £100.
 12 He promised to do better.
- 2 2 to use 3 being kept / to be kept
 4 emigrating 5 to be insulted / being insulted 6 convincing 7 to call
 8 to be allowed 9 to swim / swim
 10 to feel 11 lying 12 being told off
- 2 I couldn't help wondering if I was dreaming
 He said he wanted us to join in the celebrations
 and so would let us have the whole day off school.
 We were keen to welcome the people arriving from the east.
 At first the border guards attempted to control the flow of cars
 After a while they didn't prevent people (from) climbing the Wall either.
 and we all carried on dancing.
 and suggested that we knock chunks of concrete off the wall.
 I remember waving to the East German guards
 Only yesterday they would have been ordered to shoot us!
- 3 2 to forget, soaking 3 making, to make
 4 seeing, to call 5 reading, to rain
 6 writing, to make 7 (to) find, laughing
 8 taking, to make 9 cooking, to cook
 10 to inform, buying
- 4 1 turn, go 2 having 3 reading
 4 coming 5 pounding
- 5 2 a Catherine of Aragon
 b Jane Seymour
 c Catherine Parr
- 3 1 divorced 2 beheaded 3 divorced
 4 survived 5 extravagant 6 Dissolution
 7 destroyed
- 4 1 Incorrect: Henry came to the throne in about 1550. Correct: 1509.
 2 Incorrect: *beheaded, divorced, died, beheaded, divorced, survived.*
 Correct: *divorced, beheaded, died, divorced, beheaded, survived.*
 3 Incorrect: Anne Boleyn was ... the first.
 Correct: Anne Boleyn was the second wife.
 4 Incorrect: none of his marriages lasted very long. Correct: Henry's first marriage to Catherine of Aragon lasted twenty-four years.
 5 Incorrect: Henry had two children.
 Correct: three children.
- 5 1 renowned 2 certainly lived it up
 3 recall 4 sequence 5 handy
 6 splitting with 7 set fire to
- 6 1 a bean and been
 b First the waiter says *bean* and then the woman says *been*.
 2 a whine and wine
 b whine
 3 verbs

- 7 1 2 attack 3 conquer 4 demolition
 5 deploy 6 destruction 7 invade
 8 sinking 9 storm 10 revolution / revolt
 11 threaten 12 wound / wounding
- 2 1 sinking / destruction 2 Storming.
 Revolution 3 was ... destroyed
 4 wound 5 attacked 6 invaded
 7 threat 8 was assassinated 9 deploy
 10 sank / was sunk
- 8 1 1 conquered 2 deposed 3 decline
 4 collapse 5 establishment
 6 characterized 7 flowering
- 2 8 corruption 9 decades 10 movement
 11 era 12 advent 13 crisis 14 rivalry
 15 Pact
- 9 1 1 accuse sb of lying 2 charge sb for a meal
 3 congratulate sb on winning
 4 deal with an issue 5 force sb into resigning
 6 involve sb in a scheme
 7 hold sth against sb 8 shout at sb angrily
 9 subject sb to an ordeal 10 warn sb about a danger
- 2 2 be accused of 3 be dealt with
 4 to be / get involved in 5 be charged for
 6 be forced into 7 be congratulated on
 8 subjected to 9 've been warned about
 10 be held against
- 10 1 sheet 2 safe 3 bone 4 hard 5 flat
 6 gold 7 old boots 8 regular
 9 clear 10 feather
- 11 1 the wind 2 fish 3 cat and dog
 4 glove 5 leaf 6 horse 7 sieve
 8 chimney 9 log 10 dirt

UNIT 10

- 1 With some possible alternatives for the incorrect adverb-adjective combinations:
 1 very unfortunate
 2 utterly lucky (*lucky* is a gradable adjective): **very / extremely**
 3 rather terrifying (*terrifying* is an extreme adjective): **absolutely / quite / utterly**
 4 deeply disappointed
 5 very amazing (*amazing* is a limit adjective): **quite / utterly / simply / absolutely**
 6 incredibly fast
 7 extremely low
 8 completely small (*small* is a gradable adjective): **really / extremely / very**
 9 absolutely frightening (*frightening* is a limit adjective): **very / extremely / terribly**
 10 extremely difficult
 11 quite significant (*quite* can be used with *significant*, a limit adjective, but in the context it is not strong enough.): **really / very**
 12 entirely astonishing (impossible collocation): **absolutely / simply / utterly**
 13 utterly exhausted
 14 simply wonderful
 15 quite satisfying (*quite* can be used with *satisfying*, a limit adjective, but in the context it is not strong enough.): **extremely / very / terribly**

- 2 1 1 seriously 2 strongly (*thoroughly* would also be possible) 3 freely 4 entirely
 5 sincerely 6 thoroughly
- 2 7 greatly (*fully, entirely, really* would also be possible)
 8 entirely (*really* would also be possible)
 9 fully (*entirely* would also be possible)
 10 deeply
 11 sincerely (*really* would also be possible)
 12 really
- 3 2 a Frankly, I can't answer that question.
 b I can't answer that question frankly.
- 3 a Obviously he realized that she wasn't well. / He obviously realized that she wasn't well.
 b He realized that she obviously wasn't well.
- 4 a Very sensibly, he discussed the design with her.
 b He discussed the design very sensibly with her. / He discussed the design with her very sensibly.
- 5 a Honestly, I don't think she can answer your questions. / I don't honestly think she can answer your questions.
 b I don't think she can answer your questions honestly.
- 6 a I only saw him yesterday at the gym. / I saw him yesterday only at the gym.
 b I saw him only yesterday at the gym.
- 7 a Actually, he told her what he thought of her. / He actually told her what he thought of her.
 b He told her what he actually thought of her.
- 8 a She agreed to speak to him kindly.
 b She kindly agreed to speak to him.
- 9 a I'm quite sure he's clever.
 b I'm sure he's quite clever.
- 10 a They well knew he was able to cook.
 b They knew he was able to cook well.
- 4 1 1 lacks drama and excitement
 2 have trouble filming the ball in motion
 3 applaud when the ball is hit
 4 The only interesting bit is
 5 used to dislike snooker but now likes it
 6 snooker players are incredibly skilful
 7 he concentrated on getting the ball into the pocket
 8 similar to chess
- 2 1 leaves me completely cold 2 agonizing
 ... deliberating 3 completely farcical
 4 fathom 5 cause for celebration
 6 switch off 7 physical agility 8 finally dawned on me 9 a tall order 10 akin to
- 5 1 frisked 2 scratched 3 winking
 4 clapped 5 nudged 6 squeezed
 7 shoving 8 hugged 9 spit 10 pinch
 11 munching 12 rubbed
- 6 1 2 march 3 sway 4 hop 5 stroll
 6 tiptoe 7 crawl 8 limp 9 stumble
 10 sprint
- 2 1 limp 2 tiptoeing 3 crawling
 4 stumbled 5 marched 6 hop 7 swayed
 8 crept

7 Weak – Limit – Extreme 1 – Extreme 2
 irritated – angry – furious – livid
 significant – important – crucial – vital
 content – happy – delighted – ecstatic
 pretty – beautiful – gorgeous – stunning
 sizeable – big – enormous – gigantic
 chilly – cold – freezing – perishing
 amusing – funny – hilarious – hysterical
 apprehensive – frightened – terrified – petrified
 sleepy – tired – shattered – exhausted
 fed up – sad – inconsolable – grief-stricken

8 1 crucial gigantic ecstatic perishing

- 3 1 'Were you angry?'
'I was **furious**!' or 'I was **livid**!'
 - 2 'Are you happy?'
'I'm absolutely **delighted**!' or
'I'm absolutely **ecstatic**!'
 - 3 'Is it a big house?'
'It's **enormous**!' or 'It's **huge**!'
 - 4 'Is it an important document?'
'It's **vital**!' or 'It's **crucial**!'
 - 5 'Are you cold?'
'I'm **freezing**!' or 'I'm **perishing**!'
 - 6 'Do you think she's pretty?'
'Yes, she's **gorgeous**!' or
'Yes, she's **stunning**!'
 - 7 'Are you tired?'
'I'm **shattered**!' or 'I'm **exhausted**!'
 - 8 'Was James a bit sad?'
'He was **grief-stricken**!' or
'He was **inconsolable**!'
 - 9 'Were you frightened?'
'I was **petrified**!' or 'I was **terrified**!'
- 9 1 improving (break up)**
 2 ending (set off)
 3 solving (wear out)
 4 reducing (get down)

- 2 1 brush up 2 Turn down 3 worked out
 4 do up 5 logged off 6 cool down
 7 cut down 8 call off 9 find out
 10 cut off 11 looking up 12 broke off
 13 sort out 14 figure out / work out
 15 Cheer up

UNIT 11

1 1 2ND 3D 4ND 5D 6ND 7D
8D 9B 10D

- 2 1d The computer (which / that) they use to calculate weather patterns has malfunctioned. OR
The computer, which they use to calculate weather patterns, has malfunctioned.
- 2g My teenage children, who don't even know who Michelangelo was, are coming with us on a trip to Italy.
- 3j I'd like you to meet someone (who) I've been meaning to introduce you to for ages.
- 4f Computers, which have become much more powerful and reliable in the last 15 years, have revolutionized communications.

- 5e I can remember a time when foreign travel was exclusively for the wealthy.
- 6c My younger brother, who has a bizarre sense of humour, gave me a wig for Christmas.
- 7a The people whose car was stolen had to take the train home.
- 8b Would you like to watch the video (which / that) I made on my last holiday?
- 9h I don't like travel brochures which / that often make extravagant claims about holiday resorts. OR
I don't like travel brochures, which often make extravagant claims about holiday resorts.
- 10i The island (which / that) I'd most like to visit is Madagascar.

- 2 1 The island of Malta, which is situated south of Sicily and which used to be a British colony, gained its independence in 1964.
- 2 A man (who / that) I was talking to recently told me a joke, which was very funny, but which I've unfortunately forgotten.
- 3 The Inuit, who we used to call 'Eskimos', are an ancient people.
- 4 Pete, the guy whose car I borrowed last week, is visiting his mum, who's ill.
- 5 You need a passport for the countries to which you're travelling.

3 My husband and I have just had a holiday which your agency organized and which I feel I must complain about. When we arrived at the airport, the tour guide who was supposed to take us to the hotel wasn't there. We had to take a taxi, which cost a lot of money.

In the brochure which you sent us two months ago, it said that our hotel was 'a stone's throw from a golden beach fringed by coconut palms', which wasn't true. In fact it was three miles from the coast, and the 'beach', where we went on our first day, wasn't sandy at all, but rocky and muddy. As if that wasn't bad enough, to get to the beach you had to cross a motorway which was full of speeding traffic!

As for the hotel, which you said had 'all modern conveniences', it was dirty and old. When we came to see you, you told us about the wonderful food, which you promised us would be of an internationally high standard. In fact dinner, which they didn't serve until 10 (when everyone was wanting to go to bed), was the same every night. I feel your company, whose motto is 'We aim to please', owes us an apology and a refund. Five hundred pounds, which is half the cost of the holiday, would be an acceptable amount.

- 4 2 Viewed from this angle, the cliffs look very tall.
- 3 He got run over crossing the road.
- 4 I walked down the road humming to myself.
- 5 Weather permitting, we can go on a tour of the island tomorrow.
- 6 Having eaten earlier, she wasn't hungry.
- 7 Living near the sea, I get plenty of opportunities to go swimming.

- 8 Having visited Zanzibar, I flew on to the Seychelles.
- 9 Rejected by his peers and lacking in confidence, David would certainly benefit from a change of school.
- 10 She spilt wine on her dress, completely ruining it.

5 1 1 parking 2 Taken 3 left 4 borrowed
5 requiring 6 swimming 7 travelling
8 applied 9 delivered 10 paying

- 6 2 He read a book while eating his supper. / While eating his supper, he read a book.
- 3 By investing wisely, he made a lot of money. / He made a lot of money by investing wisely.
- 4 Since coming to live in the country a few years ago, I now realize how much I hated living in town.
- 5 After / On graduating from university, he went off to work in Australia.
- 6 When going abroad, it is advisable to take out travel insurance.
- 7 I came across a wonderful book while browsing in our local bookshop. While browsing in our local bookshop, I came across a wonderful book.
- 8 By working hard, I managed to pass all my exams. / I managed to pass all my exams by working hard.
- 9 When opening a tin, be careful not to cut yourself.
- 10 On / After hearing the weather forecast, we decided not to go camping in the mountains.

7 1 3, 10, 5, 1, 6, 8, 2, 7, 4, 9

- 2 1 T
2 F News of it having been climbed reached London on that day.
- 3 T
- 4 T
- 5 F James said it's the best job in the world and that if he was really serious about it he should give up his job as a geologist immediately.
- 6 T
- 7 T
- 8 F They've remained the very best of friends.

3 1b 2e 3g 4f 5c 6a 7d

- 8 1 ●●● colony, desolate, dialect, seasonal temperate
 - 2 ●●● depression, eruption, exotic, explorer, volcanic
 - 3 ●●● agriculture, isolated, situated, supermarket
 - 4 ●●● autonomous, community, economy, inhabitant, magnificent
 - 5 ●●● economic, independence, population, unemployment
- 9 Today was extremely hot and humid. This morning I left the hotel at ten and ventured into noisy, crowded, downtown Kyoto. I headed for Shisen-do, a temple that a friend of mine said I shouldn't miss. Although I was wearing light, cool, cotton clothing I was already sweating after twenty minutes. So when I reached the temple and walked

in I was struck by the **dark, peaceful** interior. Shisen-do is a **beautiful, old, wooden** temple built with great simplicity and grace, surrounded by tall, ancient maple trees and overlooking a **large, deep** pond with moss-covered rocks. There is always the sound of running water in Japanese temples and to the left of the pond was a fountain with a **long, black, bamboo** tube which tipped backwards when it was full of water, making a soft knocking sound on the stone beneath. While I was sitting cross-legged on the tatami mat, looking out at the garden, I got into conversation with an **interesting** young man wearing a **blue cotton** robe. He told me he came there to meditate every day. I could see why. When I left, I experienced an incredible sense of calm and well-being, and as I sat having a **long, cold** drink in a lovely little café not far away, I realized that I hadn't felt like that in a very long time.

- 10 1 cliffs 2 Reef 3 waterfall 4 Bay
5 Canyon 6 peak 7 peninsula
8 Estuary 9 Delta 10 Plains
- 11 2 dazzle 3 glow 4 flares 5 flash
6 shine 7 sparkling/sparkle 8 flicker
9 glowing 10 shines 11 flashes
12 twinkling 13 flared 14 dazzled
15 flicker 16 sparkle
- 12 1 1 at 2 on 3 in 4 by
2 1 at your disposal 2 by chance
3 in common 4 at full speed
5 on duty 6 on a knife-edge 7 in tears
8 at regular intervals 9 By the look of
things 10 in advance 11 by heart
12 on show

UNIT 12

- 1 1 Even though 2 owing to 3 so that
4 in such a way that 5 Having long had
6 As a result, 7 As soon as 8 although
9 Because of 10 as long as 11 Consequently
12 so as not to 13 no matter
- 2 2 Much as I admire her, I find her difficult to get on with.
3 Despite leaving/ Despite the fact that he left school without any qualifications, he's now one of the richest people in the world.
4 Although I don't believe in miracles, his recovery seems to defy medical explanation.
5 My grandfather can describe in great detail events that took place fifty years ago. However, he often can't remember what he had for breakfast.
6 A foot of snow fell overnight. Nevertheless, the trains were still running.
7 There were four key players missing from the team. All the same, they managed to draw the match.
8 The painting will definitely increase in value. On the other hand, you might consider selling it now if you need the money.
9 Whereas Kate was offered a place at university immediately, Martin was rejected and is planning to go abroad. / Kate was

offered a place at university immediately, whereas Martin was rejected and is planning to go abroad.

- 10 Even though his watch cost a fortune, it's very inaccurate.
- 3 1 'Why did you tread on his toe?'
'I didn't mean to!'
2 'Your boots are all muddy!'
'I've been working in the garden.'
3 She arrived late for the meeting.
4 I wish you'd just be quiet for a moment!
I just wish you'd be quiet for a moment!
I wish you'd be quiet for just a moment!
5 Don't forget to phone mum, will you?
6 Never have I eaten so much in one day!
7 Only when he collapsed did I realize he was seriously ill.
8 It has been alleged that he had an affair.
He has been alleged to have had an affair.
9 There are expected to be 300 people at the reception.
300 people are expected to be at the reception.
- 10 Do you think we'll be able to travel to other planets by the end of the century?
- 11 It's ten o'clock, so I think Jo will be arriving in Hong Kong at the moment.
- 12 If you were taller you could reach the shelf.
- 13 I wish you'd come with me to London.
- 14 I'd rather you did it yourself.
- 15 I regretted shouting at him as he was really upset.
- 16 I'm not used to writing with my left hand. It's really difficult.
- 17 I fully / totally / absolutely / quite agree with you.
- 18 What an absolutely delicious meal!
- 19 He passed his driving test, which surprised me.
- 20 Budapest, which has a population of two million, lies on the river Danube.
- 21 Climbing the hill, we had a fantastic view. As we climbed the hill the view was fantastic. (The original sentence suggests that it was the view that was climbing the hill!)
- 4 1 9 Price, 1 Location, 4 Condition of house, 6 Kitchen, 7 Dining room, 5 Living room, 3 Front garden, 8 Back garden, 2 Parking
- 2 2 ... the local shops are within walking distance.
3 ... there's a regular bus service into the city centre.
4 It's ideal for the DIY enthusiast. A lick of paint certainly wouldn't go amiss.
5 ... the roof is in need of some attention.
6 A little on the old side perhaps. Ideal for modernizing!
7 ... it's not exactly enormous, ...
8 It isn't the brightest room in the house, ...
9 ... the garden is very mature and well-established.
- 10 Not exactly cheap. I grant you, ...
- 5 1 You didn't really like it, did you? I thought it was awful.
2 You didn't really like it, did you? You didn't eat much.

3 I liked the scenery, but the acting was poor.

- 4 I told Peter.
5 I told you.
6 I told her.
7 If I get the job.
8 Not the Robbie Williams!
9 I thought you'd paid it!
10 It doesn't matter who pays it as long as one of us does.
11 I wouldn't give it to anyone.
12 I didn't give it to him. He bought it from me.
- 6 1 antique 2 ancient 3 current
4 up-to-date 5 biased 6 bigoted
7 impartial 8 open-minded 9 impeccable
10 immaculate 11 flawed 12 faulty
13 petty 14 trivial 15 urgent 16 vital
- 7 Across 1 modernity 2 unreliable
3 everlasting 4 abstract 5 inaccurate
6 urban 7 calendar 8 phenomena
9 patience 10 punctuality 11 frenetic
- Down 1 measurement
- 8 1 sorted ... out 2 fell back 3 catch up with
4 stood up for 5 Pick ... up 6 covered up
7 pinned ... down 8 see through
9 picked up 10 fall back
11 pinned ... down 12 Stand up for
13 sort ... out 14 cover up 15 see through
16 catch up with
- 9 1 1b 2k 3d 4j 5e 6g 7c 8f
9a 10l 11h 12i
- 2 1 behind the times 2 many a time
3 in the nick of time 4 About time too!
5 biding my time 6 before my time
7 Time will tell 8 for old times' sake
9 time to kill 10 for the time being

Endquotes on time

1f 2c 3e 4a 5b 6d

teachers' comments on
New Headway Advanced ...

level

... genuinely advanced ...'

language syllabus

Very useful and appropriate choice of
areas. It's good to see a focus on
features of lexis and spoken language.'

topics and texts

This is, in my view, where the book is at
its best.'

New Headway **Advanced**

The world's most trusted English course

New Headway is the course teachers and learners can rely on. Why? An authoritative integrated syllabus, motivating topics, and clearly focused tasks, combine with a real understanding of what works in the classroom. It all makes for effective teaching and effective learning. Tried and tested all over the world, it's probably the most popular course ever written!

What's in New Headway Advanced?

- Up-to-date international topics stimulate interest and discussion
- A focus on lexis and spoken language in a challenging language syllabus
- Streamlined structure and design for maximum clarity and sense of progress

'This book would certainly be one of my first choices for this level: innovative, thought-provoking, linguistically challenging, yet resting on a long and solid tradition.'

PLUS

- Class cassettes/CDs
- Workbook (with or without key)
- Student's Workbook cassette/CD
- Headway online: additional interactive exercises for each unit only available online at

www.oup.com/elt/headway

Liz and John Soars are internationally renowned authors, and highly experienced teachers and teacher trainers.